



Student's Book

**LEVEL
B1**

H. Q. Mitchell - Marileni Malkogianni

ZNOLeader

Contents

	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR
Unit 1: People p. 6	Personal details, Appearance, Character traits and personality, Clothes, Feelings and emotions	Imperative, Present Simple vs Present Continuous, Frequency adverbs, Stative verbs
Unit 2: Houses p. 18	Kinds of houses, Description in general, Parts of the house, Equipment and decoration, Activities in the house	Articles, Plural nouns, <i>This / That / These / Those</i> , Prepositions of time, Prepositions of place, Prepositions of movement, Prepositions of manner, <i>There is / There are</i> , Word order
Unit 3: School p. 30	School subjects, Types of schools, Things and places, Studying at school, Students and teachers, Violence at school, Adjectives with prepositions	Personal pronouns / Possessive adjectives / Possessive pronouns, Possessive case, Reflexive pronouns, Reciprocal pronouns, <i>Other / Another</i>
Unit 4: Work p. 42	Jobs, Kinds of jobs and work, Adjectives describing jobs and work, Duties at work, Employment, Employees and employers	<i>must / have to / should / ought to / had better / would rather / can / could / may / be able to / would</i>
Unit 5: Family and social life p. 54	Periods of time in people's lives, Family members, Family events and festivals, Everyday activities, Ways of spending free time, Lifestyles, Phrasal verbs	Past Simple, Past Continuous, Time clauses, <i>Used to</i>
Revision 1-5 p. 66		
Unit 6: Food p. 68	Types of food and drink, Preparing food, Cooking, Tastes, Meals, Places to eat/drink, Quantity and packaging	Countable and uncountable nouns / Nouns without singular or plural, <i>Some / any / no</i> and their compounds, <i>How much...? / How many...? / much / many / a lot of / lots of / a little / little / a few / few</i> , Comparatives
Unit 7: Shopping and services p. 80	Types of shops and services, Products, Money and buying, Advertising and complaints	Future will / shall, Future Continuous, Future going to
Unit 8: Travelling and tourism p. 92	Travelling, Means of transport, Kinds of holidays, Things to do on holiday, Places to live/stay on holiday, Accidents and emergencies	Present Perfect Simple, Present Simple vs Past Simple, Present Perfect Continuous, <i>since / for / how long</i>
Unit 9: Art and culture p. 104	Art and culture, Films, Books, TV programmes, Theatre, Press, Music, Literature, Dance	Relative clauses, Infinitive, -ing form
Unit 10: Sport p. 116	Kinds of sports and sportsmen/sportswomen, Sports events, Sports equipment, Parts of the body, Sports accidents	Question Words (<i>Who...? / What...? / Where...? / How...?</i>), Question tags, Indirect questions, Verbs with two objects
Revision 6-10 p. 128		
Unit 11: Health p. 130	Health problems and symptoms, Healthy lifestyle, Diseases and treatment, Disability, Addictions, At the doctor's / In hospital	Zero Conditional, Conditional Sentences Type 1, Conditional Sentences Type 2, <i>Wish / It's time</i>
Unit 12: Science and technology p. 142	Research and Science, Technological devices, Computer, Telephone	Passive Voice (Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Perfect, Future <i>will</i> , Modal Verbs)
Unit 13: Nature p. 154	Climate and the weather, Plants and animals, Landscape, Nature and environment, Natural disasters	Subordinate clauses, Clauses of purpose, Clauses of reason, Clauses of result, Exclamatory sentences
Unit 14: Society p. 166	State and society – Politics, International organisations and institutions, Law, Crimes and criminals, Social problems and unrest	Past Perfect Simple, Reported Speech (Statements, Questions, Commands and Requests)
Unit 15: Knowledge of English-speaking countries p. 178	The United Kingdom, The United States, Other English-speaking countries, Verbs with prepositions, Adjectives with prepositions	Causative form, <i>All-Both-Neither-None-Either</i> , Double conjunctions
Revision 11-15 p. 188		

FUNCTIONS	LISTENING	READING	USE OF ENGLISH	WRITING
Talking about routines and current activities, describing physical appearance and personality, describing clothes, talking about personal interests	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple choice Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email introducing oneself
Referring to location, describing a place, expressing feelings, giving news, inviting	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email of invitation
Referring to oneself and others, expressing possession, giving information, describing feelings, asking for information	Multiple choice True/False	Missing phrases Multiple choice	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Formal email requesting information
Expressing obligation, lack of obligation and prohibition, expressing preference, giving information, providing justification	Multiple choice True/False	Multiple choice Multiple matching	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Formal email of application
Referring to past events, thanking, apologising, inviting, declining an invitation and giving reason	Multiple choice Multiple choice	Multiple matching Multiple choice	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal letter refusing an invitation
Expressing quantity, making comparisons, identifying with somebody's emotions, talking about one's personal experiences, giving advice, providing encouragement	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal letter giving advice
Referring to the future, giving information, making a complaint, expressing feelings, requesting a course of action	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Multiple choice	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Formal email of complaint
Talking about things you have done, expressing feelings and justifying	Multiple choice Multiple choice	Multiple matching Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email accepting an invitation
Defining and giving additional information about people/things/places, describing an event, expressing opinion, encouraging and convincing	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Multiple choice	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal letter describing an event
Asking for information, apologising, explaining and giving reasons, expressing feelings, giving advice	Multiple choice Multiple choice	Multiple choice Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email describing an accident
Making hypotheses, making wishes, giving information, making a suggestion, asking for advice	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email asking for advice
Expressing opinion and justifying it, discussing advantages/disadvantages, giving examples, encouraging/discouraging	Multiple choice True/False	Multiple choice Multiple matching	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email making a suggestion
Explaining and giving reasons, expressing purpose and result, making exclamations, giving information, warning, discussing future plans	Multiple choice True/False	Multiple matching Multiple choice	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email expressing preference
Reporting, expressing opinion and justifying it, recommending a course of action	True/False Multiple choice	Multiple matching Missing phrases	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Formal email identifying a problem and suggesting solutions
Giving information, describing a place, describing an event, asking for information	True/False Multiple choice	Missing phrases Multiple matching	Multiple-choice cloze Multiple-choice cloze	Informal email giving an opinion

INTRODUCTION

Orientation and approach

This book has been meticulously designed to prepare students for the B1 level of the ZNO Examination. It is intended to be used in schools under a teacher's guidance and instruction. Its systematic and integrated approach helps build students' listening, reading and writing skills. *ZNO Leader* consists of a variety of tasks and exercises that have been specifically formulated in accordance with the specifications set by the Ministry of Education. The diverse, challenging and motivating nature of the material engages students' attention, enhances their learning and helps them prepare thoroughly for the exam. This preparation is further reinforced by the inclusion of practical tips and guidelines, which help students develop the exam skills and strategies which they require to excel in the exam. Although the primary objective of the book is to effectively prepare students for the ZNO Exam, its general educational orientation lies in providing them with the opportunity to acquire the language naturally so that it is of practical value and may be used in real-life situations. To achieve this, a communicative learning approach has been employed, which aims to provide students with the opportunity to apply what they are learning in meaningful contexts.

The organisation of the units

ZNO Leader features 15 independent units of engaging content. All topics in the ZNO Syllabus are covered. Each unit is based on a different topic and is divided into seven sections:

• Vocabulary Reference

At the beginning of each unit there is a Vocabulary Reference, which lists all the necessary topic-related vocabulary. It has been divided into comprehensive categories and sub-categories, which makes it easy for students to locate topic-related vocabulary. Each lexical item is accompanied by a Ukrainian translation, which enables students to use this list as a quick and effective learning aid. Students are also provided with a Vocabulary CD, which includes all the words and phrases in the Vocabulary Reference, thus enabling students to listen to the pronunciation of all the lexical items on the list.

• Vocabulary Practice

The book places a lot of emphasis on vocabulary building. This has been achieved through the use of a variety of exercises which facilitate consolidation through the recycling and revision of key vocabulary items. These exercises deal with different lexical areas such as collocations, phrasal verbs and prepositional phrases, and include various tasks such as matching, gap filling, word building, grouping and multiple choice activities.

• Listening Comprehension Practice

This section includes topics for discussion and warm-up activities which prepare the ground for the examination tasks that follow. In this section, students are provided with tips which facilitate the acquisition of the strategies and skills essential for the effective execution of exam-oriented listening tasks. At the end of this section students are, in accordance with the communicative learning approach, given the opportunity to give a personal response and/or elaborate on the topic of the listening tasks.

• Reading Comprehension Practice

This section also includes topics for discussion and warm-up activities, which put students in the right frame of mind and prepare them for the topics which are covered in the exam-oriented reading texts that follow. The exam tips that are provided in this section facilitate the acquisition of strategies and skills that are essential for the effective handling of reading tasks. Once again at the end of the section students are given the opportunity to give a personal response and/or elaborate on the topics covered in the reading texts.

• Use of English

This section includes two exam-oriented tasks and gives students the opportunity to practise both the grammar and the lexical items that are covered in the unit.

• Writing Practice

This section includes topics for discussion activity, which prepares the ground for the various writing activities that follow. Students are provided with a sample email or letter, which serves as a model and familiarises them with various aspects of writing such as purpose, audience, content, text organisation, register and style. Each unit has a specific learning objective in mind and the range of activities that follow provide students with the opportunity to practise aspects such as brainstorming, linking words/phrases and cohesion/coherence. Students are then given an exam-oriented writing task that follows the examination format. This task provides students with the opportunity to practise their writing skills, revise the language introduced in the unit and expand on the topic. Students are also provided with a suggested plan, which includes useful phrases/expressions and tips.

Other sections in the book

• Test

There is a complete test which is identical to the ZNO Examination to fully familiarise students with the format of the test.

• Grammar section

This includes explanations of the particular grammatical structures, together with examples and tables. These are followed by exercises which provide students with additional practice on grammar.

• Appendices

The three comprehensive appendices include numerals, prepositional phrases and verbs, adjectives and nouns with prepositions. They are to be used as a reference to aid and facilitate the learning process.

• Listening transcripts

Students are also provided with the listening transcripts. These are intended to be used after the listening activities have been done in class. In their own time, students can use these transcripts to focus on or analyse vocabulary and/or structures that may have caused them difficulty when they were doing these listening activities in class.

Components

• Student's book + Student's CD

The numbers next to the symbol  throughout the book indicate the corresponding tracks on the Student's CD.

• Teacher's book

• Class CDs

Unit 1: People

Key Vocabulary 02

Personal details Персональні дані

age вік
citizenship громадянство
date of birth дата народження
email address адреса електронної пошти
first name ім'я
male/female стать чоловіча / жіноча
marital status: single/married/separated/divorced/widowed сімейний стан: неodrужений(а), одружений(а), проживаю окремо, розлучений(на), вдівець (вдова)
name/surname ім'я / прізвище
nationality національність
permanent/temporary address адреса постійна / тимчасова
place of birth місце народження
place of residence місце проживання
telephone number номер телефону

Appearance Зовнішній вигляд

a bald man лисий чоловік
a beautiful lady / a pretty girl прекрасна леді / гарна дівчина
a fair/dark/pale/tanned complexion світле / темне / бліде / засмагле обличчя
a girl with freckles дівчина з ластовинням
a good-looking / an attractive / an ordinary-looking woman красива / приваблива / звичайна на вигляд жінка
a handsome/well-built man гарний чоловік / чоловік з гарною статуєю (дужий)
a man with a beard and a moustache чоловік з бородою та вусами

a middle-aged person людина середнього віку
a slim/skinny/thin girl струнка / худа / схудла дівчина
a tall/short man високий / низького зросту чоловік
a woman of average/medium height жінка середнього зросту
an elderly person літня людина
blond(e) блондин(ка)
chubby пухкий(а)
eyes: brown/blue/green/hazel очі: коричневі / блакитні / зелені / карі
face: round/oval/long/thin обличчя: кругле / овальне / витягнуте / схудле
hair: dark/fair/red/grey/short/long/straight/curly/wavy/spiky/cropped/shoulder-length/medium-length волосся: темне / світле / руде / сиве / коротке / довге / пряме / кучеряве / хвилясте / неслухняне (те, яке стирчить) / підстрижене / до плечей / середньої довжини
How much does he/she weigh? Скільки він / вона важить?
in his/her (early/mid/late) 20s/30s у віці від 20 до 30
nose: big/small/long/snub/pointed ніс: великий / маленький / довгий / кирпатий / загострений
old старий
overweight із зайвою вагою
teenager підліток
toddler малюк
What does he/she look like? Який він / вона має вигляд?
young молодий
younger/older than he looks молодше / старше, ніж на вигляд

Character traits and personality Риси характеру

active активний
adventurous ризиковий, відчайдушний
aggressive агресивний
ambitious амбітний
boring нудний
brave хоробрий
calm/relaxed спокійний / розслаблений
caring турботливий
cheerful веселий
clever розумний
confident впевнений у собі
consistent послідовний
creative творчий
easy-going безтурботний, життєрадісний
flexible гнучкий
forgetful забудькуватий
friendly доброзичливий
funny смішний
generous щедрий
have a sense of humour із почуттям гумору
hard-working працьовитий
helpful корисний, який завжди допомагає
(dis)honest (не)чесний
indecisive нерішучий
independent незалежний
jealous ревнивий
kind добрий
lazy ледачий
mean підлий
messy безладний
moody похмурий
(im)patient (не)терплячий
(im)polite (не)ввічливий
punctual пунктуальний

reasonable розважливий
 rebellious непокірний
 reliable надійний
 reserved замкнений
 (ir)responsible
 (без)відповідальний
 rude грубий
 self-confident впевнений у собі
 selfish егоїстичний
 sensitive чутливий
 serious серйозний
 shy сором'язливий
 sociable товариський
 spoilt розбещений
 sporty спортивний
 strict суворий
 stubborn впертий
 talented талановитий
 talkative балакучий
 understanding той, який
 ставиться із розумінням
 unpredictable непередбачуваний
 unreliable ненадійний

Clothes Одяг

appropriate for the
 occasion відповідний до нагоди
 (події)
 baseball cap бейсбольна кепка
 belt ремінь
 blouse блузка
 boots чоботи
 bracelet браслет
 braces підтяжки, брекети
 cap кепка
 cardigan кофта (кардиган)
 coat/jacket пальто / куртка
 designer/expensive/
 second-hand дизайнерський /
 дорогий / вживаний
 earring сережка
 evening dress вечірня сукня
 everyday (casual) / comfortable
 повсякденний / зручний
 flip-flops в'єтнамки
 formal/smart/elegant офіційний /
 гарний / елегантний
 gloves рукавички
 hat шапка

hooded sweatshirt светр з
 капюшоном
 jeans джинси
 jewellery ювелірні прикраси
 necklace намисто
 overcoat пальто
 polo neck гольф
 pyjamas піжама
 ring каблучка, кільце
 sandals босоніжки
 scarf шарф
 shirt сорочка
 shoes черевики
 shorts шорти
 skirt спідниця
 socks шкарпетки
 suit костюм
 sweater/jumper светр
 swimming trunks плавки
 swimsuit купальник
 tie / bow tie краватка / метелик
 tights колготки
 tracksuit спортивний костюм
 trainers кросівки
 trendy/fashionable модний
 trousers штани
 underwear білизна

Feelings and emotions Почуття та емоції

adore обожнювати
 admire милуватися,
 захоплюватися
 angry/furious злий / лютий
 annoyed роздратований
 bored той, якому нудно
 confused розгублений
 delighted/pleased задоволений
 depressed пригнічений
 disappointed розчарований
 embarrassed збентежений,
 зніяковілий
 excited схвилюваний
 fancy гарний, модний
 frightened (scared) / terrified
 зляканий / переляканий
 grateful вдячний
 hate ненавидіти
 irritated роздратований

lonely самотній
 nervous знервований
 respect повага
 sad сумний
 surprised/amazed здивований /
 вражений
 sympathy співчуття
 tired втомлений
 unhappy нещасний
 worried занепокоєний

Phrases Вирази

argue / have an argument
 сперечатись / посваритись
 be ashamed of соромитись
 be attracted to sb тобі хтось
 подобається
 can't stand не витримувати,
 дуже не любити
 fall in love закохатися
 get on well with добре ладнати
 lose one's temper розлютитися,
 втратити самовладання

A Put the words below that describe physical appearance into the correct category.

attractive beard beautiful blond(e) chubby curly elderly fair freckles glasses good-looking
handsome medium-height medium-length middle-aged moustache old ordinary-looking oval
overweight pretty round slim straight teenager thin toddler wavy well-built young

Age	Hair	Face	Build	General appearance

B Talk in pairs. Choose one of the people in the picture without telling your partner. Describe (in detail) the person's appearance and the clothes he/she is wearing. Your partner has to guess which person you are describing. Then change roles twice. Which of these people would you like to talk to? Why?

Suggested expressions

The person I'm describing is (rather/quite)... / He/She has got... /
He/She is wearing... / is dressed in... / is in his/her teens...
I would like to talk to... because he/she seems to be...



C Match the adjectives (1-10) with the definitions (a-j) that describe people's character.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. reliable | ☐ | a. someone who uses their imagination and has the ability to produce something new |
| 2. sensitive | ☐ | b. someone who trusts, is sure about and believes in their own ability to do things |
| 3. honest | ☐ | c. someone who is easily hurt and/or understands other people's feelings or needs |
| 4. self-confident | ☐ | d. someone who likes spending time with other people |
| 5. lazy | ☐ | e. someone who is relaxed and happy to accept things without worrying or getting angry |
| 6. selfish | ☐ | f. someone who is very kind and helpful and gives a lot of attention to other people |
| 7. caring | ☐ | g. someone who always tells the truth and never steals or cheats |
| 8. easy-going | ☐ | h. someone whom you can trust and rely on |
| 9. creative | ☐ | i. someone who does as little as possible |
| 10. sociable | ☐ | j. someone who cares more about themselves than other people |

D Use an appropriate word from the list below to complete each sentence.

unpredictable irresponsible flexible rebellious stubborn independent patient
shy punctual reserved

- It was very _____ of the babysitter to sit inside watching TV while the children were outside playing in the swimming pool.
- You never know what Pete is going to do. He is totally _____.
- Susan, like most teenagers her age, is very _____. She doesn't listen to anybody and it is very hard to make her obey rules.

4. Ted is _____. He doesn't show his emotions or talk about his problems.
5. Young people today must be _____ if they want to get a good job. They need to be able to adapt to new situations.
6. When Mark turned twenty-one, he got a good job and became financially _____.
7. He was too _____ to talk to anyone at the party so he left early and went home.
8. I am not particularly _____, which is my biggest flaw. I find it really hard to get anywhere on time.
9. It's difficult to be _____ when you are stuck in traffic.
10. Meg is as _____ as a mule; although she knows she's wrong, she refuses to change her mind.

E Imagine the boy in the picture is your friend. Below is a description of him. Use the words in the box to complete the blanks.

handsome short sociable casual cheerful admire long ambitious wavy talkative

The boy in the picture is my friend Michael. As you can see he is quite (1) _____. He is now in his late-teens. He is of medium height, with brown eyes and (2) _____, (3) _____ hair. His face is rather (4) _____. He loves (5) _____ clothes. He is very (6) _____ as he smiles a lot and is usually quite (7) _____. What I (8) _____ most about him is the fact that he is so (9) _____. If he wants to achieve something, he'll work hard to make it happen. What's more, he is very (10) _____; he enjoys meeting friends and going out with them. Michael is also a person I can always rely on!



F Label the items in the pictures using the words in the box.

blouse bracelet earrings flip-flops necklace pyjamas ring sandals
belt scarf socks suit cardigan swimsuit tie tights tracksuit trainers



G Complete the gaps to make true sentences about yourself.

1. I am so excited about _____.
2. What makes me depressed is _____.
3. I'm really frightened of _____.
4. I was extremely surprised to hear that _____.
5. I was so embarrassed when _____.
6. I'm really irritated by _____.
7. My parents get worried when I _____.
8. Every time I _____, I feel unhappy.

H In pairs, act out the following role play. When you have finished, change roles.

Student A	Student B
A friend of yours is missing and you are reporting it to the police. Answer the police officer's (Student B) questions.	You are a police officer and you are asking Student A questions about the missing boy/girl. Use the following hints. What... name? What colour... ? How old/tall... ? What's... like? How much... ? What... wearing? What shape... face? Where... for the last time? When... for the last time?

Listening Comprehension Practice

PRE-LISTENING TASK

Before you do Exam Tasks A and B on the next page, read the statements below and tick True (T) or False (F). Then read the Exam Tip and check your answers. Which statements are false? Why?

	T	F
1. When you listen to the instructions, you should also read them to understand them better.		
2. After reading the options, you just sit and relax.		
3. When you listen to the recording for the first time, you try to get the general idea of each text.		
4. You don't have to listen to the recording the second time if you have already answered all the questions.		

Exam Tip

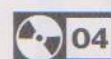
- Read the instructions while listening to them to understand them better.
- Then read the questions and try to guess what you might hear.
- During the first listening, try to understand the main idea and choose the option (or write the answer) that seems the best.
- Check your answers during the second listening.

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5), choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. The painting shows an ordinary-looking young man.		
2. The man in the portrait is similar to the artist who painted it.		
3. The artist put a lot of his feelings and emotions into the portrait.		
4. Dorian Gray is a kind and gentle person.		
5. Lord Henry has a very positive effect on young people.		

B Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6), choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- Why is the man upset?
 - Lucy is too artistic.
 - Lucy does not like parties.
 - Lucy is selfish.
- Why is the woman angry with John?
 - He is too ambitious.
 - He doesn't pay much attention to her needs.
 - He has been thinking a lot lately.
- Who does the man look like?
 - his mother
 - his father
 - his uncle
- What do the two women have in common?
 - Their husbands are stubborn.
 - Their husbands are very bossy.
 - Their husbands love cars.
- Who is the fastest swimmer?
 - Frank
 - Kelly
 - Mark
- What does the woman think of Rita?
 - She's naturally talented.
 - She works very hard.
 - She's very creative.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What do you admire in other people? Why?
- What do you really dislike in other people? Why?



PRE-READING

Group work: Teenage problems

Make a list of five problems that you consider the most important for teenagers. Then form groups of four and discuss your lists to come up with a common list for your group. Present your ideas to the rest of the class. Quickly read the text **GIVE TEENS A BREAK** to see which of your ideas are included in it.

Exam Tip

- Read the whole text quite quickly for general understanding.
- Then read the questions and try to find the parts in the text that answer the questions or complete the sentences. You may underline these parts.
- Now read the options and choose the one that best matches the idea in the text.
- Look for the words and phrases with similar meanings in the options and the text.

A Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

GIVE TEENS A BREAK

Teenagers experience all kinds of problems – lack of self-confidence, nagging parents, peer pressure, doing well in exams and getting into university. Some of their problems result from the emotional and physical changes they are going through.

Teenagers are extremely concerned about their appearance. So, it's no wonder they spend so much time in front of the mirror! They notice every single thing about themselves, such as their body changing shape and annoying spots breaking out. Teenagers are rarely happy about these changes, which can affect how they feel about themselves.



Sometimes, parents hurt their teenage children's feelings by making jokes about their appearance. They also tend to pay little attention to teenage worries and think of them as being silly. Your daughter may be convinced that her nose looks awful and that plastic surgery is the only solution, even though everybody else fails to notice the problem. By trying to explain that other people do not normally pay as much attention to our physical features as we do ourselves, we can help teenagers feel better about themselves and become more confident.

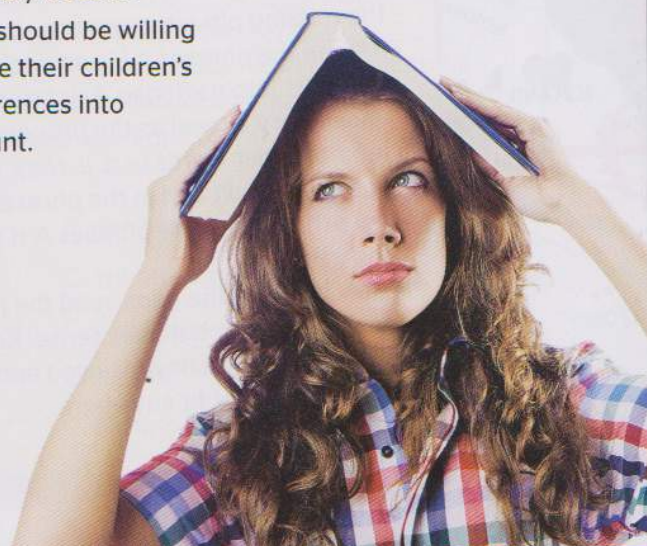
Teenagers also tend to avoid doing things they don't like, especially helping around the house. They are likely to try to get out of doing housework – and certainly don't respond well to orders. The more you discuss the type of housework your teenage son or daughter might not mind doing, the better. He or she, for example, may be happy to go to the supermarket, but hate the idea of doing the washing-up.

It also works better if your children can, at least to some degree, do things in their own way and time. This might seem annoying, but if all you do is order them around, you can be sure that next time they will not do a thing.

Always thank your children for their effort; and if they do something that's more than just a simple job, such as decorating, you might want to pay them.



1. What does the text say about teenagers?
 - A. They are very self-confident.
 - B. They pay little attention to how they look.
 - C. They are happy about the changes they are experiencing.
 - D. They are aware of the physical changes they are going through.
2. What does the writer advise parents to do?
 - A. support their children if they decide to have plastic surgery
 - B. give them tips on how to improve their appearance
 - C. ignore their concerns
 - D. tell them that they actually look better than they think they do
3. When it comes to housework, what do most teenagers do?
 - A. They help a lot with it.
 - B. They usually prefer going to the supermarket.
 - C. They expect something in return for helping around the house.
 - D. They find ways not to take part in it.
4. How can parents make their teenage children help around the house?
 - A. by giving them specific instructions about their duties
 - B. by making them feel responsible for their actions
 - C. by telling them that they have to become involved
 - D. by discussing with them what type of housework they prefer doing
5. Which of the following is **NOT** good advice to parents?
 - A. They should thank their children for their effort.
 - B. They should give their children some money for any job they do.
 - C. They should let their children do some things the way they want to.
 - D. They should be willing to take their children's preferences into account.



B Read the text below. Choose from choices (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Flying South



Grace Baie was born in Marseille, on an autumn night when the sky was full of birds flying to Africa. Her aunt always said that was why she could never stay still for long. Her neighbours came from many different countries and by the age of seventeen, Grace spoke fluent French, Greek and Spanish and could sing popular songs from Naples in Italian. She was clever and confident and with all these languages and a pretty face, (1) _____.

In her thirties, she moved again, this time to teach French to sailors in Naples, although the real reason was to hear Italian songs up close. She returned to Marseille in her forties (2) _____ and opened a herb shop. It was there (3) _____, when he came into her shop looking for coffee. Grace didn't sell coffee, so he used to buy a small bag of mint tea every Friday afternoon. A year later, when they were married, he told her (4) _____ and he showed her the unopened bags in his cupboard.

In her last years, after Adrien died, Grace rarely left her flat and (5) _____. I met her when she was very old. I had a part-time cleaning job when I was a student and I went to her house for a few hours a week to help out. She always made me black tea with brown sugar and (6) _____. Some of them were about her childhood, but most of them had to do with her travels and her husband.

Exam Tip

- Read the instructions and the title of the text carefully. This will help you to predict the text's content.
- Read the text quickly, without paying attention to gaps, so as to understand its meaning.
- Read the phrases A-H.
- Read the sentences in the text from which the phrases have been removed, and decide what the missing phrases could be about.
- Reread the phrases A-H and decide which of them fits into each gap. Pay attention to the vocabulary as well as the pronouns used to refer to other words (e.g. *it, they, this, there*), both in the text and in the phrases A-H.
- Note that two of the phrases A-H do not fit into any gap.
- After filling all the gaps, read the full text and decide whether it makes sense. Read the phrases that you haven't used and make sure that they do not fit anywhere.

- A. told me stories about her life
- B. to get married
- C. to be close to her family
- D. that he didn't really drink mint tea
- E. that she met her husband Adrien
- F. was always dressed in black
- G. always made me laugh
- H. she easily got a job as a tourist guide in Paris



Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

RODNEY AND RODNEY

Today, two brothers, Rodney Lake and Rodney Ealing, are together (1) _____ almost forty years. Born at the same time, to the same mother, they look exactly (2) _____ each other. They both have red hair, green eyes and freckles. When the two Rodneys were two years old, they were separated and (3) _____ up in different cities. They didn't see each other again until today, their fortieth birthday.

The fact that they both wear glasses and a beard is also not that strange.

What is very unusual is that they were both married to a woman called Harriet, then they both got (4) _____ and married a second time. Both of their second wives are called Sandra and, unlike Harriet and Harriet, the Sandras have a good (5) _____ of humour. Equally strange is the fact that they share the same interests, have the same occupation and drive the same make of car.

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. after | 3. A. grew | 5. A. feeling |
| B. since | B. raised | B. emotion |
| C. from | C. came | C. sense |
| D. to | D. lived | D. understanding |
| 2. A. alike | 4. A. separated | |
| B. similar | B. single | |
| C. like | C. divided | |
| D. likely | D. divorced | |



The Worried Shop Owner

To his neighbours, Mr Stewart is a reserved man in his fifties who (6) _____ to them very much. They (7) _____ him get in his car to go to work without saying a word to them. They (8) _____ how busy he is! He is an antique dealer and he has got a shop in the centre of town with very expensive pieces. Mr Stewart is very tired lately because he doesn't (9) _____ well. He is worried about someone stealing from his shop. That's why he (10) _____ a new sophisticated alarm system this weekend. The new system can connect to Mr Stewart's mobile and it will inform him immediately if anyone tries to break into his shop. Just thinking about it helps him feel more relaxed!

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. not talking | B. aren't talking | C. don't talk | D. doesn't talk |
| 7. A. often see | B. often sees | C. are often seeing | D. see often |
| 8. A. doesn't know | B. aren't knowing | C. don't know | D. not know |
| 9. A. sleep | B. sleeping | C. sleeps | D. to sleep |
| 10. A. is putting in | B. put in | C. putting in | D. puts in |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you like meeting new people? Why? / Why not?
- Would you be interested in having a pen-friend or meeting other people online?
- What kind of information would you include about yourself on an online pen-friend site?

A Read the task and the response. Which of the things you mentioned in the previous activity can you find examples of in the profile?

You are interested in meeting different people from all around the world. You have found the following advertisement on the Internet.

ONLINE PEN-FRIENDS ASSOCIATION (OPA)

If you are interested in communicating with other people, whether it is for friendship, cultural exchange, language, travel or education, join us today! Simply write and submit your profile and we will connect you with the type of people you want to meet.



Write your profile of 50-80 words in which you

- describe yourself
- write about personal interests
- explain why you want to join.

Begin like this:

Hi OPA members!

Hi OPA members!

My name is Sandy, I'm sixteen years old and I live in Glasgow. I am very friendly and love meeting new people. Some people say I'm too talkative, but I think I'm just sociable!

I'm also very sporty and adventurous. Besides being a member of a football team and going swimming four times a week, I've also just taken up rock climbing.

I'm looking for people who are equally adventurous and athletic to share our experiences. I can't wait to meet you!



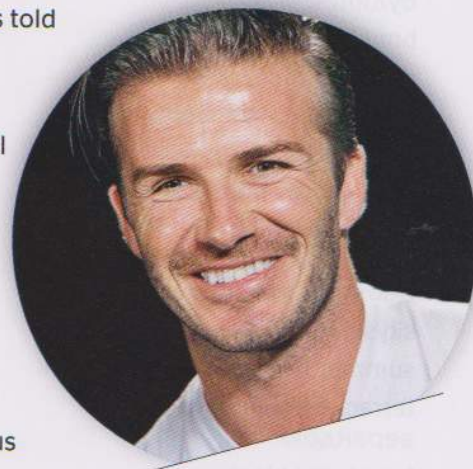
B Read the profile one more time and complete the table with the phrases that refer to the points below.

character traits	
personal interests	
reason she wants to join	

C Read an entry in a blog about famous people. Use the adjectives in the box to complete the blanks.

talented young hazel caring fair ambitious hard-working
kind attractive stubborn tanned

What makes David Beckham stand out is a combination of talent, good looks and personality. His (1) _____ complexion, (2) _____ eyes, (3) _____ hair and (4) _____ facial features are familiar to most of us as he has appeared on the cover of many sports and fashion magazines. Being one of the most (5) _____ football players in the history of the game, he has played for teams such as Manchester United, Real Madrid and AC Milan. His talent is, however, not the only thing that helped make him a football star. He was a very (6) _____, (7) _____ man, spending every minute he could practising. In his early teens, he was told that he would not be able to play professional football, but his (8) _____ nature would not let him give up. Time has proven those who doubted him wrong and after 20 years as a professional footballer the rest is, as they say, history. Or is it? Those who know him well think not. He is far too (9) _____ to sit back and let time pass him by, even now that his football career has come to an end. Success to him is not only what you can achieve on the football field, but also what you can achieve in other areas of your life. As a(n) (10) _____ and (11) _____ person he is now finding time to support various charities.



Tip

When using more than one adjective before a noun, remember to use the following order:

opinion	size	age	type	colour	noun
good-looking	slim	young			man
beautiful	long		curly	black	hair

D You've read Sandy's profile on page 16 and you've decided to write to her.

Write an email to Sandy in which you

- describe yourself
- write about your personal interests
- explain why you want to be friends with her.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates or addresses. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Exam Tip

When you want to write information about yourself,

1. group the information in categories so that it is easier to understand.

2. use appropriate tenses. Use the Present Simple for general truths and habits and the Present Progressive for actions happening at the moment of speaking and temporary states.

3. link your ideas so that your writing flows. Use:

- *and* to join similar ideas
- *but* to join opposite ideas
- *so* to express result/consequence
- *because* to show reason
- *or* to show alternative.

Unit 2: Houses

Key Vocabulary 05

Kinds of houses

Види будинків

block of flats багатоквартирний будинок
bungalow бунгало
cottage коте́дж
detached house особняк
maisonette мезонет
multi-storey house багатопверховий будинок
semi-detached house двоквартирний будинок
skyscraper хмарочос
summer house літній будинок
terraced house будинок із верандою
ten-storey block десятиповерховий будинок
tower block багатопверховий будинок

Flat квартира

flat/apartment квартира
one-room flat / bedsit / bedsitter однокімнатна квартира
three-room flat трикімнатна квартира

Description in general

Загальний опис

antique furniture антикварні меблі
convenient/comfortable зручний
cosy затишний
functional функціональний
(un)furnished (не)мебльований
in good/bad condition в гарному/поганому стані
luxurious розкішний
modern сучасний
nicely-decorated гарно оформлений
peaceful спокійний, мирний

spacious/large просторий / великий
sunny сонячний
tiny крихітний
well-equipped добре обладнаний
well-kept доглянутий
with a view of the lake з видом на озеро
with windows overlooking a busy street з вікнами, які виходять на жваву вулицю

Parts of the house

Частини будинку

attic горище
balcony балкон
basement підвал
bathroom ванна кімната
bedroom спальня
child's/children's room дитяча кімната
corridor коридор
dining room їдальня
downstairs вниз
drive під'їзд
fence паркан
floor підлога
garage гараж
garden сад
ground floor перший поверх
guest/spare room кімната для гостей / вільна кімната
hall передпокій
kitchen кухня
lawn газон
lift ліфт
loft горище
porch ганок
roof дах
sitting/living room вітальня
stairs сходи
study кабінет
upstairs нагорі
utility room підсобне приміщення

Equipment and decoration

Оснащення та оздоблення

blind ролети
carpet килим
central heating центральне опалення
curtain завіса, штора
drinks/cocktail cabinet шафа для напоїв
fitted carpet килимове покриття
ornament прикраса
pot plant кімнатна рослина
radiator батарея
rug килим
shelf полиця
vacuum cleaner пилосос
kitchen кухня
cooker плита
(wall) cupboard (настінна) шафа
dishwasher посудомийна машина
freezer морозильна камера
fridge холодильник
microwave oven мікрохвильова піч
sink раковина
bathroom ванна кімната
bath(tub) ванна
cabinet шафа
laundry hamper/basket кошик для білизни
mirror дзеркало
shower душ
tap кран
toilet вбиральня / туалет
washbasin умивальник
washing machine пральна машина
living room вітальня
armchair крісло
bookcase книжкова шафа

bookshelf книжкова полиця
 chest of drawers комод
 coffee table журнальний столик
 cushion декоративна подушка
 display cabinet вітрина
 fireplace камін
 furniture меблі
 rocking chair крісло-гойдалка
 sofa / (corner) couch диван /
 (кутовий) диван
 DVD player DVD-програвач,
 плеєр
study кабінет
 desk парта, робочий стіл
 desk/swivel chair офісне крісло /
 крісло на колесах
 wastepaper basket/bin кошик для
 сміття
bedroom спальня
 bedside table / nightstand нічний
 столик / тумбочка
 clothes shelf полиця для одягу
 single/double bed односпальне /
 двоспальне ліжко
 wardrobe шафа (для одягу)

Activities in the house Хатня робота

change a lightbulb міняти
 лампочку
 clean/tidy up прибирати
 decorate a room прикрашати
 кімнату
 do housework робити хатню
 роботу
 dust пил
 house renovation ремонт
 будинку
 mend ремонтувати /
 налагоджувати
 move in/out в'їхати/виїхати
 renovate / do up оновити,
 відремонтувати

Other words and phrases Інші слова та вирази

accommodation проживання
 Croydon district район Кройдон
 (район на півдні Лондона)

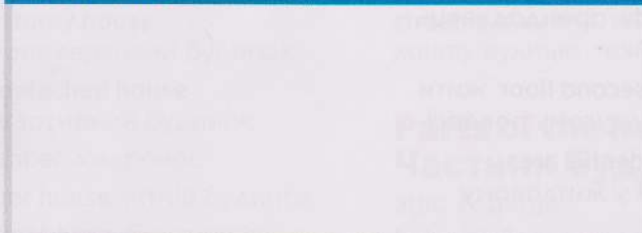
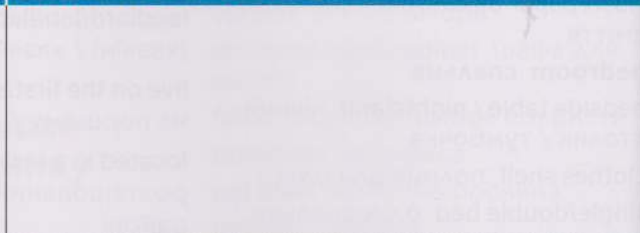
do the cleaning/cooking/ironing/
 washing-up прибирати /
 готувати / прасувати / прати
 electricity/telephone bill рахунок
 за електроенергію / телефон
 estate agent/agency агент з
 нерухомості / агентство
 flatmate співмешканець
 for sale на продаж
 housemate співмешканець
 housing estate житловий масив
 I live at 1 King Street, flat 1. Я живу
 за адресою 1 Кінг Стріт,
 квартира 1.
 in the centre у центрі
 in the suburbs в передмісті
 landlord/landlady орендодавець
 (хазяїн) / хазяйка
 live on the first/second floor жити
 на першому / другому поверсі
 located in a residential area
 розташований у житловому
 районі
 lower/increase the rent знизити /
 збільшити оренду
 neighbour сусід
 on the ground floor на першому
 поверсі
 on the outskirts на околиці
 pay (high/low) rent платити
 (високу / низьку) оренду плати
 pay the bills оплатити рахунки
 rent a flat/room from sb здати в
 оренду квартиру / кімнату у
 когось
 rent a flat/room to sb здати в
 оренду квартиру/ кімнату
 комусь
 rural сільський
 share a room мешкати в одній
 кімнаті з ким-небудь
 take the rubbish out виносити
 сміття
 tenant орендар
 There is a school in the
 neighbourhood. У мікрорайоні є
 школа.
 urban міський
 We had our house renovated / done
 up last year. Ми відремонтували
 наш будинок минулого року.

A Read the description of a teenager's room and use the prepositions in the box to complete the gaps.

on opposite next to over in on the left above under

I have got my own room. It's right (1) _____ my sister's room. It's rather small but very comfortable. There isn't a lot of furniture (2) _____ my room, just a bed, a table, a chair, a wardrobe and a television. There is a window (3) _____ the table. The television is (4) _____ my bed so I can watch it when I am in bed. The wardrobe is on the right and my bed is (5) _____. There is a computer (6) _____ the table and my books, pens and CDs are near the computer. (7) _____ the table there is a small wastepaper basket. (8) _____ my bed hangs a model of a space rocket. I'm really keen on space exploration!

B Work in pairs. In the frame below, draw a plan of your room (e.g. door, window, bed, desk, computer, etc.). Explain to your partner where the things are. Your partner should draw the room while you are describing it. Then exchange roles. When you have finished, correct each other's drawings if necessary.

Your Room	Your Partner's Room
	

Useful phrases

There is a... in the middle of my...
On the right/left there are some...

In the right-hand corner, next to... there is...
Opposite the... there is/there are...

C Look at the pictures and complete the description of the house. Use the words given in the appropriate form.



I live in a big yellow house in the (1) _____. Our house has many windows and a(n) (2) _____ that overlooks a big garden with some old trees. On the ground floor there is a kitchen, a hall, a cosy living room with antique furniture and an open (3) _____, a(n) (4) _____ where we have all our meals, a toilet and a(n) (5) _____ with a computer and lots of books in a bookcase. In front of the house there is a garden, a(n) (6) _____ where we park the car and a small pond with goldfish. On the first floor there are three (7) _____, a bathroom, and a toilet. On the second floor there is a(n) (8) _____ which has all kinds of old things. Behind the house there is a huge (9) _____ where we can have picnics. Our house is very spacious and (10) _____.

D Match the words 1-6 with the words/phrases a-f to form collocations.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. residential | ☐ | a. bill |
| 2. share | ☐ | b. the rent |
| 3. pay | ☐ | c. heating |
| 4. electricity | ☐ | d. area |
| 5. central | ☐ | e. a house / the living room |
| 6. do up | ☐ | f. a flat/room |

G Word race. Do not look at the Key Vocabulary section. With a partner, as quickly as possible, make a list of:

- 8 things you can find in the kitchen
- 10 things you can find in the living room
- 5 things you can find in the bathroom
- 3 things you can find in the study
- 4 things that are common to all rooms

The first pair to complete the list of 30 things wins the race. Wait for the teacher to start the race.

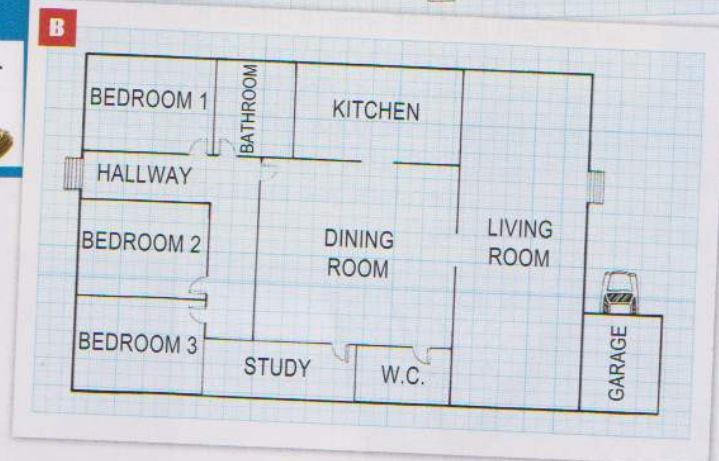
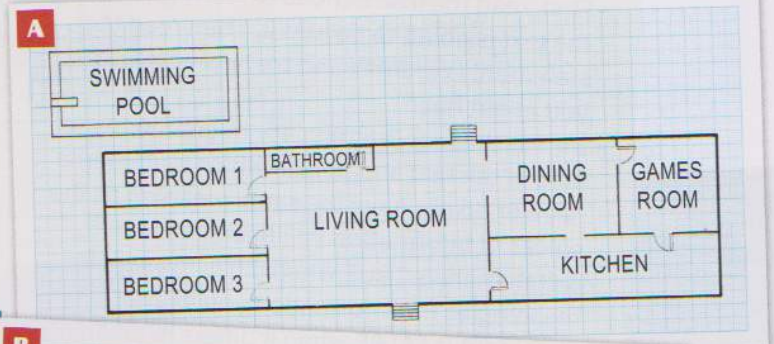
E Your friend's family (parents, two boys, one girl) are going to move to your neighbourhood and are looking for a house to buy. Look at plans A and B, which show two different types of houses. In groups of three, discuss which house would be best for your friend's family. Give your reasons.

Useful phrases

I believe... would be more suitable because...

House... has/hasn't got... so...

In my opinion...



F Complete the sentences with the correct word, a, b, c or d.

- My landlord has decided to _____ my rent.
a. grow b. increase c. go up d. rise
- The house is fifty years old and it's in really bad _____.
a. condition b. situation c. state d. damage
- In London, Kensington is one of the nicest _____ to live in.
a. centres b. estates c. parts d. districts
- Peter left his umbrella in the _____ when he entered the house.
a. loft b. attic c. hall d. basement
- My friend lives in a(n) _____ house opposite the forest; his nearest neighbours are 500 metres away.
a. terraced b. detached c. attached d. semi-detached
- He lives on the fourth _____ with no lift so, as he is an elderly man, he has to stop every so often when climbing the stairs.
a. landing b. ground c. level d. floor
- Most of the rooms in her house are small, however, the hall is really _____.
a. spacious b. cosy c. furnished d. functional

PRE-LISTENING TASK

Before you do Exam Task A, read the Exam Tip and answer the following questions:

- Why do you need to read the instructions?
- When should you read the statements?
- What should you do during the first listening?
- What kind of statement is false?

Exam Tip

- First, read the instructions to learn what the text is going to be about. Then read the statements carefully and try to predict what you might hear.
- During the first listening, try to get the main idea of the text and decide which statements have or do not have the same meaning as the pieces of information you hear.
- A statement is TRUE when it has the same meaning as the information you hear. A statement is FALSE when it differs in meaning from the information that you hear.
- Check your answers during the second listening. The same words will probably not be used both in the recording and in the statements; therefore, you must pay attention to the meaning!

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.

06

	T	F
1. The first skyscrapers were built to show that their owners were doing well.		
2. The Woolworth Building looks a lot like European Gothic churches.		
3. The lift was invented after the first skyscrapers were built.		
4. In 1883 William LeBaron Jenney built an office block for firemen.		
5. The Empire State Building was built at a speed of one floor a day.		

B Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



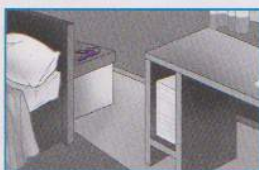
1. Where does the woman think the keys might be?



A



B



C

2. Where does the man finally decide they should put the new chairs?



A



B



C

3. On which floor is the available flat on Wool Street?



A



B



C

4. Why does the speaker have to move out of the flat?

- A. It is not conveniently located.
- B. The rent went up.
- C. He cannot make repairs.

5. What part of his grandparents' house does the speaker remember best?

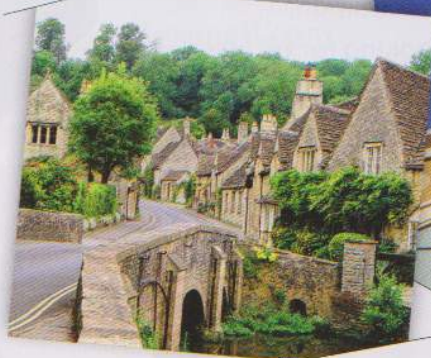
- A. the garden
- B. the ground floor
- C. the bedroom

6. What does the caller like about the flat?

- A. the apartment block
- B. the kitchen
- C. the location of the school

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What kinds of buildings can you find in cities? Describe them.
- What facilities (e.g. cinema, library, etc.) do you think an ideal city should have? Why?
- What do you like most/least about the city/town/village you live in?
- Would you like to live somewhere else? Why? / Why not?



PRE-READING TASK

Before you do Exam Task A, read the Exam Tip and answer the following questions:

- What do you have to do in this type of exam task?
- Why is it useful to underline the key words in the question?
- Why is it helpful to underline the parts of the text which express the same ideas as the questions?

Exam Tip

Read the instructions carefully. In this type of exam task, you have to match the questions with the paragraphs which give answers to them. Next, read the text for general understanding and then read the questions. Underline key words in the questions. Read the text one more time and underline the parts which answer the questions. Remember the ideas expressed must be the same, not just similar. Pay careful attention to the individual words used in both the questions and the text as there may be subtle differences in meaning! Note that there are three choices that you do not need to use.

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

1

SOFA BED FOR SALE

It can seat three comfortably.
The sofa folds out into a double bed, big enough for a fully grown adult.
It was bought three years ago for **£300** and is in perfect condition.
We're looking for no less than **£150**.



2



CHAIRDRESSERS

Do you have old chairs you love and don't want to throw away?

Chairdressers fixes or dresses old chairs to make them look brand new.

3

BRISTOL

We are two students who share a flat in the city centre and we're looking for a flatmate. Your room will have a single bed, wardrobe, desk and desk chair. We will be sharing the kitchen and the bathroom. We don't allow pets in the flat.

£450 per month



4



FREE DESK AND SWIVEL CHAIR!

I am moving abroad and I am giving away some things that I cannot take with me.

The desk is an antique that I got from a flea market – it is perfect for those who love old things.

The swivel chair is in very good condition.

You can pick them up from my flat in the Croydon area.

07382741253 - andrewspall@email.com

5

**YOU DON'T WANT IT?
WE BUY IT!**

We buy old sofas, armchairs, coffee tables,
display cabinets, bookcases, desks, beds,
carpets, rugs, mirrors, dishes, lamps,
ornaments, clothes... and more!

Is it in good condition? We'll buy it!

Is it in bad condition? We'll buy it!

Look in your grandparents' attic and call

Paul's Vintage Mall

07026420102

vintagemall@email.com

24 Plot Street, Preston

Which ad will you answer if you want to _____ ?

- A. rent a room
- B. buy brand new furniture
- C. sell something
- D. buy something used
- E. shop at a mall
- F. renovate your furniture
- G. buy old dresses
- H. spend no money

□ □ □ □ □ □ □

B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6).
There are two choices you do not need to use.

Getting our houses in order

Nowadays, more and more cities are facing a shortage of housing. The main reasons for this are a growing population and a lack of land which can be built on. Increases in sea level have not helped matters, and some places are actually (1) _____ to hold on to areas which are next to the sea.

One city that has decided to give up the fight and go with the flow is Amsterdam. Since 1997, authorities from the Dutch city have been (2) _____ called IJburg, which is located to the east of the city centre. IJburg consists of six man-made islands in the IJmeer lake, one of which is home to a community of floating houses. The first stage, completed in 2011, featured 93 such houses, but more will be added as long as there is enough interest from people (3) _____ to the area.

Possible inhabitants of the suburb can rent an area of water for fifty years at a price of around €360,000. They then order their (4) _____ and state any preferences they may have, such as the number of rooms or the layout of the interior. The house is built in a factory and when it is complete, it is towed along the river to the area that the owner has rented.

Inhabitants of the floating homes never need to worry about floods or rising waters again. The buildings are fixed at the side of the lake, but are free to move upwards or downwards (5) _____ of the water.

The area's first residents started (6) _____ back around 2010, and, so far, their opinions have been very positive. Rik Bos, who is a resident of IJburg, enjoys admiring the beautiful view from his new house. 'It was always an ambition of mine to live next to a lake, and now I'm actually living on a lake!' he says. 'It really is a dream come true.'



- A. floating house
- B. looking to move
- C. fighting hard
- D. becoming difficult
- E. living in their floating homes
- F. depending on the level
- G. keeping areas of land
- H. building a new suburb

Exam Tip

- Read the instructions and the title of the text carefully. This will help you to predict the text's content.
- Read the text quickly, without paying attention to gaps, so as to understand its meaning.
- Read the phrases A-H.
- Read the sentences in the text from which the phrases have been removed, and decide what the missing phrases could be about.
- Reread the phrases A-H and decide which of them fits into each gap. Pay attention to the vocabulary as well as any pronouns used to refer to other words (e.g. *it*, *they*, *this*, *there*), both in the text and in the phrases A-H.
- Note that two of the phrases A-H do not fit into any gap.
- After filling all the gaps, read the full text and decide whether it makes sense. Read the phrases that you haven't used and make sure that they do not fit anywhere.

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

THINK OUTSIDE THE BOX

What can you do with 300 million empty boxes? Well, if they are shipping containers, then you can put in (1) _____ furniture and windows and live in them. Shipping containers make modern, environmentally friendly and inexpensive houses, and empty ones—some (2) _____ very good condition—can be found at ports all around the world. In some places, they are a source of cheap housing (3) _____ young people and the homeless. For people who do not like the idea of living in a big box, there are some very beautiful and unusual homes made from containers, and several can



be joined to make a very spacious flat or house. In warm countries, many make use of the sun for heating and have balconies. Some people are choosing houses like (4) _____ because of their possibilities and not just because they are green and low cost. There are also those who live in just one container, who say they like living in a small space. One thing's for sure, there are (5) _____ empty containers around and it's amazing what you can do with a big box.

1. A. a few
2. A. on
3. A. for the
4. A. those
5. A. plenty of

- B. many
- B. at
- B. to
- B. these
- B. lots

- C. some
- C. in
- C. to these
- C. this
- C. few

- D. any
- D. of
- D. for
- D. it
- D. little



COMFORT TOWN

Kyiv's nearly three million residents have a lot of different housing options to choose from, but the community of Comfort Town may be the most unique. Located in a (6) _____ area just outside the city centre, Comfort Town was built on the site of an old, abandoned factory, and the first residents arrived in 2012. The (7) _____ blocks of Comfort Town have been brightly (8) _____ in a rainbow of colours, making the neighbourhood easy to recognise. Inside the gated community, there are one-, two- and three-bedroom apartments, each with a separate kitchen and living area. The apartments (9) _____ central courtyards and the whole complex is child friendly, with lots of green spaces and playgrounds. The neighbourhood is complete with its own schools, sports (10) _____ and shops.

6. A. local
7. A. building
8. A. drawn
9. A. overlook
10. A. courts

- B. residential
- B. flat
- B. designed
- B. oversee
- B. matches

- C. rural
- C. detached
- C. decorated
- C. overwhelm
- C. facilities

- D. community
- D. tower
- D. painted
- D. overtake
- D. comforts

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you write letters or emails to friends?
- What do you usually write to them about?
- What kind of information would you include if you were moving house or changing neighbourhoods?

A Read the email below. Why is Ben writing to Jason?

New email

Hi Jason,

How have you been? Guess what! I have some exciting news!

I've just recently moved house. Some friends of mine were looking for a housemate so I grabbed the opportunity to live in the suburbs for a change. I'm really happy, even though I now have to get up earlier to get to my classes on time.

The house is great! It's spacious and fully furnished and is located in a quiet, residential area. It's just been renovated so everything's new inside. The rent is also really low.

By the way, there's a spare bedroom so I can put you up for a weekend if you like. That way we can catch up on each other's news.

What's been happening in your life? Send me a reply as soon as you can!

Speak to you soon!

Yours,
Ben



B Read the email again and answer the questions. In which paragraph (1-5) does Ben:

- ask for a reply?
- invite his friend over for the weekend?
- express his emotions about developments?
- describe the house and neighbourhood?
- give his news?

C Read the phrases 1-8 and the plan on the next page. In which part do they belong? Write the phrases in the plan. There is one extra phrase that you will not need.

- I'm looking forward to hearing from you.
- It was nice to hear from you again.
- Well, here's the latest.
- It is located...
- Sorry I haven't written for so long, but I've been busy.
- How about...
- Anyway, enough about me. What have you been up to?
- I felt so happy/excited/sad when...

PLAN

An email/letter to a friend

We write an informal email/letter to people we know, usually a family member or friend. Apart from giving personal information about our lives, an informal email/letter can also express our emotions (happiness, joy, sadness, etc.) and can include an invitation, apology, request for advice, etc.

GREETING

Greet the person you are writing to.

Dear Bill, Hi Darin, Hello Mary, Dear Mum,

OPENING PARAGRAPH

Begin your email/letter and say why you're writing.

Use set phrases like:

- How have you been?
- Thanks for your last email.
- I haven't heard from you for ages.
- Sorry I didn't reply sooner, but...
- I'm writing to tell you about...
- Guess what! I have some exciting news.

MAIN PART

Give your news and express your emotions.

Use phrases like:

- The good news is...
- I've (just) recently...
- You won't believe it but...
- I'm really glad/happy/sad/disappointed because...

Express your emotions.

Describe the area/place/etc.

- It has got...
- It has just been decorated/renovated/mended.
- There is/are...
- It is in good/bad condition.
- It is spacious/cosy/functional etc.

Extend an invitation.

- I was wondering if you would like to...
- I was hoping you would...
- Would you like to...

CLOSING PARAGRAPH

State anything you want to emphasise, ask for news and end your email/letter.

Use phrases like:

- What's happening in your life?
- What about you? Do you still...?
- Waiting for your email/reply.
- Make sure you write and tell me your news.
- Well, that's all for now. I have to go.

SIGNING OFF

Use a signature ending and your first name below that.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| • Yours, | • Take care, | • Bye for now, | • Keep in touch, |
| Ben | Jill | Frank | Sue |

Exam Tip

When writing an email/letter to a friend:

- Use the appropriate layout.
- Organise it into paragraphs as shown in the plan.
- Use appropriate expressions/phrases to express your emotions, give news, extend/accept/refuse an invitation, etc.
- Use informal language and expressions (e.g. *well, of course, anyway, you know, by the way*).
- Use standard grammar and spelling conventions. Don't use forms such as *wanna, CUL8R*, etc.
- Use short forms (e.g. *I'm, don't*).
- Use exclamations (e.g. *Guess what!*) and direct questions (e.g. *What have you been up to?*).

D You have received the following email from your friend Dave.

It's been a long time since we last spoke. How have you been? You mentioned in your last email that you were moving house. Well, what's your new place like? By the way, have you made any plans for the summer? Perhaps we can meet up and do something together.

Write back and tell me all your news.

Regards,
Dave

Write an email to him in which you

- give your news
- describe your house
- invite your friend to spend a few days with you in the summer.

Write an email of at least 100 words.

Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Unit 3: School

Key Vocabulary 08

School subjects

Шкільні предмети

art образотворче мистецтво
 biology біологія
 business administration управління (бізнесом)
 business studies підприємництво
 chemistry хімія
 civic education громадянська освіта
 English англійська мова
 foreign languages іноземні мови
 French французька мова
 geography географія
 German німецька мова
 history історія
 ICT інформаційні технології (інформатика)
 mathematics/maths математика
 music музика
 physical education (PE) фізичне виховання (фізкультура)
 physics фізика
 religious education релігійна освіта
 science природничі науки (біологія, хімія, фізика)
 sport спорт

Types of schools

Типи шкіл

boarding school школа-інтернат
 college коледж
 evening classes вечірні заняття
 kindergarten дитячий садок
 language school мовна школа
 lower secondary school гімназія
 nursery school ясла
 police/military academy академія поліції / військова академія
 polytechnic політехнічний заклад освіти

primary school молодша школа
 private school приватна школа
 secondary school середня школа
 state school державна школа
 technical college технікум
 university університет
 vocational school професійно-технічна школа

Things and places

Предмети та місця

canteen їдальня
 classroom класна кімната
 computer room комп'ютерний клас
 gym(nasium) спортивний клас
 hall коридор
 headteacher's office кабінет директора
 library бібліотека
 locker шафа
 notebook зошит, блокнот
 noticeboard дошка оголошень
 playground ігровий майданчик
 rubber гумка
 ruler лінійка
 school bag шкільний портфель, рюкзак
 science lab лабораторія
 sharpener точилка
 sports field спортивне поле
 staffroom кімната для персоналу
 uniform форма
 whiteboard біла дошка

Studying at school

Навчання в школі

absence відсутність
 attend lessons/classes відвідувати уроки / заняття
 attendance присутність
 be expelled from school бути відрахованим зі школи

be present/absent бути присутнім / відсутнім
 broaden one's horizons/ knowledge розвивати навички
 certificate свідоцтво
 cheat in the exam обманювати під час екзамену
 class tutor класний керівник
 cram all night for a test / before an exam готуватися всю ніч до контрольної роботи / екзамену
 develop skills розвивати навички
 do homework робити домашнє завдання
 enrol at an institution / on a course вступити до школи, університету / на курси
 enrolment запис (до школи, на курси)
 extracurricular activities позакласні заходи
 fail/pass an exam не скласти / скласти екзамен
 final exam випускний екзамен
 free period вільний час
 get a scholarship отримати стипендію
 get into university вступити до університету
 get marks отримати оцінки
 get nervous before an exam / a test нервувати перед екзаменом / контрольною роботою
 grade оцінка
 graduate from university закінчити університет
 high standards of teaching високі стандарти викладання
 learn by heart вчити напам'ять
 leave school закінчити школу
 make mistakes робити помилки
 make progress робити успіхи
 mock exam пробний екзамен
 motivation мотивація

participate in a lesson брати участь під час уроку
 pass to the next class перейти / бути зарахованим до наступного класу
 play truant прогулювати
 quick/short test коротке / швидке опитування
 resit/retake a geography examination перекладати екзамен з географії повторно
 revise for an exam повторювати перед екзаменом
 school report табель
 school trip шкільна подорож
 school-leaving exams випускні екзамени
 set a lot of homework задавати багато домашніх завдань
 skip/miss lessons/classes пропустити уроки / заняття
 student exchange обмін учнями
 study hard сумлінно навчатися
 take/do a course in навчатися, проходити курс
 take/sit an exam скласти екзамен
 (new/modern) teaching methods (новітні / сучасні) методи навчання
 term семестр (чверть)
 textbook/coursebook підручник
 (school) timetable розклад уроків (занять)

Students and teachers Учні та вчителі

ambitious амбітний
 (in)competent (не)компетентний
 creative творчий
 demanding вимогливий
 fair/unfair справедливий / несправедливий
 messy безладний
 motivated мотивований
 motivating мотиваційний, той, що мотивує
 organised організований
 patient терплячий
 punctual пунктуальний
 strict суворий
 systematic систематичний
 understanding той, хто розуміє

Violence at school Насильство в школі

bully цькувати
 different forms of aggression різні форми агресії
 physical and verbal abuse фізичне та вербальне насильство
 victim жертва

Other words and phrases Інші слова та вирази

bell дзвоник
 classmate/schoolmate однокласник(ця) / той, хто навчається в одній школі
 compulsory/optional classes обов'язкова / додаткова освіта
 entrance exam вступний екзамен
 examiner екзаменатор
 have primary/secondary/higher/vocational education мати початкову / середню / вищу / професійно-технічну освіту
 have/take private lessons in (chemistry) брати приватні уроки з (хімії)
 I'm doing political science. Я вивчаю політологію.
 I'm in the third year of law/medical school. Я на третьому курсі юридичного / медичного факультету

lecturer викладач
 parent-teacher meeting батьківські збори
 postgraduate studies післядипломна освіта
 provide/offer lessons/classes забезпечувати / пропонувати уроки / заняття
 sit at a desk with someone сидіти за партою з кимось

Adjectives + prepositions Прикметники з прийменниками

anxious about занепокоєний (кимось / чимось)
 bored with той, якому нудно
 curious about зацікавлений (кимось / чимось)

excellent at досконалий (в чомусь)
 (be) fond of захоплюватися (чимось / кимось)
 good at вдало робити (щось)
 (be) late for запізнитися на
 nervous about знервований з приводу (чого-небудь)
 patient with терплячий (з приводу чогось / когось)
 pleased with задоволений (чимось / кимось)
 qualified for кваліфікований для (чогось)
 terrible at жахливо знати / розбиратися в (чомусь)
 tired of втомлений від (чогось / когось)
 useful for корисний для (чогось)
 worried about занепокоєний чимось
 (be) wrong about помилятися щодо (чогось / когось)

A On the right, there is a student's answer to the question, 'What is your favourite subject?' Use the words in the box and complete it.

foreign languages learn
teaching subject lessons
communicate fair cheat
motivated mark



My favourite (1) _____ at school is English. I find (2) _____ quite easy to (3) _____. I think that this is probably because I like to (4) _____ with other people. Another thing is that my English teacher enjoys (5) _____ the subject and his (6) _____ are well-prepared and interesting. He is also (7) _____; he would never give you an unjust (8) _____. So students feel very (9) _____ to study. The only time I have ever seen him lose his temper is when someone tried to (10) _____ on a test. It's hard work, but it pays off in the future!

B In pairs, explain the difference between the following pairs of words/phrases:

1. classmate - schoolmate
2. do homework - set homework
3. entrance exam - school-leaving exam
4. classroom - staffroom
5. free period - term

C Make true sentences about yourself and your school achievements by completing the gaps.

1. I go to a _____ school.
2. At school I'm really good at _____.
3. I'm interested in _____.
4. On the other hand, I'm bored with _____.
5. I'll probably pass my exams with _____ marks.
6. What stresses me most at my school is _____.
7. I like / don't like my school because _____.

D Complete the gaps in these sentences with do or make in the correct form.

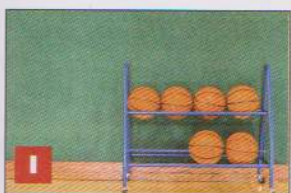
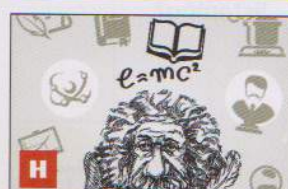
1. My brother helped me _____ my history project.
2. I got a reward for _____ a lot of progress this term.
3. I keep on _____ the same mistakes; it really frustrates me!
4. I always _____ my homework after taking the dog for a walk.
5. Are you interested in _____ a course in technical drawing?

E Choose the words in the box that collocate with the words/phrases given (1-5). Some words may be used more than once.

extra prepare for attend vocational nursery
sit/take evening compulsory high public
cheat in primary fail boarding secondary
optional higher retake cram for

1. _____ an exam
2. _____ activities
3. _____ school
4. _____ classes
5. _____ education

F Match the school subjects 1-12 with the pictures A-L.



1. art

2. biology

3. chemistry

4. English

5. geography

6. history

7. information technology (IT)

8. maths

9. music

10. physical education (PE)

11. physics

12. religious education

G Work in pairs. Tell your partner what your first day at (primary / lower secondary / secondary) school was like. When you have finished, exchange roles.

Useful phrases

I remember the day I went to... for the first time. I was...

On my first day at...

When I first entered..., I felt...

My teacher seemed to be... and my classmates were...

H Ask your parents, grandparents, aunts or uncles about their schooldays. How was their experience different from yours?

	THEN	NOW
school facilities		
teachers		
uniforms		
student-teacher relations		

Useful phrases

There used to be...

When my parents went to school, the teachers / the students...

We have to / don't have to...

My (grand)parents had to / didn't have to...

They used to...

PRE-LISTENING TASK

Before you do Exam Tasks A and B, read the Exam Tip and answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to underline key words in questions?
2. Why is it important to listen carefully during the second listening?

Exam Tip

- Read the instructions to learn what the text will be about.
- Read the questions and options and underline key words. This will help you focus on the more relevant parts of the recording.
- During the first listening, listen for the key words. This will help you choose the correct option.
- Check your answers during the second listening. Remember: you must pay attention to the general meaning of what is said, not just to individual words!

A Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What does Nancy believe she will probably end up being in the future?
 - A. a lawyer
 - B. a waitress
 - C. unemployed
2. What does Nancy suggest Sean should do?
 - A. study business administration
 - B. become a singer
 - C. study business administration and become a singer
3. When is enrolment?
 - A. 14th May
 - B. 20th April
 - C. 14th April
4. How long will it take to get to any one of the universities in the future?
 - A. 30 minutes
 - B. 20 minutes
 - C. 10 minutes
5. What will Nancy have to buy for her Arts and Crafts project?
 - A. glue
 - B. coloured paper
 - C. scissors



B Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. Language schools in the UK give their students a chance to see the country.		
2. Language schools stay open all year long.		
3. The courses can only be attended by young people.		
4. The students spend most of their time in the classrooms.		
5. The teachers come from various English-speaking countries.		

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Why is knowing foreign languages important for young people nowadays?
- What is your favourite subject at school? Why?
- What is your least favourite subject at school? Why?
- What qualities should a good teacher have?



PRE-READING TASK

- What do you know about bullying?
- Where do you think bullying takes place?
- Have you or anyone you know ever been a victim of bullying?

Before you do Exam Task A, read the Exam Tip and underline the two things which you consider to be the most important. Compare and discuss your choices with your partner.

Exam Tip

- Read the text quickly for general understanding.
- Look through the list of phrases and read the text again, this time paragraph by paragraph.
- Pay special attention to the sentences before and after each gap. The correct option must logically complete the writer's meaning and grammatically fit the gap.
- Take note of reference items (*he, she, it, there, etc.*) and identify what they refer to. This will help you understand the text.

A Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6).
There are two choices you do not need to use.

Anti-bullying week

Last year at Lanford High, many parents and teachers were worried about the rise in bullying. There was a PTA (Parent-Teacher Association) meeting and they invited the organisation NMB (NO MORE BULLIES) to attend. NMB works to help stop bullying in schools and also aims to create awareness about cyberbullying. This type of bullying occurs through the use of social media and (1) _____, especially among children.



NMB informed the PTA of some of the signs of bullying. The physical signs, such as cuts, bruises and torn clothes, are easy to spot. There are, however, also emotional and behavioural ones that need to be kept in mind. A child that acts strangely, stops eating or talking, is unhappy and cries or often loses money and other personal belongings is definitely going through something (2) _____. The organisation gave advice on how teachers and parents should talk to a child that they think (3) _____ and how best to deal with the bullies themselves. There was also a detailed discussion on cyberbullying. They placed emphasis on the importance of helping children understand what they need to look out for and (4) _____.

At the meeting, the school decided to have an Anti-Bullying Week, which turned out to be a huge success. The aim of this campaign was to raise awareness through discussion. Pupils were encouraged to speak out against bullying and (5) _____ to let victims of bullies know that they are there to help. One of the ideas that came from this campaign was to start a website and phone-line. These act as a support system (6) _____. There is also a link to the NMB website where students can reach online counsellors, 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

- A. bullies are often pupils who feel insecure
- B. is a victim of bullying
- C. that requires attention
- D. how to protect themselves from this type of bullying
- E. we must take action
- F. the teachers spoke to classes
- G. is increasingly common
- H. that may be used by anyone requiring help or advice about bullying



B Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Taking exams



Taking exams will be one of the most stressful times of your life, especially when you have your parents and your teachers telling you all the time how important exams are. You will probably be under even more pressure if you have an older brother or sister who has already done well in their exams and your parents expect you to do so too. But don't worry, because it's natural to feel stressed before taking an exam. In fact, research has shown that a little stress in your life can motivate and energise you. However, when the level of stress is too high, it can cause health problems.

When preparing for exams, there are many things you can do to lower your level of stress. First of all, you should not leave revision to the last minute. When you give yourself plenty of time to revise, you will be more confident and less stressed out, since you know that you have prepared well. If you don't understand something, getting stressed out will not help. Talk to your teacher or your classmates and ask them to help you out. Now, if you find that you cannot concentrate when you are studying, it is probably because you are too tired; take a short break as this will refresh you. Other things you should make sure you do when preparing for your exams are eat healthily and exercise regularly. Eating the right kind of food will give your brain the nutrients it needs. Exercising regularly will give you more energy, clear your mind and make you feel less stressed. Most importantly, give yourself some time for fun and relaxation, otherwise you will be too tired to study.

On the day of the exam, there is no point in worrying any longer over whether you have studied hard enough. You should, therefore, try to remain calm and do your best. If you do not do well, it is not the end of the world, and remember, there is no shame in retaking an exam you have failed.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What are some of the main rules in your school?
- Why is it important to succeed at school?
- Do you think that all subjects taught at school are of equal importance?
- What would your ideal school be like?

1. What makes students feel even more stressed out about taking exams?
 - A. teachers always telling their parents how important exams are
 - B. having a brother or a sister who is taking the same exam
 - C. pressure from their parents to do even better than their brother or sister
 - D. their parents' high expectations
2. What have scientists learnt about stress?
 - A. Even a little stress can be harmful to your health.
 - B. A lot of stress makes a person more energetic.
 - C. A little stress can have a positive effect on a person.
 - D. All unhealthy people have lots of stress.
3. What is one way to avoid feeling stressed out about taking an exam?
 - A. by revising for an exam up to the last minute
 - B. by starting your revision long before your exams
 - C. by doing plenty of revision exercises
 - D. by becoming more confident
4. What should you do if you can't concentrate?
 - A. Relax for a few minutes.
 - B. Eat some healthy food.
 - C. Get some exercise.
 - D. Go to sleep as you will awake refreshed.
5. What does the writer believe?
 - A. Failing an exam is not as embarrassing as retaking an exam.
 - B. There is no point in taking an exam if you haven't studied for it.
 - C. Life goes on even if you do badly in an exam.
 - D. Being calm will not help very much.

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Foreign Languages

Many people say they would be (1) _____ in learning a new language, but they lack the talent. These people were probably discouraged by a bad experience in school. In fact, most people are able to learn foreign languages if they work hard and are dedicated to their goal.

It doesn't take special (2) _____ to be an efficient language learner, just an efficient method. Some people (3) _____ evening classes in language schools while others prefer to take an online course. With hard work, you can (4) _____ progress and achieve fluency in communication, which is the aim of learning to speak a foreign language. And don't forget that learning a foreign language helps you (5) _____ your horizons.



- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. fond | B. curious | C. interested | D. interesting |
| 2. A. tips | B. skills | C. activities | D. lessons |
| 3. A. attend | B. do | C. study | D. pass |
| 4. A. do | B. make | C. take | D. set |
| 5. A. open | B. revise | C. develop | D. broaden |

Camping for Teenagers

When school finishes for the summer, most students like to go to places (6) _____ they can have fun. But not everyone has the same idea of 'fun'. There are teenagers who prefer going to special camps where they can learn survival skills. These camps, which can be found all over the world, usually accept teenagers aged between 16 and 18, and are often located near big cities.



At one such camp, teenagers spend (7) _____ days taking part in extreme sports, like rock climbing, and developing skills that will keep them alive if they find (8) _____ in danger. The campers are divided into groups and each group votes for a leader who will be in charge. The leader has to wake everyone up at six o'clock every morning. (9) _____ excursions to mountains, lakes and other places, where the campers learn to survive under difficult conditions, protecting not only themselves but also (10) _____. Towards the end of the camping period, there are events and competitions during which the groups can practice what have learnt.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. which | B. who | C. where | D. that |
| 7. A. more | B. their | C. all | D. the |
| 8. A. them | B. one | C. out | D. themselves |
| 9. A. There is | B. They're on | C. There are | D. There's some |
| 10. A. each other | B. each one | C. another | D. the other |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever written a formal letter? If yes, who did you write to and why?
- How does a formal letter differ from an informal letter?
- What kind of information would you ask for if you were thinking of enrolling at a college or on a course?

A Read the letter below and answer the questions by writing the letters A-E.

(A) Dear Sir / Madam,

(B) I am writing to you with reference to the advertisement for your college which I saw in 'English Speaking World' a week ago. I would appreciate it if you could send me some additional information about your college.

(C) I am a 19-year-old student from Ukraine and I have just passed my secondary school leaving exams with very good marks. I am interested in studying economics at your college and have various questions that I would like to ask.

Firstly, I would like to know how much these studies cost. I would also be interested in knowing if there is a possibility of applying for a scholarship to cover the cost of studies. Moreover, I would be grateful if you could inform me in detail about what kind of documents I should send to your college and when the deadline is.

(D) I thank you in advance for your time and assistance, and look forward to hearing from you.

(E) Yours faithfully,
David Horvath

David Horvath

Which part of the letter:

1. says why the person has written this letter?
2. functions as a greeting?
3. explains what the person wants to find out?
4. functions as a signature ending?
5. closes the letter in a polite way?
6. gives personal information?

Exam Tip

When writing a formal email/letter to an institution or person you don't know personally:

- use the appropriate layout.
- use appropriate expressions/phrases to start and end the email/letter, request information and make any other requests.
- organise it into paragraphs as shown in the plan on the next page.
- use the full form of verbs (e.g. *I am*, **not** *I'm*).
- use formal words and expressions.

PLAN

A formal email/letter requesting information

A formal email/letter requesting information is usually written to a company or organisation to ask for (additional) information about an advertisement you have seen or about the services they offer. You may also have to include personal information that is relevant to the situation (e.g. family background, education, skills and experience).

GREETING

Use a formal greeting, not first names.

- Dear Sir/Madam, Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms/Miss + last name,

OPENING PARAGRAPH

Begin by saying why you are writing. Use phrases like:

- I am writing to you in connection with...
- I am writing to you with regard to...
- I am writing to you with reference to...

Remember to mention when and where you saw the advertisement or came across the information.

Use phrases like:

- I saw/came across your advertisement in...
- I was informed of...
- I learnt about...

MAIN PART

Ask for information using indirect questions and make your requests in a formal and polite way. Use phrases like:

- Could you please send me further information/details about...?
- I am writing for more information about...
- I would be grateful if you could inform me about...
- I would like to ask you for...
- I would like you to send me a brochure / a pamphlet.

Remember to use linking words/phrases to list your questions:

Firstly, First of all, To begin with, Secondly, What is more, Furthermore, In addition, Apart from that, Finally, Lastly

CLOSING PARAGRAPH

End by thanking the recipient(s) and saying that you'd like a reply as soon as possible. Use phrases like:

- I look forward to hearing from you soon.
- I would appreciate a reply at your earliest convenience.
- Thanking you in advance for your time and assistance.
- Please send me a reply with any information as soon as possible.

SIGNING OFF

Use a formal signature ending and write your full name underneath it.

- Yours faithfully,
- Yours sincerely,

Remember: When you start your email/letter with *Dear Sir/Madam*, you always finish it with *Yours faithfully*. When you start your letter with a person's name, e.g. *Dear Mr Jones*, finish it with *Yours sincerely*.

B Read the following paragraph. Change the questions in italics into indirect questions using expressions from the plan.

I am a 20-year-old Ukrainian student and I have decided to study in England. I am especially interested in languages and the tourist industry, so I want to study tourism. *How much are the studies at your college? Do you offer any scholarships for your students? What documents should I send to you? What is the deadline for sending the application?*

C You have found the following advertisement about a language school on the Internet:



The Centre for Languages & Communication offers full- and part-time foreign language courses to anyone who wants to improve their language skills. For more information about lesson hours and fees, please visit our website or send an email to our director of studies, Mr Heatherstone.

Write an email to the Centre for Languages and Communication in which you

- say how you found out about the language school and state your reason for writing
- write about your level of English
- ask about the cost and the number of students per class.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Unit 4: Work

Key Vocabulary 11

Jobs Робота, професії

accountant бухгалтер
actor/actress актор/акторка
architect архітектор
baker пекар
bank clerk банківський працівник
bank manager менеджер банку
businessman/businesswoman бізнесмен (підприємець) / бізнес-леді
cashier касир
chemist хімік
clerk службовець
computer/IT specialist IT спеціаліст
computer programmer програміст
cook кухар
dentist стоматолог
director режисер
doctor лікар
driver водій
electrician електрик
engineer інженер
estate agent агент з продажу нерухомості
farmer фермер
fashion designer модельєр
financial director фінансовий директор
firefighter пожежник
fisherman рибалка
flight attendant стюарт, стюардеса
hairdresser перукар
insurance agent страховий агент
journalist журналіст
judge суддя
lawyer юрист
manager керівник
mechanic механік
musician музикант
nurse медсестра
optician оптик
photographer фотограф
police officer офіцер поліції
postman листоноша
priest священник

receptionist адміністратор
sales manager / director менеджер з продажу
sales representative торговий представник
salesman/saleswoman продавець
salesperson / shop assistant продавець, консультант
secretary секретар
surgeon хірург
teacher вчитель
ticket inspector контролер
travel agent туристичний агент
vet ветеринар
waiter/waitress офіціант/офіціантка

Kinds of jobs and work Види робіт та професій

a dead-end job безперспективна робота
a full-time/part-time job робота на повний робочий день/неповний робочий день
a highly-paid/well-paid job високооплачувана робота
a holiday job робота на канікулах
a job with a future перспективна робота
a low-paid/badly-paid job низькооплачувана робота
a permanent/steady job постійна робота
a temporary job тимчасова робота
an extra job додаткова робота
seasonal work сезонна робота

Adjectives describing jobs and work

Прикметники, які описують працю

work: stressful/physical/mental/ dangerous/tiring/back-breaking/ monotonous **робота:** напружена, фізична, розумова, небезпечна, виснажлива, монотонна

job: good/ideal/satisfying/ responsible/profitable **робота:** хороша, найкраща, задовольняє, відповідальна, прибуткова

work/job: boring/interesting/ fascinating/easy/difficult/ skilled/semi-skilled/unskilled/ time-consuming **праця:** нудна, цікава, захоплива, легка, важка, кваліфікована, малокваліфікована, некваліфікована, віднімає багато часу

Duties at work Обов'язки на роботі

cancel an appointment скасувати зустріч
do clerical work виконувати канцелярську роботу
do office work виконувати офісну роботу
I'm in charge of ten other people. Я керівник (відповідальний за) десятих людей.
It's not my responsibility. Це не входить у мої обов'язки.
make an appointment назначати зустріч
My duties include typing letters. В мої обов'язки входить друкувати листи.
prepare documents підготувати документи
run a company управляти компанією
send emails/faxes відправляти електронну пошту / факси
the person in charge of sth особа, яка відповідає за щось

Employment Працевлаштування

apply for a job працевлаштовуватись
apply for the post/position of подавати заяву на посаду
be employed/unemployed прийнятий на роботу/ безробітний

be given three-months' notice / get notice подавати заяву на звільнення
 be on the dole допомога по безробіттю
 be out of work / a job без роботи
 be permanently/temporarily employed мати постійну / тимчасову роботу
 bonus / extra money премія / додаткова грошова винагорода
 change a job змінювати місце роботи
 company car службовий автомобіль
 day/night shift денна / нічна зміна
 dismiss/fire sb звільняти когось
 employ працевлаштовувати
 employee / worker працівник
 employer працедавець
 employment centre центр зайнятості
 employment contract трудовий договір
 find employment знайти роботу, працевлаштуватися
 get / lose / give up / resign from a job отримувати/втрачати/кинути/звільнятися з роботи
 get a commission отримувати винагороду
 get a job as a працювати на посаді
 get a pay rise отримувати підвищення зарплатні
 get a promotion / get promoted отримувати підвищення
 get the sack / get sacked бути звільненим
 get unemployment benefit отримувати допомогу у зв'язку з безробіттям
 have a job працювати
 look for a job шукати роботу
 make sb redundant звільнити когось за скороченням штату
 perks of the job додаткові бонуси
 place of employment / workplace місце роботи
 run one's own business управляти власною фірмою
 self-employed самозайнятість
 sign a contract підписувати контракт
 start/finish work at починати/закінчувати роботу
 unemployment безробітний
 unemployment rate рівень безробіття

work flexitime гнучкий графік роботи
 work in shifts працювати по змінах
 working hours робочий час

Employees and employers Працівники та працедавці

committed зацікавлений
 competent/qualified компетентний/кваліфікований
 conscientious сумлінний
 devoted/dedicated відданий
 (in)experienced (не)досвідчений
 precise скрупульозний
 resourceful винахідливий
 respected той, якого поважають

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

a job description посадова інструкція
 a letter of application заява про прийняття на роботу
 conditions/terms of employment умови праці
 cover for sb замінити когось
 curriculum vitae (CV) резюме
 difficult working conditions важкі умови праці
 do business with sb працювати з кимось
 do the job виконувати роботу
 do voluntary work виконувати волонтерську роботу
 earn/make a living заробляти на життя
 fill in an application form заповнювати заявку на роботу
 gain experience отримувати досвід
 go for an interview йти на співбесіду
 have a day off мати / взяти вихідний день
 have a sense of responsibility мати почуття відповідальності
 have an accident at work нещасний випадок на роботі
 have no work experience без досвіду роботи
 He is going to become a lawyer. Він збирається стати юристом.
 He performs his duties with devotion. Він віддано працює.

He phoned in sick. Він телефонував повідомити, що він хворий.

How much / What do you think she makes? Скільки вона заробляє?

I make 300 pounds a week. Я заробляю 300 фунтів на тиждень.

I'm working to get enough money to buy a flat. Працюю, щоб заробити на житло.

In summer he did casual work picking strawberries. Влітку він працював на сезонних роботах зі збору полуниці.

income tax податок на прибуток

job centre центр зайнятості

job creation створення робочих місць

labour market ринок праці

live off one's salary/pension жити на зарплату / пенсію

pay плата

pension пенсія

qualifications кваліфікація

qualify здобувати кваліфікацію

retrain as перекваліфікуватись на

salary заробітна плата

skills навички

support/maintain a family утримувати родину

take a holiday / be on leave взяти відпустку / бути у відпустці

The pay is good here. Тут гарна оплата праці.

training course тренінг

wages заробітна плата (виплачується за фізичну, виробничу, механізовану роботу)

What's the pay like? Яка заробітна плата?

work/do overtime понаднормова робота

work in advertising працювати в рекламі

workaholic трудоголік

workmate / colleague from work колега з роботи

A What jobs are presented in the pictures? What character traits do the people need to have to do these jobs? You may also want to look at the Key Vocabulary in Unit 1 (Character traits).



Useful phrases

I think a... should be...

Being a... requires having...

A... must have / be...

One of the character traits that a... should possess is...

If you want to be a... you have to be...

B Write the opposites of the following expressions.

1. badly paid - _____
2. find a job - _____
3. day shift - _____
4. make an appointment - _____
5. a job with a future - _____

6. part-time job - _____
7. physical work - _____
8. a temporary job - _____
9. employ someone - _____
10. an experienced worker - _____

C Circle the words or phrases in bold that complete the sentences correctly.

When I was 27, I started my first job. It really wasn't easy to find a(n) (1) **well-paid / extra** and interesting job then. I did a lot of casual work, however, I couldn't (2) **support / bring up** my family so I had to look for a better job. I worked as a kitchen helper for a while but soon I was (3) **sacked / self-employed** and my husband (4) **also got a commission / was also made redundant**, so we were both (5) **on the dole / dismissed**.

Not having any chances of finding a job with a future, as I didn't have either work experience or good (6) **qualifications / salary**, I had to go abroad to make a living. I did seasonal work picking strawberries. The pay was good, but the (7) **workmates / working conditions** were really difficult. When I came back, my husband and I decided to (8) **start our own business / go for an interview** even though it would require a lot of hard work and dedication.

Now, we are 55 and we (9) **retired / got a pay rise** two years ago. Our son is (10) **in charge of the company / given notice** and we are living happily off our high pensions.

This just goes to show that you can be successful, provided you never give up hope.

D Work in pairs. Think of as many jobs as you can that exist in the following places.

1. bank: _____
2. hospital: _____
3. hotel: _____
4. restaurant: _____
5. shop: _____

E Work in pairs. Compare and contrast the pictures using the expressions given.

have to be precise
special training required
have specific tasks to do
have to wear a uniform / safety helmet
must dress smartly
indoor/outdoor work
shouldn't have a fear of heights
special equipment/tools
work alone
self-employed
contact with people
steady income (wage)
work under supervision
skills required
chances of promotion
steady working hours
pressured by time

work at one's own pace
work in shifts
have to be (computer) literate
dangerous work



Useful phrases

The job in the first / second picture shows / involves...
The job of the secretary / businesswoman working on the computer is...
A worker fixing cables should / shouldn't / must...

A Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What job does the man do?



A



B



C

2. Where does the woman work?



A



B



C

3. What time does the shop close?



A



B



C

4. Why was the slogan used?

- A. to advertise the young man's desire to travel abroad
- B. to advertise the young man's desire to stay and work in his country
- C. to advertise the young man's desire to promote his skills in advertising

5. What is true about the man who got promoted?

- A. He knew what to expect at the meeting.
- B. He is used to working overtime.
- C. He doesn't often see his friends.

6. Who is the woman talking to?

- A. People who are going to be working in different departments.
- B. People who have to go through training before starting work.
- C. People who have already met the CEO of the company.

B Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. Only school leavers will be interested in what Reg Nicholson has to say.		
2. It's not necessary to type application forms.		
3. School leavers haven't got much to include in their CVs.		
4. Employers can learn a lot about a candidate from their after-school activities.		
5. You shouldn't apply for a job without any references.		

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What are the most popular part-time jobs for young people? Why?
- What are the top five jobs in Ukraine? What makes them so popular?
- Are the jobs of a doctor/farmer/vet/pilot/politician/psychologist/sportsman easy or difficult? Why?

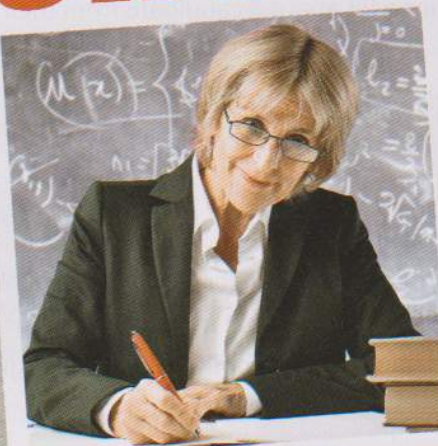


POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What would your ideal job be? Why?
- What would it involve?

A Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

CAREER CHOICES



I'm often asked the question 'How did you become a journalist?' You see, everybody expected me to follow in my father's footsteps and become a doctor. Well, during my last year of school I was given the opportunity to visit a career guidance counsellor and I drove her crazy with my choices.

My first choice was a chocolate tester. Although my counsellor wasn't very impressed, she got me the information. I discovered that chocolate testers earn a lot of money, so I was sure I had found my dream job. However, when I found out that chocolate testers don't just sit around eating chocolate all day, I lost my enthusiasm.

It seems that they are also brand managers, which means they are involved in the marketing and promotion of the product. I finally decided against it when I realised a university degree would be needed.

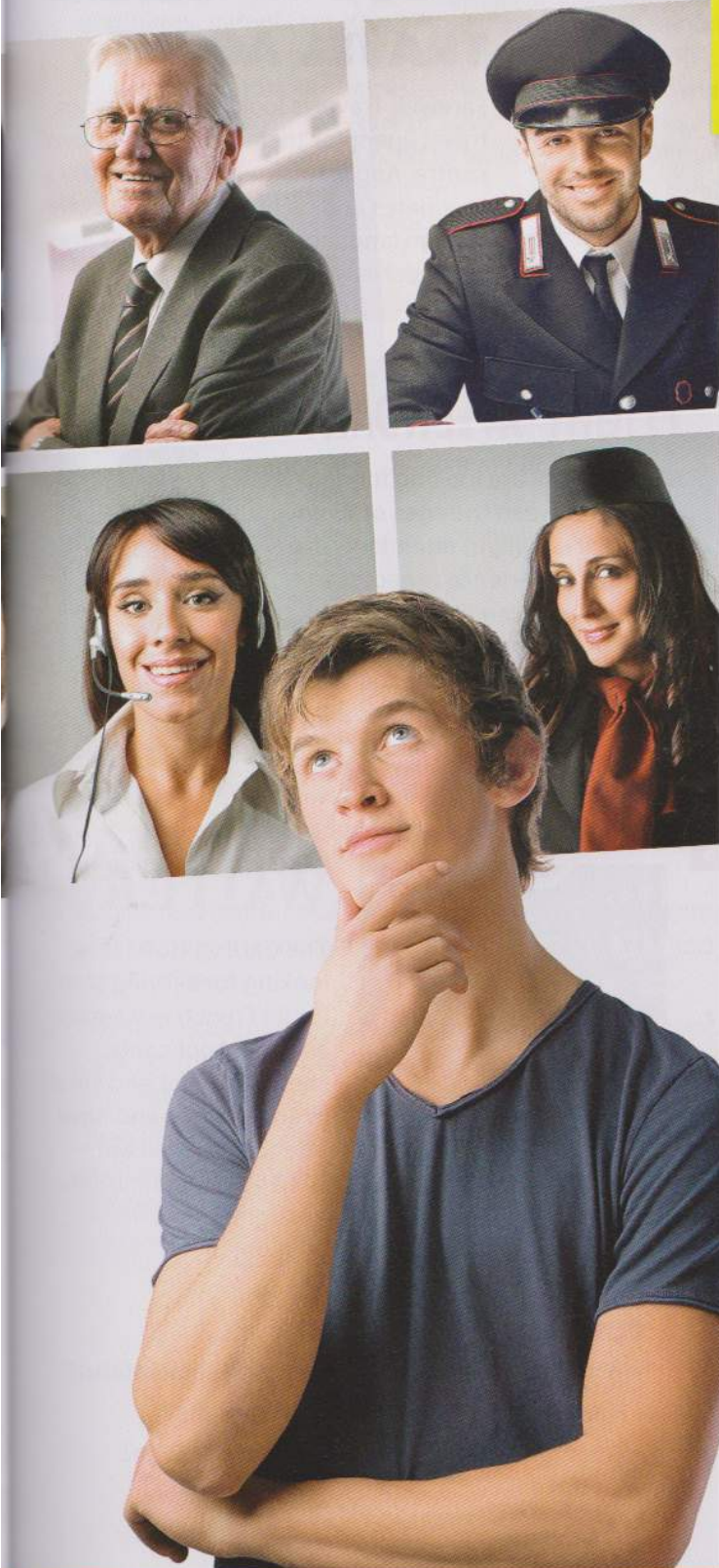
Next, I thought of becoming a football referee. I had loved football from a young age, but being a professional footballer was out of the question, as I couldn't play very well. Anyway, it seems that referees must be able to run two and a half miles in less than twelve minutes and they are required to take exams throughout their training. On top of that, only after many years of experience – and if they are lucky – do they get the chance to referee big professional matches. So, my dream of showing David Beckham a red card was shattered.

Finally, I had this brilliant idea of becoming a dog stylist. That was after I realised how much money our dog stylist, Shirley, was being paid every time we visited her with our Lhasa Apso, Philipo. However, once, while she was styling Philipo, I noticed that he tried to bite her. 'It happens all the time,' she told me. As you can imagine, that really put me off.

To cut a long story short, all this research made me realise I had a gift for investigation, so by the end of the school year I had decided to become a journalist.

Exam Tip

In Exam Task B, Questions 4 and 5 check if you understand the text as a whole. In this type of question, you may be asked what kind of text it is, where it might appear, what the title of the text could be, etc. So, first, you must read the questions carefully. Then, read the text quickly and try to get a general understanding of it. Rewad the options for each question carefully to see which one best suits the text as a whole. Be careful with options which refer only to a part of the text or include words or phrases from the text but do not describe it globally.



1. What did the writer want to become when he was in his last year of school?
 - A. a doctor
 - B. a journalist
 - C. a career guidance counsellor
 - D. He wasn't sure.
2. What was the main reason why the writer decided not to become a chocolate tester?
 - A. He didn't want to become a brand manager.
 - B. He didn't want to study at university.
 - C. He didn't like marketing.
 - D. He didn't want to sit around eating chocolate all day.
3. Which of the following is **NOT** required in order to referee a big professional match?
 - A. being able to play football very well
 - B. having a lot of experience
 - C. being physically fit
 - D. having a bit of luck
4. Who is Philipo?
 - A. a dog stylist
 - B. Shirley's dog
 - C. the dog of the writer's family
 - D. the dog of one of Shirley's clients
5. What does the writer mean by the phrase 'a gift for investigation' in the last paragraph?
 - A. an ability to write good stories
 - B. a present which was not expected
 - C. a career in journalism
 - D. a talent at discovering facts

B Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

1

HOTEL RECEPTIONIST

Have you got an outgoing personality? Can you speak two foreign languages reasonably well? Do you like working with people? If you answer yes to these three questions, then maybe you are the person we are looking for. We require a receptionist for our top-class tourist hotel. The job involves shiftwork, from 7am until 3pm, or from 2pm until 11pm. Candidates must also be available every second weekend.



3



TRAVEL AGENT

Farewell Travel is looking for a trainee travel agent for their office in the town centre. Applicants must be university graduates and be fluent in at least one foreign language. Computer skills are also necessary for the job.

2

TEACHER

Edenbridge Secondary Modern is looking for someone with a Master's degree in English Literature. The successful applicant should have at least five years teaching experience and also be in a position to teach history and geography at lower levels.



4

FLIGHT ATTENDANT

SMOOTH AIR are looking for people between the ages of 18 and 35 to work as flight attendants. No previous experience is necessary as successful candidates will be given full training. Applicants must be over 1.65 metres tall and must enclose a recent photo of themselves with their application.



5

WAITER



The Carlton Hotel is looking for serving staff for its French restaurant and bar. Applicants should be neat and smart in appearance and have some previous work experience. You will be required to work late nights and weekends. Salary according to experience plus good tips.

Which of the advertisements/positions _____?

- A. has age restrictions
- B. is a part-time job
- C. mentions earnings
- D. requires computer skills
- E. has to do with seasonal work
- F. offers opportunities for promotion
- G. requires a lot of past experience in the field
- H. requires knowledge of more than one foreign language

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What jobs do you think have a high social status?
- How important is work in a person's life?
- What jobs would you never like to do? Why?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

ABOUT UNEMPLOYMENT

Unemployment is a strong indicator of a country's overall economic health and an unemployment (1) _____ of between 3.5% and 4.5% is normal even in a healthy economy. Unemployment can be divided into three categories: frictional, structural and cyclical. Frictional unemployment refers to people in the (2) _____ market who have left jobs voluntarily or are seeking work for the first time such as new graduates, parents returning from leave, or people who are moving to a new area. This type of unemployment is typically (3) _____, lasting only a few months. In contrast, structural unemployment affects people who have lost their jobs due to advances in technology or outsourcing, and is usually long term. These workers will often need to be (4) _____ if they want to re-enter the workforce. Finally, cyclical unemployment occurs when there is a decreased demand for products and services. This forces employers to make workers (5) _____ and is associated with economies in recession.



- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. scale | B. level | C. force | D. rate |
| 2. A. labour | B. employment | C. vocational | D. professional |
| 3. A. restricted | B. temporary | C. committed | D. unlisted |
| 4. A. revised | B. redirected | C. retrained | D. recovered |
| 5. A. profitable | B. monotonous | C. competent | D. redundant |

Polar Press

Polar Press is the first Bradford free press. Sanjay Ray, one of the writers, who used to be employed by Bradford Evening News, explains, 'We wanted Polar Press to be free, so that everyone (6) _____ read it. We make money from the people or companies who advertise on our pages. Of course, they are all people or companies whose work we like.'

Polar Press produces a weekly magazine, has a website and (7) _____ be found on social media sites. The company is run by a team of young journalists and graphic designers with fresh ideas and a lot of imagination.

The magazine features stories about the latest in art, music, theatre and fashion, as well as stories from Bradford, such as the hairdresser whose shop turns into an informal music place after he stops cutting hair. It (8) _____ even include some stories from the surrounding area of Bedfordshire.

Annie Lee, one of the photographers, said, 'It's very (9) _____ to make a living doing something you like and working with friends. In the morning I look forward to what I'm going to do, instead of thinking, I (10) _____ not go to work!'

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. should | B. must | C. could | D. ought |
| 7. A. may | B. could | C. can | D. should |
| 8. A. had better | B. may | C. must | D. able to |
| 9. A. satisfying | B. satisfied | C. satisfy | D. satisfaction |
| 10. A. would rather | B. ought | C. had better | D. must |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever had a summer job? What was it? How did you get it?
- What kind of procedures do you go through when you apply for a job?
- What kind of information do you think should be included in a letter of application?

A Read the letter of application which was written in response to the following advertisement. Then read the sentences 1-8 and tick the ones that apply to the letter.

ASSISTANT GROUP LEADER REQUIRED TO WORK AT AN ENGLISH LANGUAGE CAMP

- Must be responsible and reliable and have good communication skills
- Must be at least 16 years old
- Must be able to speak English fluently
- Previous experience in working with children preferred

Apply in writing to: English language camp, 34 Bond St., Cambridge, CB1 2TN, United Kingdom

Dear Sir / Madam,

I am writing in response to your advertisement which appeared yesterday in The Daily Newspaper. I would like to apply for the position of assistant group leader at the English language camp.

I am an 18-year-old student in my final year of secondary school. I have been learning English for 6 years and I have just passed the Cambridge FCE exam.

In addition, I have some experience in dealing with children since I worked as a volunteer at a children's home last winter. This job taught me how to be communicative and well organised. What is more, I am a creative and energetic person who likes being with people. Therefore, I believe I am a suitable candidate for the job.

I can work from June to August and I am available for an interview at your convenience. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,
Daniel Holl

The writer:

1. knows the person he/she is writing to.
2. uses set phrases to begin and end the letter.
3. mentions where he/she saw the advertisement.
4. uses short forms and abbreviations.
5. describes his/her qualifications and skills.
6. describes some bad qualities he/she has.
7. talks about his/her previous experience and its benefits.
8. explains why he/she is suitable for the job.

B Read the following letter. It contains a lot of unnecessary information and it is not divided into paragraphs. Cross out the sentences which should not appear in this type of letter and divide it into paragraphs.

Dear Ms Jones,

I would like to apply for the position of summer staff advertised in *Sunny Day* on 1st of April. I am nineteen years old and I have just passed my secondary school leaving exams. I am fed up with books and learning. I am not very happy with my Maths exam since I have never been very good at Maths. I believe I possess a good command of English since I have passed my English exam with very good results. Moreover, I often have the opportunity to communicate in English because I have a lot of friends abroad. Martin from Scotland is especially handsome. I have some experience in working with children because my class cooperated with the local primary school and we organised a lot of parties and competitions for the pupils. However, the Christmas Carol Concert was a disaster because the children could not sing at all. This experience helped me realise that I am a responsible and patient person, and I can quickly gain children's attention and respect, which I think is necessary for the job you offer. I need the money because I am saving for a car, so I can start work in July. I am available for an interview at your convenience. I look forward to hearing from you. Yours sincerely,

Katalin Horváth

PLAN

An email/letter of application

An application for a job, scholarship, grant, etc. is a type of formal email/letter where your task is to persuade the addressee that you are the right person to receive thing that is offered. In this email/letter you give information about your education, experience and character in an effort to make a good impression.

Greeting

Use a formal greeting, not first names.

- Dear Sir/Madam,
- Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms/Miss + surname,

Opening paragraph

Say where and when you saw the job/scholarship/grant/etc. advertised and use set phrases to state what you are applying for.

- I am writing with regard to/concerning your advertisement in... (name of newspaper/magazine + date) / on... (website).
- I noticed your advertisement in... and I am writing to apply for the position of...
- I am interested in applying for the job/scholarship/grant... as advertised in...
- I am interested in working as...

Main part

Describe your qualifications, skills and experience that are relevant to the job/scholarship/grant/etc. you are applying for. If applying for a job, provide a brief description of your previous/present job. Include only important information, as the details are in your CV. Explain why you think you are suitable for the thing. Use phrases like:

- I have a degree in... / I will graduate at the end of the

year with a BA in...

- I have/hold a certificate in...
- I am fluent in... / able to... / good at... / familiar with...
- I have considerable experience in...
- As you can see from my CV, I...
- I am currently working/learning...
- At present I am...
- I worked full-time / part-time for/at...
- I am a responsible/hard-working person.
- I believe I am suitable for this job/position because...
- I strongly believe these qualities/qualifications/skills make me suitable for the job.

Closing paragraph

Mention your availability and express your hope that your application will be taken into consideration. If relevant, state that you have attached/enclosed your CV. Use set phrases like:

- You will also find my CV enclosed.
- I am available for an interview at your earliest convenience.
- Should you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact me.
- I hope my application will be taken into consideration.
- I look forward to hearing from you in the near future to schedule an interview at a time convenient to you.

Signing off

Use a formal signature ending and write your full name underneath it.

- Yours faithfully,
- Yours sincerely,

C You have seen the following advertisement in the *Daily News* and have decided to apply for the job.

RECEPTIONIST WANTED

SUNRISE HOTEL is looking for a receptionist to work during the summer months. If you

- are polite and friendly
 - are computer literate
 - can speak two foreign languages
- then this job is for you! Send us an email at: Sunrisehotel@gmail.com

Write an email of application in which you

- say why you are writing this email and write a short introduction of yourself
- provide information about your qualifications and skills
- say why you think you would be suitable for the job.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Exam Tip

When writing a formal email/letter of application:

- use the appropriate layout.
- use formal language (don't use short forms or abbreviations).
- begin and end with appropriate phrases.
- mention the qualifications, skills and qualities that are required for the job/scholarship/grant/etc. and explain why you think you are suitable.
- write in a confident manner, describing your good qualities. Don't mention any bad qualities.
- be brief and to the point. Don't include unnecessary details/information.

Unit 5: Family and social life

Key Vocabulary 14

Periods of time in people's lives

Етапи життя

adolescence юність
adulthood зрілість/повноліття
babyhood (раннє) дитинство
be in one's teens у віці від 13 до 19 років
be middle-aged середнього віку
childhood дитинство
in/during babyhood в дитинстві
old age похилого віку
retirement вихід на пенсію
the teenage years підлітковий вік
youth молодь

Family members

Члени родини

baby / little/big brother/sister дитина/молодший/старший брат/сестра
brother брат
children/kids діти
couple пара
cousin двоюрідний брат/двоюрідна сестра
daughter-in-law/son-in-law невістка/зять
distant relatives далекі родичі
extended family велика родина
father/dad/daddy батько/тато/татусь
godparents хрещені батьки
granddaughter/grandson онучка/онук
grandmother/grandfather бабуся/дідуся
grandparents/grandchildren бабуся та дідуся/онуки
great-grandparents прабабуся та прадід
half-sister/half-brother зведена сестра/зведений брат
husband/wife чоловік/дружина

immediate family найближчі родичі
in-laws рідня зі сторони чоловіка чи дружини
mother/mum/mummy мати/мама/матуся
mother-in-law/father-in-law теща/тесть, свекруха/свекор
nephew племінник
niece племінниця
only child єдина дитина в сім'ї
parents батьки
relatives родичі
siblings брати та сестри
sister сестра
sister-in-law/brother-in-law зовиця/дівер
son/daughter син/дочка
(identical) twins ідентичні близнюки
stepbrother/stepsister зведений брат/зведена сестра
stepdaughter/stepson падчерка/пасинок
stepmother/stepfather мачуха/вітчим
uncle/aunt дядько/тітка

Family events and festivals

Сімейні свята

anniversary party святкування ювілею (вечірка)
birthday party святкування дня народження (вечірка)
celebrate birthday/anniversary святкувати день народження/ювілей
celebrate Christmas/Easter святкувати Різдво/Великдень
christening party хрестини
Christmas Різдво
Christmas Eve Святвечір
Easter Великдень
family gathering/reunion возз'єднання сім'ї

fancy dress party костюмована вечірка
funeral ceremony похорон
graduation випускний бал
Halloween свято Гелловін
name day (party) іменини (святкування іменин)
national holiday національне свято
New Year's Day Новий Рік
New Year's Eve Переддень Нового Року
Thanksgiving День Подяки
wedding anniversary річниця шлюбу
wedding ceremony одруження
wedding reception весілля

Other words and expressions

Інші слова та вирази

adopted child прийомна дитина
adult доросла людина
be pregnant бути вагітною
belong to a family належати до сім'ї
bride/bridegroom наречена/наречений
child abuse жорстоке поводження з дитиною
children's home / orphanage притулок для сиріт
cohabit with sb жити разом з кимось
cohabitant співмешканець
common-law marriage цивільний шлюб
expect a baby бути при надії, чекати на дитину
family tree сімейне дерево
fiancé/fiancée наречений/наречена
foster/loving/single-parent/broken family прийомна/любляча/неповна сім'я
foster home сімейний притулок

generation gap розрив поколінь
 get divorced розлучитися
 get engaged заручитися
 get married / marry sb одружитися
 get married in a registry office зареєструвати шлюб
 head/breadwinner of the family голова сім'ї, годувальник
 honeymoon медовий місяць
 It runs in the family. Це - спадкове, сімейне.
 Like father, like son. Який батько, такий і син.
 marriage шлюб
 my childhood home дім мого дитинства
 neglected child занедбане дитя
 newly-married couple молодята
 orphan сирота
 quarrel / argue / have an argument with sb сваритися
 registry office wedding офіційний шлюб
 resemble sb бути схожим на когось
 retirement pension / be retired відставка / йти у відставку
 start a family створення родини
 striking resemblance виняткова схожість
 take after бути схожим на когось
 take in a foster child взяти дитину на виховання
 teenager підліток
 toddler дитина віком від 1 до 3 років
 We are a family of four. Наша сім'я складається з чотирьох осіб.
 well-brought up / spoilt child добре вихований/розбещений
 wife-to-be/husband-to-be майбутня дружина/майбутній чоловік

Everyday activities Щоденні справи

do homework виконувати домашнє завдання
 do the housework займатися хатніми справами
 do the shopping/ironing/cooking/washing-up йти за покупками/прасувати/готувати/мити посуд

get dressed вдягатись
 go to bed/sleep лягати спати
 go to work/school йти на роботу/в школу
 have a bath/shower приймати ванну/душ
 have a rest/nap відпочивати/задрімати
 have a snack перекусити
 have breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper снідати/обідати/вечеряти
 I leave home at 7. Я виходжу з дому о 7 годині.
 It takes me 10 minutes to walk to school. Дорога до школи займає 10 хвилин.
 make the bed заправляти ліжко
 My dad gives me a lift to school. Мій тато підвозить мене до школи.
 play computer games грати в комп'ютерні ігри
 prepare/make meals готувати їжу
 set/lay the table накривати на стіл
 share housework розділяти хатні обов'язки
 stay up late пізно лягати спати
 take the dog for a walk гуляти з собакою
 tidy/clean up прибирати
 wake/get up прокидатись/вставати (з ліжка)
 watch TV дивитись телевізор

Ways of spending free time Як провести вільний час

chat on the Internet спілкуватись в Інтернеті
 do crosswords розв'язувати кросворди
 do gymnastics/aerobics/judo займатися гімнастикою/аеробікою/дзюдо
 go camping ходити в походи
 go for a walk йти на прогулянку
 go in for sports/mountaineering займатися спортом/альпінізмом
 go in for photography/painting займатися фотографією, живописом
 go rollerblading кататися на роликах

go skating кататися на ковзанах
 go skiing кататися на лижах
 go swimming/dancing/bowling/fishing займатися плаванням/танцями/боулінгом/рибалкою
 go to a party / a concert / the cinema / the theatre / a club ходити на вечірки/концерти/в кінотеатри/театри/клуб
 go to the gym відвідувати спортзал
 horse riding їздити верхи
 meet friends зустрічатись з друзями
 play a musical instrument грати на музичних інструментах
 play cards / board games грати в карти/настільні ігри
 play chess грати в шахи
 play computer games грати в комп'ютерні ігри
 play in a band / the guitar грати в музичній групі/грати на гітарі
 play tennis грати в теніс
 practise yoga / tai chi займатися йогою/тай-чі

Lifestyles Спосіб життя

change lifestyle змінювати спосіб життя
 consumerist lifestyle споживчий спосіб життя
 lifestyle: (un)healthy/modern/sedentary/comfortable спосіб життя: (не)здоровий, сучасний, сидячий, комфортний
 She leads a very active life. Вона веде активний спосіб життя.

Phrasal verbs Фразові дієслова

break up with розлучитись з кимось
 bring up виховувати когось
 fall out with сваритись з кимось
 get on with добре ладнати з кимось
 grow up ставати дорослим
 hear from вислухати когось
 let down підводити когось
 make up with помиритись з кимось

A Complete the sentences with the correct word.

1. My brother's son is my _____.
2. My mother's brother is my _____.
3. My husband's sister is my _____.
4. My stepmother's daughter is my _____.
5. My sister's daughter is my _____.
6. My immediate and distant family are my _____.
7. My wife's parents are my _____.
8. My grandfather's mother is my _____.

B Use an appropriate word or phrase from the box to complete the text.

comes back cooking leaves meets gets up nap classes horse riding gym practises

Liz, like most students her age, is a very busy person. She

(1) _____ as early as 5:30 to take her dog for a walk before she (2) _____ home. As it takes her an hour and a half to get to the university by train, not only does she have no breakfast, but she also has no time to prepare lunch to take with her. She usually has (3) _____ from 8 to 4. That means she (4) _____ home at about 6 p.m. She has a short (5) _____ – she knows she will go to bed late again because she has a lot of work to do for the next day. While she does her homework, her sister does the (6) _____. After dinner, they chat for a while and plan the weekend.

Strangely enough, Liz does find time to do what she likes; that is going (7) _____ and reading books. On Tuesdays, she goes to the (8) _____ or goes swimming. She also (9) _____ yoga and goes in for mountaineering. Plus, she (10) _____ her friends every Friday!

**C** Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer the questions below, using the prompts to help.

1. What are the daily routines of your family members?
*My father usually... My mother always...
 My sister sometimes gets back home...
 My brother always wakes up at...*
2. What jobs do the different members of your family do around the house?
*My father is responsible for...
 My mother does the... As for me, I...*
3. Is the housework shared equally?
*Well, my... usually... and always... while my... does...
 I usually... so I think it is / is not shared equally.*
4. What hobbies do you and the members of your family have?
*My sister really enjoys... and... while my father likes...
 My brother and I both... My sister loves...*
5. What do you do as a family in your free time?
We often... On special occasions, we...

D Imagine that the Jones family—Mr Jones, Mrs Jones, their son Robert and their daughter Margaret—have to do the four jobs shown. Look at the family's timetable for a day. Talk in pairs and decide which family member should do each of the jobs and when. Give your reasons. Make sure each member of the family is given a job to do. You can use some of the expressions suggested.

Useful phrases

I think... should... because...
I believe... is able to...
Looking at the timetable, I think... can...
... can do the... because ...
I suppose... has some free time so...

take the dog for a walk



tidy up the living room



do the washing-up



prepare dinner



Time	MR JONES	MRS JONES	ROBERT	MARGARET
7-8 a.m.	WORK			
8-9 a.m.			SCHOOL	UNIVERSITY
9 a.m. - 3 p.m.		WORK		
3-4 p.m.				
4-5 p.m.				
5-6 p.m.				
6-7 p.m.		GYM	PIANO LESSON	
7-8 p.m.			DINNER	DINNER
8-9 p.m.	DINNER	DINNER		PART-TIME WORK
9-10 p.m.	NEWS ON TV			

E Match the words (1-15) with the nouns/phrases (a-o) they collocate with.

1. wedding
2. get
3. bring up
4. extended
5. generation
6. family
7. cohabit
8. take care
9. do
10. retirement
11. belong to
12. registry
13. spoilt
14. prepare
15. have

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

- a. reunion
- b. office
- c. gap
- d. pension
- e. with someone
- f. a shower
- g. a family
- h. reception
- i. of a child
- j. a meal
- k. engaged
- l. a child
- m. the shopping
- n. family
- o. child

F In pairs, speculate and talk about the people in the pictures below. Use the following prompts: age, family background, hobbies/interests, ways of spending free time, lifestyle.



Useful phrases

I think the man/woman in this picture is/has...
He/She might be interested in...
He/She must lead a/an... lifestyle.
In his/her free time he/she probably...

PRE-LISTENING TASK

Write your name in the middle of the page and the names of four people who are important to you (family or friends) like this:

Millie	Sue	Jamie
Shirley		Michael

Work in groups of four. Tell your partners who the people are and why you have chosen them. Answer any questions your partners may ask you.

A Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. Where is the man **NOT** going?



A



B



C

2. What does the man need advice on?



A



B



C

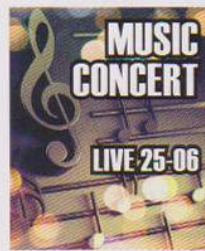
3. Where do the speakers decide to go tonight?



A



B



C

4. What is the girl's problem?

- A. She hasn't got many friends
- B. She doesn't like one of her friends.
- C. Her best friend hates her.

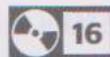
5. When did the speakers first meet?

- A. while boarding the A380
- B. when James fell over
- C. at a dinner in Hong Kong

6. Why is the man's aunt bored?

- A. because she's doing an art history course
- B. because she's retired
- C. because she's tired of working

B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. Why has Dr Jolly been invited on the show?
 - A. to encourage young learners
 - B. to give advice
 - C. to talk about schoolwork
2. When do children feel valued?
 - A. when they are given difficult things to do
 - B. when they are told they should try harder
 - C. when their efforts are recognised
3. What does the interviewer say about his mother?
 - A. She sometimes found school boring.
 - B. She told him there was something wrong with him.
 - C. She helped him a lot with his schoolwork.
4. What did Dr Jolly's father do?
 - A. He encouraged her to become a psychologist.
 - B. He criticised her exam results.
 - C. He was very proud of her.
5. What should parents do, according to Dr Jolly?
 - A. They should encourage their children to read more.
 - B. They should let their children do anything they like.
 - C. They should respect their children's learning preferences.



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Who are the most important members in your family for you? Why?
- Do you like to take part in family celebrations? Why? / Why not?
- Do you have any happy childhood memories? What are they?



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever attended a special event? If yes, what was it?
- What preparations do you think had to be made for this event?
- Do you think it was a success? Why / Why not?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Wedding Traditions

- 1** Weddings in **Mexico** are an amazing mix of tradition and the latest international trends. One old custom that you still see today is that the groom offers the bride 13 gold coins during the church ceremony. This means that he trusts her with everything that is valuable and important to him.



- 2** Traditional weddings in **Turkey** begin on a sad note, with the bride saying goodbye to her family and leaving her home. But that sad note soon turns joyful, as she is taken to her new home on a horse with the sound of drums and dancing in the street. When the couple arrives at the groom's home, his mother breaks a jug in front of the house as a symbol of leaving everything sad behind as they enter.



- 3** Weddings in **Japan** have kept their ancient feel, though many Western traditions have now been added, such as rings and a wedding cake. For the bride and the groom, this means they have to change outfits several times throughout the ceremony, between the latest Western formal clothing and beautiful old-style Japanese kimonos, which are very expensive to rent and complicated to put on and take off.



*A traditional **Ukrainian** wedding ties together two families, but the ceremony has changed a great deal over the years. Among the few things which haven't changed is the traditional braided wedding bread, the korovai, which is decorated with flowers, birds and a whole lot more, and is divided among the guests.*



6 *In the villages of **Vietnam**, red is the colour that defines a couple's wedding day, and it is believed to bring luck. Fireworks are an important element as well. They announce the arrival of the groom at the house of the bride and the arrival of the couple at the house where they will live from then on. This transfer is at the heart of the tradition.*



- A. stick to all international trends in weddings
- B. eat something special at weddings
- C. face a problem because of a mix of traditions
- D. mark the beginning and end of the couple's journey to their new home
- E. invite very few people to weddings
- F. give something useful to their relatives
- G. send a message through money
- H. associate weddings with an unhappy event

1111111111111111

B Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

British couples have developed a system of 'shift-parenting' to cope with ever-longer working hours, according to a new study of how families are adapting to the demands of modern employers. Parents have learnt to fit their working hours around one another so that as one of them gets home, the other is able to leave for work. The study, by the National Centre for Social Research (NSCR), looked in detail at the hours and times worked by more than 1,000 families. Despite women's advances in the workplace, fathers remain less likely than mothers to be fully involved in bringing up their children.

Almost one-third are now working more than a 48-hour-week, with 12% clocking more than 60 hours per week. Almost half of working fathers found they didn't have enough time with their children, helping them read and do their homework. Based on a year-long project, the study – *Happy families? Atypical work and its influence on family*, by Ivana La Valle – finds unusual working hours becoming the norm.

The NSCR study highlights the demands placed on middle-class parents to work anti-social working hours. 'Shift-parenting' developed as a result of these demands. It enables both parents to pursue careers while spending some time with their offspring. It can, however, lead to couples communicating largely via notes stuck on the fridge door and dividing their lives into strictly scheduled chunks of work, family time and sleep. On some evenings they will be able to organise a nanny to do shifts with the children, enabling both parents to work late.

The study found that fathers were less able than mothers to reorganise their work lives around their children, said La Valle, explaining that professional men are 'very career-oriented, very highly motivated and working in environments where a long working-hours culture is very popular.' It also illustrates the radical changes that have taken place in the working life of British people, said Gary Cooper, Professor of Organisational Psychology and Health at the University of Lancaster. 'Britain used to be a nine-to-five culture,' he says. 'People have seen a major change in the quality of their lives. They are working longer hours with less balance between their work and their life.' However, there is evidence some fathers may no longer be willing to remain in the office late at the expense of spending time with their children.



- What is true, according to the NSCR study?
 - Fathers are not able to bring up their children.
 - Fathers often sacrifice successful careers for their children.
 - Mothers usually have more responsibility for bringing up their children than fathers.
 - Both mothers and fathers bring up their children to an equal extent.
- According to the text, how can shift-parenting help parents?
 - They can bring up their children in a better way.
 - They can combine family life with a career.
 - They can develop a closer relationship with their children.
 - They can save money on babysitters.
- What does Professor Cooper point out?
 - People can now enjoy a better quality of life.
 - The number of professionally successful people has increased in the last twenty years.
 - Because of their demanding careers, many people don't have a normal personal life.
 - People no longer pay attention to culture.
- What does the text offer readers?
 - advice
 - information
 - instructions
 - guidance
- What would be the best title for the text?
 - Part-time parents
 - Demanding parents
 - Stay-at-home parents
 - Tired parents

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

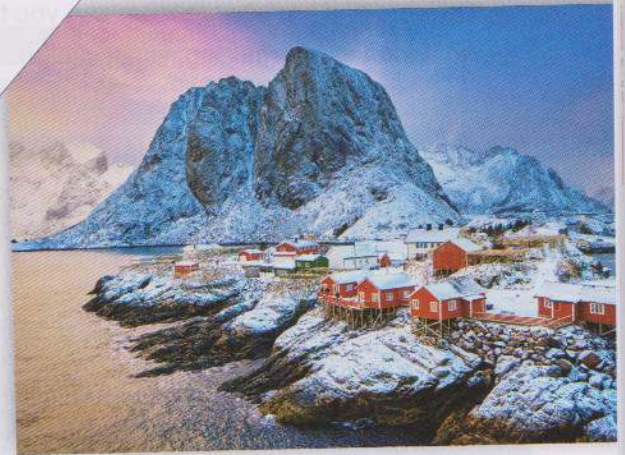
- How do young people in Ukraine spend their free time?
- How has a father's role in the family changed in recent years?
- What makes a family happy?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the best answer (A, B, C or D).

Family Holidays

Family holidays provide a collection of some of the most memorable moments in most people's lives. People usually remember these moments with a nostalgic feeling.

My mum and dad (1) _____ have a soft spot for caravan parks. As (2) _____ as I turned two, they introduced me to this kind of holiday and over the next sixteen years it never occurred to me that there was any other kind of holiday. We (3) _____ at various holiday camps in the east and north of the country, eventually selecting our favourite one, which we returned to year after year.



As an adult, I discovered the joy of hotels and foreign travel. Last spring, my husband and kids decided to set off on a family travelling experience across Sweden and Norway. While we (4) _____ past vast snow-covered fields, my thoughts returned to the holidays of my childhood. Still, (5) _____ we finally reached our destination, the picturesque village of Lofoten in northern Norway, we felt absolutely happy with our choice!

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. could | B. used to | C. had to | D. didn't |
| 2. A. far | B. long | C. soon | D. early |
| 3. A. stayed | B. staying | C. was staying | D. were staying |
| 4. A. drove | B. driving | C. used to drive | D. were driving |
| 5. A. when | B. until | C. while | D. before |



MOTHER'S DAY

Mother's Day is one of the most widely (6) _____ holidays in the world. In fact, Mother's Day is so popular that over 40 countries have made it an official holiday. In the US, as in many other countries, the (7) _____ family gathers together to treat the mother to a special day of leisure. It is a chance for her to relax and have the household (8) _____ done by someone else.

Many countries all over the world have their own unique Mother's Day (9) _____. In the UK, 'Mothering Day' celebrations date from the Middle Ages. In Ethiopia, Mother's Day is such an important holiday that the entire (10) _____ family takes part in a celebration which lasts three days!

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 6. A. partied | B. celebrated | C. hosted | D. applauded |
| 7. A. immediate | B. near | C. related | D. relative |
| 8. A. jobs | B. chores | C. works | D. devices |
| 9. A. histories | B. cultures | C. traditions | D. reminders |
| 10. A. removed | B. spread | C. distant | D. extended |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever sent an email or letter to a friend to refuse an invitation? If yes, what was the reason? If no, what reasons can you think of for turning down an invitation?
- What kind of information would you include in such an email/letter?

A Read the invitation and the response. Then answer the question which follows.

Dear George,

How are you? I haven't heard from you for ages! I was thinking why don't you come and visit me during the winter break? I know you have always wanted to visit Ireland and I'd be more than happy to show you around.

Anyway, I have to go now.
Give my regards to your parents.
Write back soon.

Take care,
Patrick



Dear Patrick,

Thanks for your letter. I'm sorry I haven't written for so long but I've been so busy with school lately.

Thanks for inviting me to visit you during the winter break. It is very nice of you, but I'm afraid I can't come to Ireland then. You see, my brother is getting married in February and I've promised to help him with all the preparations.

How about we meet up at Easter instead?
Think about it and let me know.

Regards,
George

Which of the following does George do?

- accepts Patrick's invitation
- apologises for having to turn down Patrick's invitation
- explains why he is unable to accept Patrick's invitation
- invites Patrick to visit him instead
- suggests visiting Patrick at another time



B Read the following letter. Complete the gaps with the missing linking words *and, but, so or because*.

Dear Sandra,

Thanks for your letter. It was great to hear from you. I was so happy to read that you've left the hospital and you're OK now.

It was very nice of you to invite me to Dublin. I really can't wait to see Ireland (1) _____, unfortunately, I can't come during the winter break. My brother is getting married on 12th February (2) _____ I have to be in Ukraine then.

To tell you the truth, I'm a bit tired of all these preparations (3) _____ there's always something to do. My brother wants to have a big reception (4) _____ we are all very busy helping him. There are going to be 100 guests. Can you imagine?

Anyway, I hope I can come to Ireland some other time. What do you think about the beginning of May? Write soon (5) _____ give my regards to your family.

All the best,

Sue

Useful phrases

Phrases for the main part of the email/letter:

Refusing an invitation:

- I'm afraid I can't come because...
- It was nice of you to invite me but...
- I'm awfully/terribly sorry but I have other plans...
- I'd really like to, but I'm already tied up.
- Thanks for asking, but I'm afraid I'm busy.

Accepting an invitation:

- Thanks for inviting me...
- I'd love to come to...
- I wouldn't miss... for the world!
- Thanks for your invitation. I'd be delighted to...
- Yes, thanks. That would be great/wonderful.

Giving reasons:

- You see...
- The truth/reason/problem is...
- The fact that I have to... means that...
- This will involve... which means that...

Making a suggestion:

- What about...
- Instead of... why don't we...
- If you like, we could...
- What do you think about...
- How do you feel about...

C Your friend from England has invited you to visit him during the Easter break. Unfortunately, you are unable to accept his invitation as your brother is graduating from university and you are throwing a graduation party for him.

Write a letter to your friend, in which you

- thank him for inviting you and apologise for having to turn down his invitation
- explain why you are unable to accept his invitation
- give additional details about the arrangements you are making for the party.

Write a letter of at least 100 words.

Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your letter in an appropriate way.

Revision 1-5

A Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- Samantha is very busy taking care of her children as well as her ____ parents.
A. reserved B. elderly C. flexible
- Vaucluse is a luxurious ____ area in Sydney, Australia.
A. suburb B. spacious C. residential
- I'd like to ____ my appointment with Dr Richards because I have to work late tonight.
A. make B. finish C. cancel
- My mother is a great mother-in-law and I don't understand why my ____ doesn't like her.
A. husband B. brother C. stepbrother
- The weather is too hot for me to wear a ____.
A. swimsuit B. scarf C. belt
- John doesn't ____ his temper often. He is very calm and easy-going.
A. lose B. have C. get
- Just park your car in the ____.
A. corridor B. drive C. porch
- We have ____ the house and everything is new.
A. renovated B. mended C. moved
- Janice ____ sick today. She can't come to work.
A. called up B. phoned in C. telephoned us
- We wanted our wedding ceremony to be small so we only invited members of our ____ family.
No friends or distant relatives were invited.
A. extended B. common-law C. immediate

B Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- I try to avoid sugar but, now that we ____ Marica's birthday, I'll have a piece of cake.
A. are celebrating B. celebrate C. will celebrate
- The train for Southampton ____ every morning at 6:03 am.
A. is leaving B. leaves C. will leave
- Dover is a major ferry port in the UK and it faces ____ France across the sea.
A. the B. a C. -
- There was a loud noise that woke us up ____ midnight.
A. at B. in C. during
- The problem with Luke is that he likes talking about ____ too much.
A. his B. himself C. him
- It seems that we were wrong about ____.
A. him B. he C. himself
- She ____ finish everything today, because we only have to hand in the project in three days' time.
A. couldn't B. must C. doesn't have to
- I ____ get back to work or my boss will be angry with me.
A. ought B. would rather C. 'd better
- We ____ back home from school when we saw the smoke.
A. were running B. run C. are running
- I'd rather ____ something different this time.
A. doing B. do C. to do

C Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Teenagers

Teenagers and young people around the world are encouraged to attend career days, visit local businesses and talk to specialised counsellors, all in an effort to find a profession that will suit (1) _____ personality and skills. A man in his late twenties in England, though, (2) _____ to do something a bit more challenging. He worked as a shop manager, but after (3) _____ accident forced him to stay at home for a few months, he realised it wasn't a job he wanted to do for the rest of his life. The solution? He (4) _____ try out 52 different jobs for a year and then decide which one was his dream job. He worked for a week at each place and donated the money he made to a charity that helps troubled youngsters. He tried out everything - from being a photographer and beef farmer, to journalist, film stuntman and special needs teacher. It was hard to be the new guy (5) _____ Monday and deal with getting to know new people all the time, but by doing so he was offered many opportunities he wouldn't have had otherwise.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. theirs | B. their | C. its | D. them |
| 2. A. decides | B. used to decide | C. decided | D. was deciding |
| 3. A. a | B. an | C. the | D. this |
| 4. A. ought | B. may | C. is able to | D. could |
| 5. A. on | B. in | C. at | D. from |

Family

The basic concept of family structure refers to the organization of (6) _____, such as parents and children, living together in a common (7) _____. While the most typical family structure today consists of one or both parents living together with their (8) _____ children, in some societies larger, extended family groups continue to live together under one roof. Within the family, interactions among family (9) _____, including roles, birth order, hierarchy and relationships of power are referred to as family dynamics. Psychologists and other experts believe that the nature of these dynamics, especially with regards to power structures and (10) _____ interactions between brothers and sisters are strong indicators of whether people will be able to develop the skills necessary to achieve successful relationships in the future.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. beliefs | B. individuals | C. societies | D. folks |
| 7. A. housing | B. tenant | C. household | D. unit |
| 8. A. biological | B. organic | C. exclusive | D. weaned |
| 9. A. persons | B. relatives | C. members | D. participants |
| 10. A. immediate | B. nuclear | C. parental | D. sibling |

Unit 6: Food

Key Vocabulary

Types of food Види продуктів харчування

bakery products хлібобулочні вироби
cereals злаки
dairy products молочні продукти
drinks/beverages напої
eggs яйця
fish риба
fruit фрукти
meat м'ясо
pasta макаронні вироби
pulses бобові
rice рис
seafood/shellfish морепродукти/молюск
snacks/nibbles (colloquial) перекус
sweets солодощі
vegetables овочі

Fruit Фрукти

apple яблуко
apricot абрикос
banana банан
blackcurrant чорна смородина
cherry вишня
grapefruit грейпфрут
grapes виноград
kiwi ківі
lemon лимон
lime лайм
mandarin мандарин
nectarine нектарин
orange апельсин
peach персик
pear груша
pineapple ананас
plum слива
raspberry малина
strawberry полуниця

Dairy products Молочні продукти

butter вершкове масло
cheese сир
cottage cheese домашній сир
cream вершки
milk молоко
yoghurt йогурт

Bakery products Хлібобулочні вироби

roll булка
white/brown bread білий/чорний хліб
wholemeal bread цільнозерновий хліб

Meat М'ясо

beef яловичина
chicken курка
fillet філе
ham шинка
pork chop свиняча відбивна
pork свинина
poultry птиця
sausage ковбаса
steak: rare/medium/well-done стейк: з кров'ю/середнього смаження/добре просмажений
veal телятина

Seafood Морепродукти

crab краб
lobster лобстер
mussel мідії
octopus восьминіг
oyster устриці
shrimp/prawn креветки
squid кальмар

Sweets Солодощі

biscuits печиво
cake торт
chocolate шоколад
sweet цукерки

Drinks Напої

(instant) coffee (розчинна) кава
coffee: white/black/strong/weak кава з молоком/чорна/міцна/неміцна
fruit juice фруктовий сік
soft drink безалкогольний напій
sparkling/fizzy (mineral) water вода (мінеральна) газована
still (mineral) water негазована мінеральна вода
tea: black/fruit/lemon чай: чорний/фруктовий/з лимоном

Vegetables Овочі

asparagus спаржа
beetroot буряк
broccoli броколі
Brussels sprouts брюссельська капуста
cabbage капуста
carrot морква
cauliflower цвітна капуста
celery селера
cucumber огірок
garlic часник
green bean зелена квасоля
mushroom гриб
onion / spring onion цибуля/зелена цибуля
leek цибуля-порей
lettuce листя салату
parsley петрушка
green/red pepper зелений/червоний перець
potato картопля
radish редис
tomato томат
turnip пiпа

Preparing food Приготування їжі

add додавати
beat (the eggs) розбивати (яйця)
blend змішувати
bring soup to the boil доводити суп до кипіння
chop рубати
combine with sth поєднувати з
cut різати
dice нарізати кубиками
grate терти на тертці
melt розтоплювати
mince (meat) рублене м'ясо, фарш
mix перемішувати
peel чистити
pour наливати
preheat the oven to 220° розігріти піч до 200 градусів
scramble eggs яєчня
slice нарізати скибками
stir помішувати

Cooking Приготування

bake пекти
boil варити
cook готувати
fry смажити
grill готувати на грилі
heat up підігрівати
roast запікати / смажити
season with salt and pepper to taste приправити сіллю та перцем за смаком
sprinkle посипати
steam готувати на пару

Tastes Смаки

bitter гіркий
salty солоний
sour кислий
spicy гострий
sweet солодкий

Meals Харчування

breakfast сніданок
dinner вечеря
lunch обід
packed lunch сухий пайок, готовий обід
supper вечеря

Places to eat/drink Заклади харчування

café / coffee house кав'ярня
cafeteria кафетерій
cocktail bar коктейль-бар
fast food restaurant/outlet/counter ресторан швидкого харчування
ice cream parlour кафе-морозиво
school canteen шкільна їдальня

Other words and expressions Інші слова та вирази

appetite апетит
balanced diet збалансоване харчування
be on / go on / stick to a diet дотримуватись дієти
bon appetit Смачного!
burn fat/calories спалювати жир/калорії
carbohydrates вуглеводи
chef шеф-кухар
cookery book кулінарна книга
cut down on sth зменшити споживання чогось
cutlery столове приладдя
dessert десерт
diet pill пігулки для схуднення
diet rich in vitamins збагачене вітамінами харчування
dish страва
eating disorder розлад харчової поведінки
fatty/fattening food жирна їжа
food: delicious/excellent/exotic/tasty/convenient/genetically-modified/fresh/takeaway/healthy/unhealthy/tinned їжа: дуже смачна/чудова/екзотична/смачна/напівфабрикати/ГМО/свіжа/їжа з собою/здорова/нездорова/консерви
frozen vegetables заморожені овочі
gain / put on / lose weight набирати / втрачати вагу
go bad / go/be off псуватися / викидати
go out for a meal ходити їсти в заклади харчування
have a sweet tooth ласун
Help yourself! Пригощайся!

helping порція
herbs and spices трави та спеції
ingredients інгредієнти
junk food нездорова їжа
leave a tip залишати чайові
low/high calorie food мало-багатокалорійна їжа
main course / fish course основна страва/страва з риби
menu меню
nutritional value енергетична цінність
pay the bill оплачувати рахунок
proper nutrition правильне харчування
proteins білки
raw сирий
recipe рецепт
reserve/book a table at a restaurant резервувати столик в ресторані
restaurant ресторан
second helping друга (додаткова) порція
serve подавати (їжу)
skip breakfast не снідати
smoked копчений
stale черствий
Ukrainian/Greek cuisine українська/грецька кухня
vegetarian вегетаріанська їжа, вегетаріанець/вегетаріанка
We're having a barbecue tomorrow. Будемо завтра робити барбекю (шашлики).
What would you recommend? Що Ви порадите спробувати?

Quantity and packaging Кількість та пакування

a bag of (sugar) мішок (цукру)
a bar of (chocolate) плитка шоколаду
a bottle of (water) пляшка (води)
a can of (tuna) бляшанка (тунця)
a carton of (milk) картонна коробка (з молоком)
a cup of (tea) чашка (чаю)
a glass of (juice) склянка (соку)
a jar of (jam) банка (варення)
a loaf of (bread) буханець (хліба)
a packet of (biscuits) пачка (печива)
a piece of (meat) шматок (м'яса)

D Choose the right words to form collocations with the verbs 1-8. Some words will be used more than once.



eggs



onions



carrots



bread



meat



cream



cheese



butter



milk



oranges

1. grate: _____
2. beat: _____
3. melt: _____
4. slice: _____
5. peel: _____
6. dice: _____
7. chop: _____
8. pour: _____

E Find the odd one out.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. dinner | breakfast | lunch | supper | cutlery |
| 2. café | canteen | barbecue | cocktail bar | coffee house |
| 3. boil | bake | slice | fry | roast |
| 4. steak | oyster | sausage | ham | pork chop |
| 5. sweet | heat | bitter | salty | sour |
| 6. pineapple | blackcurrant | mushroom | cherry | raspberry |

F Match the words in the columns to make phrases. There are many possible answers.

- | | | | |
|---|--------|----|-----------|
| a | bag | of | cheese |
| | bar | | biscuits |
| | bottle | | rice |
| | can | | bread |
| | carton | | pizza |
| | cup | | juice |
| | glass | | chocolate |
| | jar | | milk |
| | loaf | | beans |
| | packet | | coffee |
| | piece | | cream |
| | slice | | honey |



PRE-LISTENING TASK

- Do you like watching TV shows about cooking?
Why? / Why not?
- Can you cook? What is your speciality?

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



Exam Tip

- Read the instructions and the statements.
- Underline the key words in the statements.
- Listen to the recording for the first time for general understanding.
- Decide which statements are true and which are false.
- Listen to the recording for the second time to check if your answers are correct.
- Justify your answers.

	T	F
1. The chef's first job was in the kitchen of a hotel.		
2. The chef's restaurant in Dublin was very successful.		
3. The chef was discovered by a TV producer.		
4. The chef appeared in more than a thousand shows.		
5. The chef doesn't work anymore.		



B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What does Samantha do?
 - A. She organises Health and Fitness conferences.
 - B. She gives people advice on their diet.
 - C. She trains professional athletes.
2. What is true of Samantha?
 - A. She has her own gym.
 - B. She is in charge of a clinic.
 - C. She trains using fitness DVDs.
3. What is one of the reasons people are overweight?
 - A. They don't weigh their food.
 - B. They don't eat their meals when they should.
 - C. They eat too few meals.
4. How does Samantha feel about diet pills?
 - A. She isn't sure they work.
 - B. She is against the idea.
 - C. She approves of them.
5. How does eating at certain intervals each day benefit you?
 - A. It helps satisfy your hunger.
 - B. It helps you exercise more effectively.
 - C. It helps you burn calories.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What do you think are some healthy eating habits?
- What do you think is an unhealthy diet?
- Is your diet healthy? Why? / Why not?



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you often eat out? Why? / Why not?
- What are your favourite restaurants? Why?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

1

VESUVIO'S



At Vesuvio's we offer you the finest Italian home cooking with the warmest Italian welcome. Every day our chefs head for the markets in search of the finest-quality meat, fish, fruit and vegetables.

Live music

No reservations
required

**Open**

Monday - Thursday
11am - 12am

Friday - Sunday
10am - 1am

2

BILL'S ★
Steakhouse

Come see why so many celebrities have chosen us as their favourite place to hang out. Our steaks are of prime beef. Our portions of pork, chicken and seafood are gigantic. And whenever the occasion calls for it, consider one of our private dining rooms. They easily accommodate up to 60 people and create the perfect setting for dining, business meetings or private parties.

Reservations essential -
Open 24hrs a day 7 days a week

3



Pierre's Place



We offer a relaxed dining experience and gourmet French food. Our veal dishes are among the best in the world. We are the only restaurant in the city to be given the 'Restaurant of the Year' award two years in a row.

All major credit cards accepted

Open Tuesday - Sunday, 5pm - 12am
Reservations recommended

4

Tully's Fish House



We have made it our mission to prepare and serve the freshest and most superior seafood possible. We purchase fish directly from boats that have been to sea and back in a single day. We offer over 30 types of seafood, from shrimp and oysters to crab and lobster.

Something for the whole family!

No reservations required

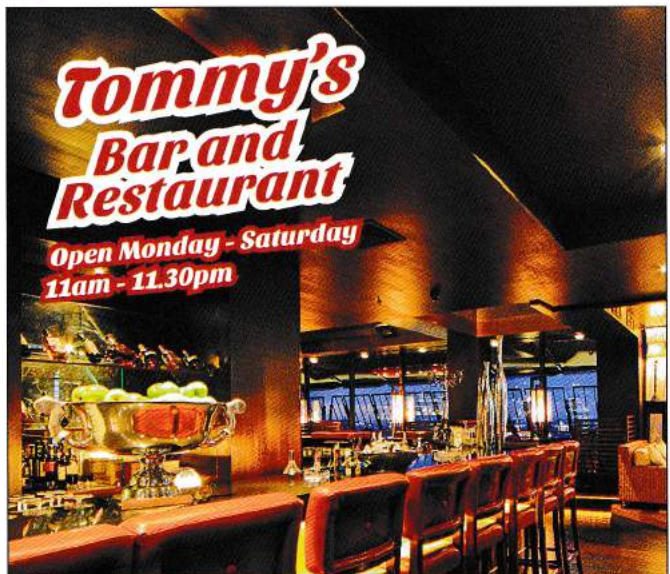


Open 7 days a week
from 11am - 11pm

5

Tommy's Bar and Restaurant

Open Monday - Saturday
11am - 11.30pm



We offer a casual atmosphere and international cuisine, so there is always something to suit everyone's fancy. Come try our salads and our mouth-watering desserts. We offer a huge selection of vegetarian dishes as well. Our friendly staff will make sure your dining experience is an unforgettable one. To make sure you get a table, it's best to call first.

Which restaurant _____?

- A. has received recognition for its quality
- B. was advertised on a TV show
- C. claims to serve big meals
- D. has chefs that go out and buy fresh produce every day
- E. offers vegetarian dishes exclusively
- F. mentions the number of different dishes it serves
- G. is not open on Wednesdays
- H. is likely to serve Asian dishes



B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

We all know about English breakfasts, so I think (1) _____—which is far more delicious. Health experts say that it is not healthy if eaten regularly, but I don't think they will ever persuade anyone to give up this wonderful breakfast. It's a unique meal, and its success depends on top-quality products. Buy everything from a supermarket and you will have something which is traditional in name only. So, let's start with (2) _____. The best thing is to go to your local butcher for some good smoked bacon, sausages and black pudding. Of course, free-range eggs are essential, as is home-made bread—the sort of stuff they sell in supermarkets these days simply does not compare.

Of course, all these things have to be cooked carefully. Chuck everything into a pan together and you will have an inedible mess. Every single ingredient of the traditional breakfast cooks at a different speed and (3) _____. When cooking the English breakfast, we all know that the bacon goes in first and then the eggs fry in the bacon fat. Not very difficult at all. But (4) _____, things are a bit more complicated. Sausages go in first, followed by the bacon, then the eggs and lastly the pudding. Too often, the pudding goes in too early, as people mistakenly imagine that it needs a lot of cooking when, in fact, (5) _____.

The heat must be kept just right and the cooking of the breakfast must not be hurried. If you wish to add some tomato, it's a good idea to grill it separately, which keeps its natural sweetness safe from fat flavours.

As the cooking must not be hurried, neither must the eating. Where workday breakfasts have become quick and simple, (6) _____. Therefore, have the table laid properly and take your time to enjoy it.

- A. this sort of breakfast needs our indulgence
- B. it's time to learn about the Irish breakfast
- C. when cooking the traditional Irish breakfast
- D. its ingredients are actually very simple
- E. requires a different amount of time
- F. where to buy the ingredients
- G. just the opposite is true
- H. is sometimes known as a fry or fry-up

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What are the differences between eating at home and eating in a restaurant?
- Do you think that eating meals with the family is important? Why? / Why not?
- What are some traditional Ukrainian meals? How do you prepare them?

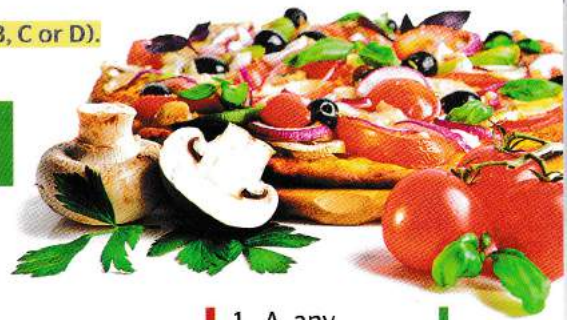
Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Making a Meal of Pizza

Ever wondered who invented the first pizza? Well, it's actually hard to say. Ancient Sardinians baked bread over 7,000 years ago and ancient Greeks had a flat bread to which they added herbs, onions and (1) _____ garlic. The term 'pizza' first appeared in 997 AD in Gaeta, in southern Italy. Perhaps the oldest known pizza that is still eaten today is the Margherita pizza, named to celebrate (2) _____ visit Queen Margherita made to Naples in 1889. Topped with mozzarella, basil and pieces of tomato (which together resemble the colours of the Italian flag), this pizza actually dates back to the early 19th century.

This dish has become popular in many parts of the world. Over 5 billion pizzas are now sold every year with Norwegians eating (3) _____ amount of pizza per person in the world. Each country has its favourite toppings. Italians still love the classic Margherita and have a passion for *pizza quattro stagioni* ('four seasons'), a pizza with artichokes, olives, mushrooms, ham, mozzarella and tomato. Americans are crazy about pepperoni, Brazilians favour green peas while the Dutch like (4) _____ of cheese, meat and onions on theirs.

It is probably safe to say, then, that when making pizza, each nationality takes the ingredients they traditionally cook with, puts them on (5) _____ flat bread and then sticks the result into an oven. And yes, for those with a sweet tooth there are endless recipes for dessert pizzas, with toppings ranging from chocolate and marshmallows to caramel and fruit. Hungry, anyone?



1. A. any
B. many
C. a few
D. a little
2. A. the
B. that
C. some
D. his
3. A. larger
B. largest
C. the largest
D. the larger
4. A. much
B. lots
C. many
D. a little
5. A. any
B. little
C. some
D. no

Chocolate

One of the most popular foods worldwide, chocolate is also surprisingly (6) _____ in vitamins, minerals and antioxidants. The health benefits of chocolate are largely due to the presence of cocoa solids, and the darker the chocolate, the greater the benefits. A 100 g (7) _____ of dark chocolate contains more than 20% of the recommended daily values of riboflavin, B12, manganese, phosphorus and zinc, making it an excellent (8) _____ of these vitamins and minerals. Additionally, the antioxidants found in dark chocolate may improve brain function and help prevent conditions such as Parkinson's disease, diabetes and heart disease. However, health experts caution that even dark chocolate is high in sugar and fat, making it very high in (9) _____. Moreover, fat and sugar content varies widely from one manufacturer to another, and it is advisable to check (10) _____ values on labels before purchase.



- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| 6. A. full | B. rich | C. complete | D. healthy |
| 7. A. serving | B. meal | C. dish | D. amount |
| 8. A. source | B. ingredient | C. value | D. product |
| 9. A. energies | B. benefits | C. risks | D. calories |
| 10. A. health | B. fitness | C. nutrient | D. fatty |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Who do you usually turn to for advice? Why?
- When was the last time someone asked you for your advice? What advice did you give?

A Read the following part of a letter from Fay to her friend Jodie. What is Fay's problem? Then read Jodie's reply. What do you think of her advice?

I spent the summer holidays at home and I put on a lot of weight. I didn't eat very healthily. Instead, I went out to fast-food restaurants quite often and watched TV all day. I'm now finding it really hard to lose the weight and I feel so tired all the time. What should I do? Please help. Hope to hear from you soon.

Love,
Fay

Hi Fay,

I read your letter and thought about your problem. You see, I know what it's like to suddenly put on a lot of weight. It happened to me, too. I love eating so I didn't think it would be easy to go on a diet. Then, a friend of mine inspired me by telling me that she lost weight not by eating less, but by cooking more often. She also stopped eating fast food and drinking soft drinks. I decided to follow her example and start eating better. I hardly ever eat out anymore and if I do, I go for a nutritious meal that is low in calories. I also eat healthy snacks between meals to keep my energy levels high. I suggest you do the same. It's going to be hard in the beginning because you have to plan your meals and spend more time cooking, but you are sure to enjoy the food more and lose weight without starving yourself! Go for it! Hope I've been of some help!

Love,
Jodie

B Read Jodie's reply again and find the parts where she:

1. identifies with Fay's emotions and talks about her own personal experience.
2. suggests a course of action.
3. mentions the advantages and disadvantages involved.
4. provides encouragement.

C Read the expressions/phrases in the plan on the next page and then write an appropriate response to the situations 1-8 below.

1. I don't have time to prepare my own meals.
2. I feel tired and have no energy.
3. I often skip breakfast because I can't get up early enough in the morning.
4. I'm trying to lose weight, but my mum makes very fattening food.
5. I lose weight, but when I stop dieting I put it back on again.
6. I've got ten people coming over for dinner tonight and I don't have time to cook.
7. I'm going on a picnic and I don't know what to take with me.
8. I've been invited to a dinner party at my boss's house and I don't know what to take.



PLAN

An informal email/letter asking for or giving advice

Asking for advice

Begin your email/letter and say why you are writing. Use phrases like:

1. Stating the problem

- I've been having problems with... and I'd like your advice.
- I hope you can help me with a problem.
- I've had difficulty...

2. Saying how you feel

- I feel terrible/down/helpless and don't know what to do.
- I've lost hope because I've tried everything and nothing works.
- I'm desperate and need help to deal with the situation.

Ask for advice. Use phrases like:

3. Asking for advice

- What should I do?
- What would you do if you were me / in my shoes?
- What do you suggest?
- Do you think I should...?

State anything you want to emphasise and end your email/letter. Use phrases like:

4. Ending

- Hope to hear from you soon.
- Please reply ASAP.
- Let me know what you think.

Giving advice

Begin your email/letter and say why you are writing. Use phrases like:

1. Referring to the problem

- I'm sorry to hear that you are having problems with...
- This kind of problem is common among...
- I have thought about your problem and I think I can be of help.

2. Identifying with emotions

- I know how you feel.
- I've had a similar experience.
- I understand what you are going through.
- I know what it's like to...
- I'm very sorry (to hear) that...

Give your advice and make various suggestions.

Use phrases like:

3. Giving advice

- First of all, I don't think you should...
- You'd better (not)...
- If I were you / in your shoes, I'd...
- How/What about...?
- Why don't you...?
- Have you ever thought of...?

Encourage your reader and end your email/letter.

Use phrases like:

4. Providing encouragement

- Don't worry. You'll get over it.
- Go for it!
- There's no need to worry.
- You can do it!
- You'll see that your efforts will pay off.

5. Ending

- If you... you are sure to see results.
- I hope I've been of some help.
- I hope everything goes well.

Exam Tip

When writing an informal email/letter giving advice:

- identify with the person's feelings by expressing sympathy, understanding, etc.
- address the recipient in a friendly way and use informal language.
- include various suggestions and say how these will help solve the problem.
- use appropriate expressions to give advice, make suggestions and provide encouragement.

D You have received a letter from your English friend Mike, in which he asks for advice as to how he can improve his eating habits.

Write a reply to Mike in which you

- identify with his emotions and talk about your own personal experience
- suggest a course of action
- provide encouragement.

Write a letter of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your letter in an appropriate way.

Unit 7: Shopping and services

Key Vocabulary 20

Types of shops and services

Види магазинів та послуг

baker's пекарня
 bookshop книгарня
 butcher's магазин м'яса
 chemist's аптека
 clothes shop магазин одягу
 corner/local/busy/well-stocked/expensive/exclusive/duty-free shop магазин на розі/місцевий/популярний/з великим вибором товарів/дорогий/ексклюзивний/магазин безмитної торгівлі
 department store універмаг
 DIY shop будівельний магазин
 dry cleaner's хімчистка
 electrical shop магазин електротоварів
 florist's квітковий магазин
 furniture shop магазин меблів
 garage автомайстерня
 gift shop сувенірний магазин
 greengrocer's магазин овочів та фруктів
 grocer's продовольчий магазин
 hairdresser's перукарня
 laundry пральня
 market square / marketplace ринок
 music shop магазин музичних інструментів
 newsagent's газетний кіоск
 optician's оптика
 outdoor market відкритий ринок
 pet shop зоомагазин
 photographer's фотоательє, фотостудія
 post office пошта
 public services громадські послуги

second-hand shop магазин, де можна придбати вживані речі
 service shop майстерня ремонту товарів
 shoe shop магазин взуття
 shopping centre / mall торговий центр
 sports shop магазин спортивних товарів
 stall стійка
 stationer's магазин канцелярських товарів
 supermarket супермаркет
 toy shop магазин іграшок
 transport service транспортні послуги

Products Товари

audio and video equipment аудіотехніка та відеотехніка
 beauty products косметичні засоби
 electrical appliances електроприлади
 groceries продукти
 household/domestic appliances товари для дому
 jewellery ювелірні прикраси
 hardware прилади, (комп'ютерна) техніка
 paper goods паперові вироби
 stationery канцелярські товари
 toiletries товари особистої гігієни

Money and buying Гроші та покупки

(buy/sell) wholesale (купувати/продавати) гуртова торгівля
 afford дозволити собі придбати щось
 available у наявності
 bargain вигідна покупка

borrow позичати в когось
 buy cheaply / at a high price купувати дешево/дорого
 buy on credit купувати в кредит
 buy online купувати в Інтернеті
 buy sth on special offer купувати щось за спеціальною пропозицією / ціною
 cash card кредитна карта
 cash desk / cash register каса
 cash machine / cashpoint банкомат
 charge/debit card платіжна картка
 checkout каса
 cost вартість
 counter стійка, прилавок
 customer покупець
 decrease prices знижувати ціни
 dirt cheap дуже дешево
 discount знижка
 exchange sth for sth
 else обмінювати щось на щось
 fitting room примірочна
 free of charge безкоштовно
 get a refund on отримати повернення коштів
 He charged the dinner bill to VISA. Він оплатив вечерю картою VISA.
 I bought this dress in the sales. Я придбала цю сукню на розпродажі.
 I have no change, I'm afraid. На жаль, я не маю здачі.
 label етикетка
 lend позичати комусь
 Many shops hold sales in January or August. Багато магазинів виставляють товари на розпродаж в січні чи серпні.
 means/forms of payment способи оплати
 on sale розпродаж

pay by credit card / cheque платити кредитною картою
 pay in cash платити готівкою
 price ціна
 put up / increase prices піднімати ціни
 queue черга
 receipt чек
 reduction зниження цін
 run out of закінчитися / забракло (коштів)
 sale items товари розпродажу
 sale розпродаж
 shop assistant продавець
 shop owner власник магазину
 shopaholic шопоголік
 shopper покупець
 shopping bag торба
 shopping list список покупок
 sold out розпроданий
 spend money on витратити гроші на
 This washing powder was on special offer last week. Цей пральний порошок був за спеціальною ціною минулого тижня.
 trolley візок
 What size are you? Який у Вас розмір?

Advertising and complaints Реклама та скарги

advertise рекламувати
 advertisement (advert/ad) реклама/оголошення
 advertising agency рекламна агенція
 advertising campaign рекламна кампанія
 billboard білборд, рекламний щит
 commercial break рекламна пауза
 TV commercials are the most effective form of advertising. Реклама по телебаченню - найефективніший спосіб рекламування.
 (radio/TV) commercial реклама на радіо/реклама по телевізору

complain about скаржитись на щось
 faulty product бракований товар
 good/bad advertisement for sth хороша/погана реклама чогось
 make a complaint залишити скаргу
 place an advertisement розміщення реклами
 promotion просування товару
 quality якість
 spot місце (для реклами)
 This magazine is mainly made up of advertising. В цьому журналі переважно реклама.

Other words and phrases Інші слова та вирази

closed for deliveries зачинено у зв'язку з прибуттям товару
 chain of shops мережа магазинів
 cheap place to shop місце, в якому можна придбати дешеві товари
 department відділ
 discount price ціна зі знижкою
 do one's/the shopping / shop around / shop ходити за покупками
 fair ярмарок
 flea market блошиний ринок
 get a discount on отримати знижку на
 go into town їздити до міста
 good/bad purchase вигідна/невигідна покупка
 interest on sth відсоток/ відсотки
 on display на вітрині
 run a shop керувати магазином
 supermarket sections відділи в супермаркеті
 supply goods to shops постачати товари в магазини
 a wide range of products/services великий вибір товарів та послуг
 window-shopping розглядання вітрин

A Match the questions 1-20 with the places a-t.



a



b



c



d



e



f



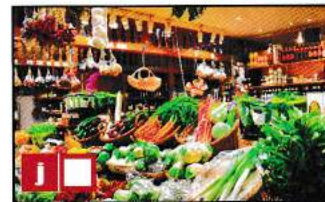
g



h



i



j



k



l



m



n



o



p



q



r



s



t

Where do you go when:

1. you want to buy tea, coffee or sugar?
2. you want to buy strawberries, melons or carrots?
3. you want to buy sandals or slippers?
4. you want to buy pencils, paper clips or staples?
5. you want to buy travel guides or books?
6. you want to buy magazines or newspapers?
7. you want to buy bread or cakes?
8. you want to buy skirts, dresses or jackets?
9. you want to buy hamsters, rabbits or fish?
10. you want to buy roses or daffodils?
11. you want to buy aspirin, vitamins or bandages?
12. you want to buy teddy bears, dolls or board games?
13. you want to have your passport photo taken?
14. you want to send a parcel to your friend in Greece?
15. your car breaks down?
16. you want to wash your clothes?
17. you want to buy meat and poultry?
18. you need to change your glasses?
19. you want to clean your coat?
20. you want to change your hairstyle or have a haircut?

B Now match the shops below (1-20) to the pictures (a-t) in the previous exercise.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. baker's | 11. hairdresser's |
| 2. bookshop | 12. laundry |
| 3. butcher's | 13. newsagent's |
| 4. chemist's | 14. optician's |
| 5. clothes shop | 15. pet shop |
| 6. dry cleaner's | 16. photographer's |
| 7. florist's | 17. post office |
| 8. garage | 18. shoe shop |
| 9. greengrocer's | 19. stationer's |
| 10. grocer's | 20. toy shop |

C Match 1-10 with a-j.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. place | ☐ | a. special offer |
| 2. buy on | ☐ | b. centre |
| 3. shopping | ☐ | c. shop |
| 4. household | ☐ | d. an advertisement |
| 5. run | ☐ | e. the sales |
| 6. get a | ☐ | f. appliances |
| 7. factory | ☐ | g. owner |
| 8. buy in | ☐ | h. discount |
| 9. furniture | ☐ | i. outlet |
| 10. shop | ☐ | j. a shop |

D Complete the dialogue. Each underscore (_) stands for one letter.

Alice: What a nice blouse you have on!

Kate: Oh, thank you. I'm glad you like it.

Alice: Where did you buy it?

Kate: In the new (1) d _ _ _ _ _ store that opened 3 months ago in the city centre. They have huge (2) r _ _ _ _ _ there! And the blouse was a real (3) b _ _ _ _ _ !

Alice: Was it? Is there a shoe department there?

Kate: Of course there is. If you go there on a Monday at 9 a.m., you get a 10% (4) d _ _ _ _ _ on any shoes you like and you can also get some shoe polish or a pair of shoelaces (5) f _ _ _ of charge! And if after buying them, you decide you don't want them, you can (6) e _ _ _ _ _ them within 7 days for something else, for example a pair of slippers or rubber boots.

Alice: That's great, but what if you can't find something you like?

Kate: Well, if that's the case, there's no need to worry because they'll give you a (7) r _ _ _ _ _ . Also, every day at 12, they have some special (8) o _ _ _ _ _ , which are usually a pair of tights or some other things you can get for half price...

Alice: Why are we wasting our time?! Let's go shopping!

E Work in pairs. Take turns to ask and answer questions, using the prompts below.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Do you ever go shopping? How often? Who do you go shopping with? What do you shop for?
<i>Sometimes, with..., and we usually shop for...
Yes, every... No, because...</i> | 4. Who is the easiest / most difficult person to buy presents for in your family?
<i>My... is the easiest / most difficult to buy a present for because...
I hate / love buying presents for my... because...</i> |
| 2. Do you enjoy shopping?
<i>Yes, because... No, because...</i> | 5. What is the staff in the shops like?
<i>In my opinion, it's... It depends on...
The staff is very polite / rude and...</i> |
| 3. Do you consider shopping a chore or a leisure activity?
<i>I consider it a... because...</i> | 6. What's the best / worst purchase you have made?
<i>Why did / didn't you like it?
It was... We liked it / didn't like it because...</i> |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Where do you usually shop?
- What are the advantages/disadvantages of shopping in a big supermarket?
- What are the advantages/disadvantages of shopping in an open-air market?

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



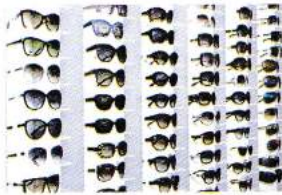
	T	F
1. The customer hasn't got a new catalogue.		
2. The customer is going to have his printer repaired.		
3. The customer is surprised because laser printers are quite cheap.		
4. The customer buys a mouse for his computer.		
5. The customer has to pay extra money for delivery.		



B Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. Which shop is the man **NOT** going to visit?



A



B



C

2. How much did the woman pay for the scarf?

£45

A

£30

B

£50

C

3. What did the man want to buy?



A



B



C

4. What is the woman going to do?

- A. borrow a camera
- B. make an online purchase
- C. visit a shop

5. How did the man find out about the restaurant?

- A. He saw a billboard.
- B. He saw a TV commercial.
- C. He heard a radio commercial.

6. Why did the speaker go to the shop?

- A. She had forgotten to take the receipt.
- B. She wanted to get a refund.
- C. She wanted to exchange an item.



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What influences you when you are shopping?
- Is it a good idea to have a credit card on you when you go shopping?
Why? / Why not?
- Do you think it's worth waiting for the sales to do your shopping?
Why? / Why not?

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you enjoy shopping? Why / Why not?
- How do you usually do your shopping? Why?
- How can buying a product online be better than shopping for it at a shop?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

1

The Pryvoz Market in Odesa, Ukraine, is one of the largest markets in the world. It started as a farmer's market, but it's not only fresh fruit, vegetables, fish and meat that you can find there today. You can buy a variety of new and second-hand goods, from clothes and shoes to gadgets and tools. Travellers visit the Privoz Market for an authentic experience of the local culture!



2



If you're in Madrid on a Sunday or a public holiday, then you should definitely visit El Rastro. El Rastro is Madrid's most famous flea market, located in a neighbourhood called La Latina. More than 1,000 people sell things there. Handmade and second-hand items, clothes, toys, magazines, and jewellery are just some of the things you can find in El Rastro.

3

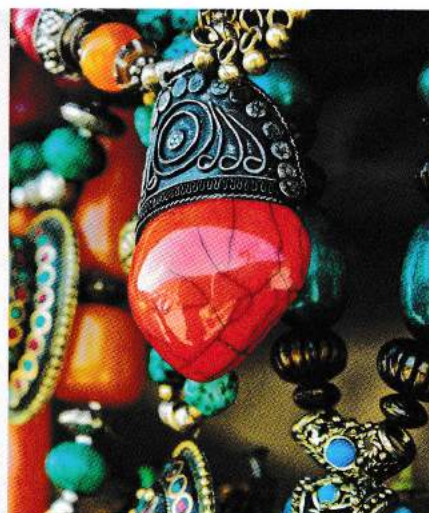
Portobello Market in London, UK, consists of six different markets that sell a wide variety of goods. On Saturdays, all of them are open from 9.00 to 19.00. You may want to visit Portobello Market early in the morning, as it can get very crowded later on. The Portobello Market stalls are closed on Sundays.



4



In New York City, there are many markets to visit. One of these is the Brooklyn Flea. Vendors—most of them local artists and designers—gather there to sell furniture, art, crafts, jewellery, second-hand clothes, antiques and souvenirs. From April to October it is an outdoor market, while from November to March—when it's colder—it moves indoors.



5



The Setagaya Boro-ichi in Tokyo is a flea market with a long history. It started in 1578 and got its name from the *boro*, the old pieces of cloth that were sold there. Today, about 700 vendors sell a wide range of products. One of those products is daikan mochi, a type of rice cake that people can enjoy while visiting the market.



6

If you're in Sydney, Australia, then you can visit The Rocks Markets. They are located in a beautiful and historic neighbourhood called The Rocks, near the famous Sydney Opera House. Local artists can sell their creations there. Visitors can enjoy delicious food while listening to live music. There are interesting events for the whole family at The Rocks Markets!



Which market _____?

- A. is open on national holidays
- B. changes its location twice a year
- C. is close to a popular cultural attraction
- D. has been around for hundreds of years
- E. is located outside a city
- F. is best when visited early
- G. is the largest in the world
- H. used to sell only food



B Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

× IS THERE LIFE × AFTER LEATHER?

Standing in the men's shoe department in Selfridges, happily looking at the new season's shoes, I remember my promise to stop wearing leather this winter. My mood becomes dark—none of the designer goods I like look leather-free.

I explain my problem to the shop assistant and I know from her face that she is thinking: you'll be lucky. Walking me over to a pair of Camper shoes, she says: 'These have an imitation-crocodile top. That's all I can think of.'

She suggests I try the other in-store shoe department, but it is the same story there, too—nothing. None of this comes as a great surprise. I have already tried and failed in Kurt Geiger, Hudson and Poste.

As a vegetarian I never know what to reply to friends, family or strangers who say that it is fine not to eat meat, but surely it is hypocritical to be walking around in leather.

For many vegetarians, myself included, the reason for wearing it is often based on the excuse that leather only comes as a result of the meat industry. However, this view conveniently ignores both the cruel way the animal is killed and the fact that 10% of an animal's value is in its skin. Supporting the leather industry means supporting the meat industry. And learning where the best and softest leather comes from made me feel like a criminal.

There is, however, another way of seeing this. By choosing plastic instead, aren't we damaging the environment? Perhaps, but leather is no more environmentally friendly because it needs a lot of dangerous chemicals to preserve it, all of which cause pollution.

Stella McCartney remains the only famous designer to pay real attention to vegetarianism. Having produced a whole range of must-have fashion wear, all suitable for vegetarians, she proves that it is possible to be a very stylish vegetarian. If you are a woman, that is.

Does McCartney have any plans for menswear? 'I have just started offering suits at the London store,' she says, 'and any future men's shoes and accessories collection will, of course, be suitable for vegetarians.'

For now, fashion-conscious men looking for something comfortable to wear on their feet are going to have to manage with specialist vegan companies. I warn you, this is not much of a comfort.

It is slightly easier with bags. I come across three that I not only like but are all leather-free; Helmut Lang's canvas bag comes with cool metal fasteners; Belstaff's weekend bag is waterproof and made from a leather-free material; and the best buy of the day, a fantastic, extremely chic APC leather-look shoulder bag. At £100, it's a bargain.

- What did the writer want to buy?
 - a pair of shoes that he had seen the year before
 - a specific pair of crocodile-skin designer shoes
 - a pair of leather-free women's shoes
 - a pair of shoes not made of animal skin
- Why do the writer's friends say that he is a hypocrite?
 - He doesn't eat meat.
 - He shops at Hudson and Poste.
 - He wears leather.
 - He never keeps his promises.
- What is true about most of Stella McCartney's products, according to the writer?
 - They are made of plastic.
 - They are only for women.
 - They are not fashionable.
 - They are very expensive.
- Where can male vegetarians get shoes that aren't made from animals?
 - from vegan companies
 - from Stella McCartney
 - nowhere
 - everywhere
- What is the writer doing?
 - reporting on a shopping trip
 - warning people against eating meat
 - reporting on a fashion collection
 - criticising people who eat meat

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Why are big shopping centres so popular?
- Do you think that people buy more than they need? Why? / Why not?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

SELFRIDGES & CO



Will you (1) _____ London anytime soon? Then you should definitely visit Selfridges. The famous department store has been a landmark of Oxford Street since it opened in 1909.

At Selfridges you can find a wide range of (2) _____ and services. However, lots of people enter Selfridges, even if they (3) _____ buy anything. The founder, Harry Gordon Selfridge, had a vision of bringing theatre to the shopping experience. The store's window displays are famous for combining fashion and art in impressive ways. In addition, performances are often held at Selfridges, and the building even includes a cinema. In 2011, a boating lake was created on the roof, while in 2012, a mini-golf course was built there.

Who knows what surprise Selfridges will have for its visitors (4) _____ week, month or year? Whatever it is, we're sure it (5) _____ be something extraordinary!

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. go | B. visiting | C. be visiting | D. going to visit |
| 2. A. produces | B. productions | C. producing | D. products |
| 3. A. won't be | B. aren't going to | C. not going to | D. will |
| 4. A. next | B. last | C. by | D. following |
| 5. A. going to | B. will be going | C. will | D. is going |

THE DUBAI MALL

Located at the base of Burj Khalifa, the world's tallest building, the Dubai Mall is one of the largest shopping (6) _____ in the world. It covers a(n) (7) _____ of over twelve million square feet and contains over 1,300 shops, including some of the world's most (8) _____ luxury brands. However, the Dubai Mall is more than just a place to shop. Attractions include the world's second-largest indoor aquarium, an Olympic-sized ice-skating rink and 22 cinema screens; there is even a real dinosaur fossil on (9) _____. All this has made the Dubai Mall an incredibly popular tourist (10) _____. In 2019 the mall received over 84 million visits—that's more than the number of visitors New York City welcomed in the same year.



- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 6. A. stores | B. markets | C. places | D. centres |
| 7. A. area | B. distance | C. range | D. space |
| 8. A. bargain | B. retail | C. rich | D. exclusive |
| 9. A. view | B. display | C. hold | D. screen |
| 10. A. location | B. invention | C. destination | D. foundation |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever bought something only to find out later that it was not what you expected? If yes, what did you do? / If no, what would you do in a situation such as this?
- What problems might occur when you buy something on the Internet?

A Read the instructions and the sample email of complaint carefully. Underline the parts in the email that correspond to the points given below.

You recently bought a pair of trainers from an online shop. Unfortunately, when you received them, you found that they were neither the colour nor the size which you had ordered. There was also an extra charge for postage and packaging.

Write an email to customer service, in which you

- say why you are writing and provide details relevant to the purchase
- write about the aspects of the product and service which you are unhappy about
- state clearly what you expect them to do.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to make a complaint. It is with reference to a pair of AIR MAX SNAZZY3 trainers, which I ordered from your online department store on the 27th of January.

First of all, your site states clearly that there is no extra charge for postage and packaging. You can, therefore, understand my dismay when I was requested to pay an additional 20 euros for this service. To make matters worse, when I opened the box I found that the trainers were neither the colour nor the size which I had ordered. I ordered a pink pair size 38 and got a black pair size 36 instead.

As you realise, I am very disappointed as neither the service nor the product is that which I expected. I feel that, under the circumstances, I am entitled to a full refund.

I am confident this matter will receive your prompt attention. I thank you in advance.

Yours faithfully,

Amelia Holl

B Read the email again and answer the following questions.

1. What information does the writer include in the first paragraph?
2. In which paragraph are the complaints made?
3. How many complaints does the writer make?
4. What course of action does he/she request?
5. Is this email formal or informal? How do you know?

C Find phrases or sentences in the email that mean the same thing as the more informal ones below.

1. I am writing about...
2. On your site you say...
3. I was unhappy...
4. Also...
5. I think I have the right to get all my money back.
6. I am sure you will do something about this soon.

PLAN

An email/letter of complaint

An email/letter of complaint is an email/letter we write to somebody in authority (usually somebody we do not know) in a company, an organisation, etc., to express our dissatisfaction with goods or services which were not provided as promised or advertised. Such an email/letter may also be used to complain about an event such as a seminar, conference, fair, etc., that failed to meet the standards expected.

Greeting

Use a formal greeting, not first names.

- Dear Sir/Madam,
- Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms/Miss + surname

Opening Paragraph

Say why you are writing. Use phrases like:

- I am writing to complain / make a complaint about...
- I regret having to write to you about...
- I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with...
- I am writing to you regarding / in connection with...
- I feel I must complain about...

Main Part

Refer to all the aspects of the product/service/event that you are unhappy with, comparing them to what had been offered or promised. Use phrases like:

- You failed to mention that...
- You led me to believe that...
- I would like to point out that...
- Your advertisement/brochure was misleading.
- In your advertisement/brochure you state otherwise.
- It was completely different from what you advertised.
- Unfortunately, it was not what I expected.
- To make matters worse...

Express your emotions.

- I was shocked/surprised/speechless...
- To my amazement/surprise/horror/dismay/disappointment...

Suggest actions on the part of the company to remedy the situation. Use phrases like:

- I suggest you...
- If I were you, I would...
- I strongly advise you to...
- It is in your (best) interests to...
- You would benefit greatly from...

State what you expect to happen as a result of your complaint.

- I believe I am entitled to a partial/full refund.
- I demand a refund / immediate action / a replacement.

Closing Paragraph

Express your hope or expectation that the matter will be resolved. Use phrases like:

- I would appreciate it if you would deal with this matter immediately.
- I have enclosed (copies of relevant documents, the product, etc)... so that you can deal with this issue as quickly as possible.
- I would appreciate your full cooperation in this matter.
- I am confident this matter will receive your prompt attention.
- I hope to hear from you as soon as possible.
- I trust you will get back to me on this matter.
- I thank you in advance.

Signing off

Use a formal signature ending and write your full name underneath it.

- Yours sincerely,
- Yours faithfully,

Exam Tip

When writing a formal email/letter of complaint:

- make sure you respond to all the points in the exam task.
- use formal language and expressions.
- do not use contractions.
- be polite but firm, not aggressive.
- do not insult the company/institution/organisation/etc., or its products and services.
- do not provide unnecessary details; rather get straight to the point.
- give all the relevant information clearly and concisely.

D You recently bought a digital camera from an online shop. Unfortunately, when you received it, you found that it was not only damaged but also not the model you had ordered.

Write an email to customer service, in which you

- say why you are writing and provide details relevant to the purchase
- write about the aspects of the product and service which you are unhappy about
- state clearly what you expect them to do.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Unit 8: Travelling and tourism

Key Vocabulary 23

Travelling Подорожі

(travel) guide book путівник
 cycling/walking tour велосипедна екскурсія (прогулянка) / пішохідна екскурсія
 go camping іти в похід, відпочинок у наметах
 go hiking іти в піший похід
 go on a cruise/journey/ trip/expedition/excursion відправлятися в круїз/подорож/ експедицію/на екскурсію
 go on a round-the-world trip відправлятися в навколосвітню подорож
 go to the seaside/lake поїхати на море/на озеро
 Have a safe journey/trip! Щасливої дороги!
 hitchhike подорожувати автостопом
 hitchhiker той, хто подорожує автостопом
 hitchhiking подорож автостопом
 set off (on a journey) відправлятися в подорож
 She travels widely. Вона багато подорожує.
 show the tourist group around the town показувати туристам визначні пам'ятки міста
 sightseeing оглядати визначні пам'ятки
 They're hitchhiking around Europe. Вони подорожують автостопом по Європі.
 tour guide гід
 travel/go/fly via London подорожувати/їздити/літати через Лондон
 travel/go abroad подорожувати закордоном
 Travel broadens the mind. Подорожі розширюють світогляд.
 travel by rail/sea/air/road подорож залізницею/морем/повітрям/дорогою

travel by train/ship/plane/car подорожувати потягом/кораблем/літаком/автомобілем
 travel expenses витрати на подорож
 travel light подорожувати з невеликим багажем
 travelling conditions умови подорожі

Means of transport Види транспорту

bicycle (bike) велосипед
 boat човен
 bus автобус
 car автомобіль
 canoe каное
 coach автобус
 ferry паром
 helicopter гелікоптер
 jet реактивний літак
 lorry вантажний автомобіль
 moped мопед
 motorbike мотоцикл
 plane літак
 (motor) scooter скутер
 ship корабель
 train: intercity/international/slow/goods/fast / an express / direct потяг: міжміський/міжнародний/повільний/вантажний/швидкісний/прямий
 tram трамвай
 underground/tube метро
 yacht яхта

Kinds of holidays Види відпочинку

adventure holiday активний відпочинок
 beach holiday пляжний відпочинок
 camping holiday відпочинок на природі, у наметовому містечку
 cruise круїз

family holiday сімейний відпочинок
 hiking holiday пішохідний туризм
 package holiday організована туристична поїздка
 safari сафарі
 seaside holiday відпочинок на морі
 summer holiday літній відпочинок
 winter holiday зимовий відпочинок

Things to do on holiday Заняття на канікулах, у відпустці

go sightseeing/touring / see the sights / tour (around) оглядати визначні пам'ятки
 go to a funfair відвідувати парк розваг
 lie on the beach лежати на пляжі
 see an exhibition / visit a museum/cathedral відвідувати виставку/музей/собор
 scuba diving підводне плавання
 snorkel плавати з трубкою
 sunbathe засмагати
 swim in the sea/lake плавати в морі/в озері
 take photos робити фотознімки
 visit different countries відвідувати різні країни
 windsurf займатися віндсерфінгом

Places to live/ stay on holiday Розташування та розміщення

cabin будиночок для кемпінгу
 caravan причіп, фургон, трейлер
 guesthouse / boarding house пансіон

youth) hostel хостел
молодіжний
private rooms/accommodation
окремі кімнати
three-star hotel 3-зірковий готель

Accidents and emergencies

Нещасні випадки та надзвичайні ситуації

accident victim потерпілий
ambulance швидка допомога
car/road/plane accident ДТП
(дорожньо-транспортна пригода)
cause an accident спричиняти аварію
cause of an accident причина аварії
collide with зіштовхнутись з
crash one's car розбити машину
crash into someone's car
зіштовхнутись з іншим автомобілем
emergency (case) нещасний випадок, надзвичайна ситуація
crash (into) зіштовхнутись з чимось / чимось
have a head-on collision лобове зіткнення
have a knock/bump удар/зіткнення
hit sth вдарити когось
injury травма
injured травмований
person responsible for the accident винуватець ДТП

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

accommodation проживання
airport аеропорт
arrive at the station / at platform 6
прибувати на станцію / на платформу 6
arrivals/departure lounge зал прибуття/вильоту
board a plane/ship сідати на літак / корабель
book a ticket/holiday/flight
бронювати білет/подорож/рейс
bus stop автобусна зупинка
buy souvenirs купувати сувеніри

campsite наметове містечко
cancel a reservation скасовувати бронювання
cancelled/delayed скасований/затримується
car park стоянка / парковка для автомобілів
catch/miss a train/bus сідати на / пропустити потяг/автобус
change trains пересідати на інший потяг
change (trains) three times з трьома пересадками
check in / out of a hotel заселення / виселення з готелю
drunk driving керувати автомобілем в нетверезому стані
(valid/invalid) driving licence дійсне/недійсне посвідчення водія
fasten one's seat belt пристебнути ремінь безпеки
flight рейс
full/half board повний пансіон/напівпансіон (сніданок та вечеря)
gate ворота в аеропорту
get on/off a train/bus сідати на/виходити з потяга/автобуса
get into/out of a car сідати в/виходити з автомобіля
get/have a puncture пробити (колесо)
get lost загубитись
(hand) luggage багаж (ручна поклажа)
go the wrong way піти неправильним шляхом
holiday resort курорт
holiday home at the seaside літній будинок на березі моря
holiday season період відпусток
holidaymaker турист
land приземлятися (про літак)
left luggage (office) камера схову
make a reservation бронювати щось
means of transport види транспорту
motorway автомагістраль
passenger пасажир
passport control паспортний контроль
platform платформа
put up a tent ставити намет
railway/bus station залізничний вокзал/автовокзал

road check дорожній контроль, перевірка
runway злітна смуга
rush hour година-пік
single/return ticket білет в одну/обидві сторони
seaside/ski resort морський/лижний курорт
sleeping car/carriage спальний вагон
sleeping bag спальний мішок
sleep in a tent спати в наметі
suitcase валіза
take driving lessons брати уроки водіння
take off злітати (про літак)
taxi таксі
terminal термінал
The train is running three hours late.
Потяг затримується на три години.
ticket office каса
(flight/train/bus) timetable розклад (рейсу/потягу/автобуса)
travel agency туристична агенція
traffic jam затор
tourist (information) office туристичне бюро
(domestic/foreign) tourism внутрішній/зовнішній туризм
tourist destination туристичний напрямок
vacancy вільна кімната
voyage подорож (морем)
Excuse me, is this seat free/taken?
Перепрошую, це місце вільне/зайняте?
Excuse me, how can I get to...?
Перепрошую, як дістатись до...?
Is accommodation/insurance included in the price? Чи проживання/страхування входить у вартість?
Where does this train go to? Куди відправляється цей потяг?
When is the next train to Warsaw? О котрій годині відправляється наступний потяг до Варшави?
wonderful view чудовий вид

A Put the words/phrases in the box in the correct category of transport below. Some words/phrases may be used more than once.

runway traffic jam motorway platform cruise take off board station
get on passport control voyage have a bump get out of rush hour seat belts

rail / train	sea / ship	air / plane	road / car

B Choose the correct answer (a, b, c or d).

- The train now standing at _____ 3 is for Kharkiv.
a. station b. stop c. platform d. runway
- Flight number BA 768 had to be _____ due to thick fog.
a. changed b. cancelled c. booked d. set off
- The first thing you should do when getting into a car is to _____ your seat belt.
a. press b. undo c. fasten d. get
- Today the most popular _____ of transport are the plane and the car.
a. processes b. means c. ways d. methods
- Speeding was the main _____ of the accident that happened last week.
a. reason b. problem c. advantage d. cause
- What I really dislike about camping holidays is putting _____ a tent.
a. up b. away c. off d. on
- I'm looking for accommodation for two people for three nights. Do you have any _____ here?
a. places b. vacancies c. openings d. free seats

C Work in pairs. With your partner, decide if the following sentences are true (T) or false (F) and say why.

	T	F
1. If you want to go on a package holiday, you usually go to a travel agency.		
2. The boarding house is the place where you wait for the bus.		
3. When you arrive at the hotel, you have to check in.		
4. You can live or spend your holiday in a caravan.		
5. A campsite is where you buy tickets for your trip.		
6. If you are really sleepy during your journey, you can arrange to have a sleeping car.		
7. Most students choose to stay at youth hostels for a night or two because it's quite cheap accommodation.		

D The pictures below show different types of holidays. In pairs, discuss these questions:

1. Where would you and your partner like to spend a holiday? Why?
2. What would you do there?

Useful phrases

can be expensive
can relax with friends
wear light clothes and swimwear
chance to meet new people
usually quite cheap
eat in restaurants
need good weather to enjoy it

very few people around
close to nature
casual and warm clothes are necessary
escape from routine
comfortable accommodation
cook your own meals on a campfire

need to be fit
adventurous
tents / sleeping bags
A holiday at the seaside...
During a camping holiday, we...
I like... so I would choose...
I would prefer... because...



E Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

direct emergency resort book collision included hit sunbathe

1. Last year we spent Christmas in a ski _____ in the Alps.
2. When Ann was on a package holiday in Italy, she found out that the day trips she wanted to go on were not _____ in the price.
3. It's dangerous to _____ between 11 a.m. and 3 p.m. especially for young children.
4. Although there was a very serious _____, nobody was hurt.
5. Excuse me, is there a(n) _____ train to Leeds? I've had enough of changing trains!
6. If it's a(n) _____, call for an ambulance immediately.
7. Brian lost control of his motorbike, _____ a tree and broke his arm.
8. If you want to fly to Dublin cheaply, you have to _____ a ticket at least 4 months in advance.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever travelled by plane? Did you enjoy it? Why? / Why not?
- What procedures do you have to go through when you travel by plane?
- Have you ever experienced a dangerous situation on holiday? What happened?

A Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. Where are the speakers staying on their holiday this year?



A



B



C

2. What time will the woman be at the airport?



A



B



C

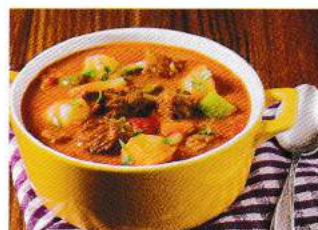
3. What did the speaker enjoy most during his trip?



A



B



C

4. What was the main reason for the cancellation?

- A. the cost of the tickets
- B. a change in holiday plans
- C. an injury

5. What was the speaker's worst problem?

- A. the driving conditions
- B. the weather
- C. lack of insurance

6. How will the hotel guest visit Bath?

- A. by coach
- B. by van
- C. by rail



Exam Tip

- Read the instructions and the questions.
- Underline key words in the questions.
- Predict what the speaker may talk about.
- Listen to the recording for the first time and write down the answer to each question, based on what you hear.
- For each question, compare your answer with the options and choose the best one.
- Listen to the recording for the second time to check if your answers are correct.
- Explain why the other options are incorrect.



B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. Why did Roland decide to go to the Caribbean?
 - A. The water there is always warm.
 - B. He wanted to make sure he had an adventure.
 - C. He wanted to be sure of good weather.
2. What made Roland take windsurfing lessons?
 - A. boredom
 - B. enthusiasm
 - C. the teacher
3. Why shouldn't Roland have gone windsurfing on his own?
 - A. It was nearly dark.
 - B. There wasn't enough wind.
 - C. He wasn't experienced enough.
4. When did Roland realise he had a problem?
 - A. when he panicked
 - B. when he decided to go back
 - C. when the sun went down
5. How did Roland know he had reached land?
 - A. when he saw some trees in front of him
 - B. when his board touched the sand
 - C. when he felt the wind blowing

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- If you could go on holiday anywhere in the world, where would you go? Why?
- What are the advantages of different means of transport?
- What can go wrong when you are using different means of transport?

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What different types of holidays can you think of?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of the holidays you have mentioned?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

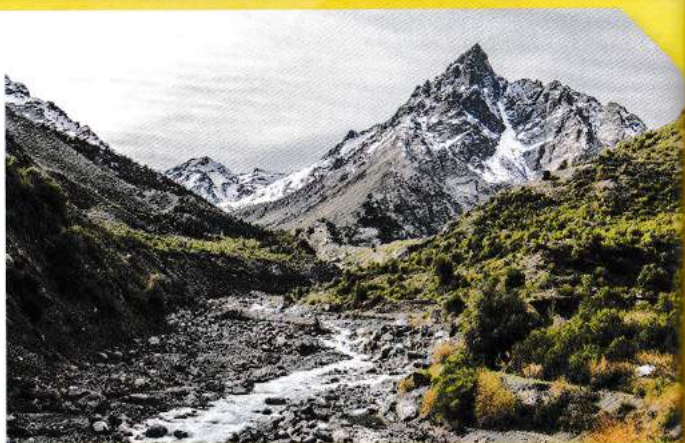
HOLIDAY options

1

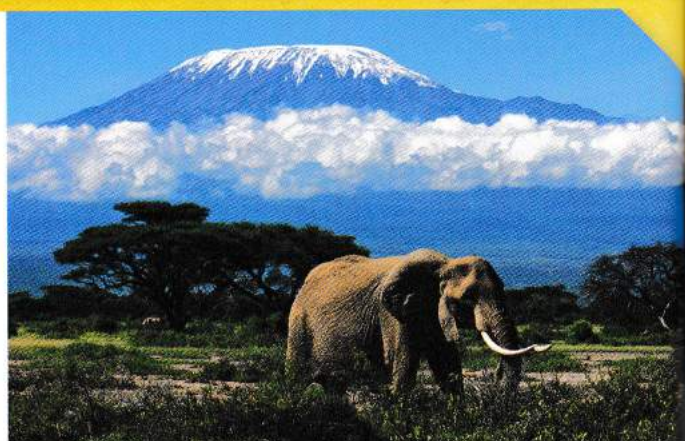
Jungles are not the most welcoming of places. They are hot, humid and full of insects. Yet, with a good guide, a jungle trip can be an experience of a lifetime. They offer the greatest variety of wildlife, and many of the world's most spectacular/impressive ruins can be found buried deep amongst the trees.

**2**

Trekking holidays are often very hard on the feet, but not this particular trekking holiday in Peru. Thanks to llamas—the traditional pack animal of the Incas—your four-day walk through the heart of the Andes will be much easier. The animals will carry part of your load while you admire the magnificent mountains that are all around you.

**3**

Africa's highest mountain is always covered in snow. You don't need technical climbing ability to reach the peak, but you must be a fit and healthy person as it takes several days to get there. Throughout the climb you are accompanied by a team of experienced mountain guides.



4

Come to Antarctica, where you can see the power and beauty of Mother Nature. On this holiday, you'll travel on a first-class ship and get to choose how you want to experience Antarctica: you can stay aboard and watch penguins, seals and whales; you can go on land with naturalists in search of interesting wildlife; or you can sit back and cruise among the icebergs.



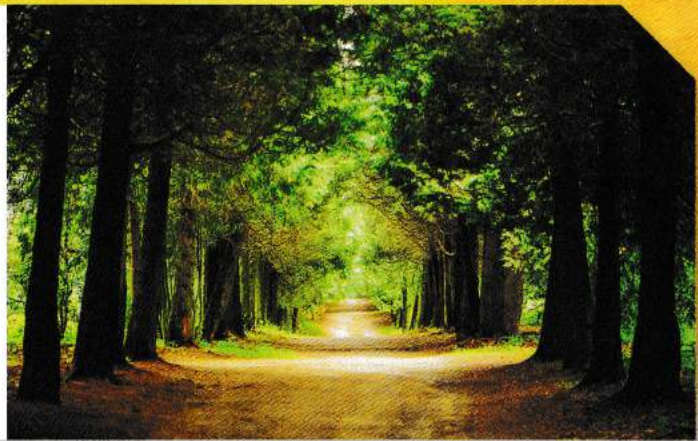
5

Each boat holds eight people. Eight get in at the beginning and eight get out at the end... but that doesn't mean that there will always be eight people in the boat! You might fall out and find yourself in the water. Don't worry; the guides will pull you out, and you'll be wearing a life jacket at all times.



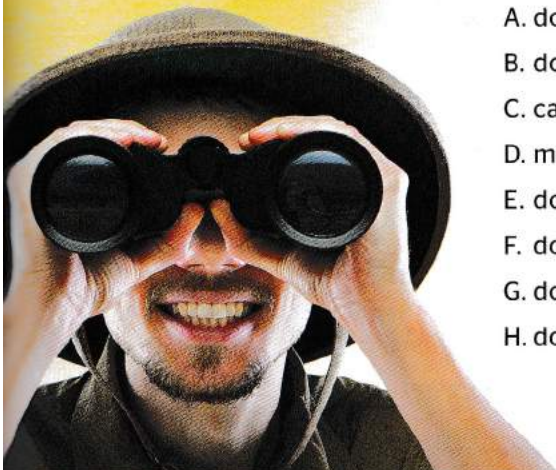
6

There is no better way to get to know a country's culture and landscape than by bike. There are different kinds of cycling holidays and we offer different programmes for both the occasional and the experienced cyclist. All you have to do is choose a trip that suits your level of ability and pedal away.



On which holiday _____?

- A. do you have to wear special equipment
- B. do you have to be strong and in good health
- C. can you take an animal with you
- D. might you see the hidden remains of past civilisations
- E. do you travel on a luxurious ship
- F. do you travel on two wheels
- G. do you stay in a first-class hotel
- H. do animals carry your equipment



B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Almost there!

It had always been my dream to climb Mount Everest, and last year I decided I wasn't going to put it off any longer. I started (1) _____, as I was determined not to let physical inability prevent me from standing on top of the highest mountain in the world. Several months later I was in the best shape of my life, so I boarded a plane and off I went to Nepal, where I met the other members of my group. They were from different parts of the world and everyone was very friendly.

Before we could actually begin the climb, we had to do some more training to get used to the altitude. So there I was in a town called Dingboche with twelve strangers who shared one common goal—to reach the top of Everest. After a week of that training, I realised just how difficult this journey was (2) _____. Without the support of the other group members, I might have given up and gone home. Another thing I realised was that even though I had only known these people for a few days, I had got really close to them.

A couple of days before (3) _____, we were told that all expeditions to the top of the mountain were cancelled because of a heavy snowstorm.

The groups that had left before us had to be turned back. Several other groups, however, got cut off and had to be rescued by helicopter. There were even rumours of some climbers (4) _____ in an avalanche. We were all heartbroken. We had trained so hard for this and now Mother Nature was not going to allow us to realise our dream.

One night, as we were (5) _____ feeling miserable, our guide suggested we climb another great mountain called Ama Dablam. Some of us, myself included, were too disappointed to do anything and felt there was no point if we couldn't climb Everest. In the end, though, eight of us decided to go ahead and climb Ama Dablam. A week later, we reached the base camp. As we climbed higher, the snow got deeper and the terrain got icier, but over the next two weeks we went on to reach an altitude of over 6,800 metres. When we got to the top, I thought to myself: 'Here we are, eight people who only a month ago were strangers and are now (6) _____ each

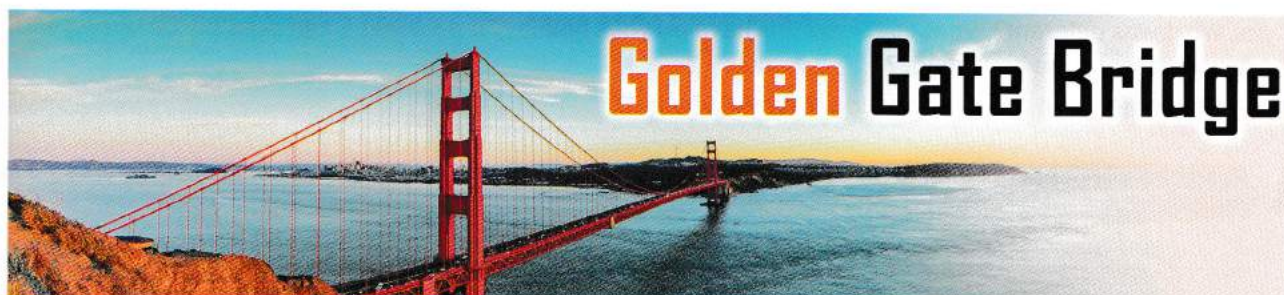
other on our accomplishment.' I am so glad I didn't stay behind because I would not have experienced that moment. I learnt that it's not the destination or even the journey that makes the adventure. It's your companions that make everything worthwhile.

- A. going to Nepal
- B. hanging around
- C. going to be
- D. training really hard
- E. hugging, kissing and congratulating
- F. being killed
- G. climbing up the mountain
- H. leaving for Everest

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Where do you usually spend your holidays? Why?
- How do you usually get there?
- What do you usually do when you are on holiday?
- What was the best/worst holiday you have ever had? What happened?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco is considered one of the Seven Wonders of the Modern World. On its opening day, 27 May 1937, thousands of people (1) _____ across the bridge, and the next day it was opened for vehicles. Today, about 112,000 vehicles pass over the bridge daily, while pedestrians can walk on the pavements during the day. The bridge is a very popular tourist attraction, and visitors (2) _____ photos of it for years and years.

The colour of the Golden Gate Bridge, which is known as International Orange, (3) _____ the bridge stand out even on foggy days. However, (4) _____ 1937, the bridge has been closed three times because of the weather.

Lots of films feature the Golden Gate Bridge—in recent years, it (5) _____ in superhero and sci-fi films, like *Ant-Man* and *Bumblebee*. It has also made regular appearances in *Star Trek* films and TV series, starting with *Star Trek IV* in 1986!

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. have walked | B. have been walking | C. walking | D. walked |
| 2. A. have been taking | B. took | C. were taking | D. are taking |
| 3. A. helping | B. has helped | C. helped | D. been helping |
| 4. A. for | B. ever | C. since | D. in |
| 5. A. has appeared | B. has been appearing | C. will appear | D. appeared |

One bold step at a time

As a teenager, you may be thinking of going on holiday alone or in the company of friends. Although travel (6) _____ the mind and can be a wonderful learning experience for you, you must take certain things into consideration. First of all, before setting (7) _____ on an adventure holiday, you should inform your parents of your travel plans in detail, including where you will stay and when. Your parents' role should not be limited to paying the travel (8) _____. Many parents have travelled (9) _____ themselves, so it is actually worth getting them involved, as they can give you some very valuable advice.

In addition, you should seriously consider going on a package holiday instead of travelling independently. Besides being more economical—as accommodation, transport, entertainment, food and travel (10) _____ are usually included in the price—these [kinds of] holidays are also much safer. You can, as a result, expect fewer nasty surprises, such as getting lost in a dangerous area.



- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|----------------|---------------|
| 6. A. broadens | B. widens | C. strengthens | D. closes |
| 7. A. in | B. up | C. to | D. off |
| 8. A. amounts | B. bills | C. expenses | D. money |
| 9. A. scarcely | B. fully | C. widely | D. completely |
| 10. A. insurance | B. guide | C. destination | D. condition |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever gone on holiday and found things were different to what you expected?
- If yes, what was different? What effect did this have on your holiday? If no, what could possibly go wrong with the arrangements you have made?
- Would you ever go on a package holiday? Why / Why not?

A Read part of Michael's email to his friend Jonathan and the advertisement below. Would you be interested in this holiday?

...found this great adventure holiday and thought you might be interested in going. Let me know what you think.

Michael

Patagonia trekking adventure holiday



Explore one of the remotest and most beautiful mountain areas of the world! The tour is quite exhausting, but you will be rewarded with the most amazing views of the stunning, magnificent peaks of Patagonia! Definitely worth it!

Price: £1,800 (10 days) including flights

Departure: every Sunday from October to March

The price includes all meals (3 per day) as well as accommodation.

B Read Jonathan's reply and tick the statements that apply to Jonathan's email.

Dear Michael,

Thank you for the invitation; I'm definitely interested in going. You know I love exploring new places on foot and I have always wanted to visit Patagonia so this is the perfect trip for me. However, as I'm currently very busy studying for my exams, it would be ideal for me if we left after the New Year, say, the first Sunday of January. If this is OK with you too, let's go ahead and book our holiday.

That's all for now. I'm looking forward to exploring Patagonia with you. Take care!

Best regards,

Jonathan

1. Jonathan accepts Michael's invitation.
2. Jonathan suggests going on a different holiday.
3. Jonathan mentions why he is interested in the holiday.
4. Jonathan asks Michael to suggest a suitable date.
5. Jonathan says when he prefers to go and why.

C Read the writing task below and put the paragraphs of the email in the correct order (1-4).

You are at an adventure camp. Write an email to your cousin in England in which you

- express your overall opinion/feelings
- say what you have done so far
- say what else you plan on doing.

Dear Terry,
✖

☐ Tomorrow we're going canoeing. I've always wanted to try it and I'm so excited! We haven't tried mountain biking yet, but they told us the mountains are only five kilometres away and they might take us **there** on Thursday. On the last day, we're going sailing on the lake, if the weather is good, of course.

☐ We went horse riding yesterday and I loved it. I hope they take us every day. Today, we went hiking and I'm exhausted. But **it** was a helpful experience because I now know how to use a map correctly.

☐ Guess where I am! I'm at an adventure camp! I've been **here** since Sunday and I'm having a fantastic time. I'm staying in a small hut with five other boys and **they're** a great laugh.

☐ That's all for now. It's late and I have to get up really early tomorrow.

Take care,
Joe

D Read the email again. What do the highlighted words refer to?

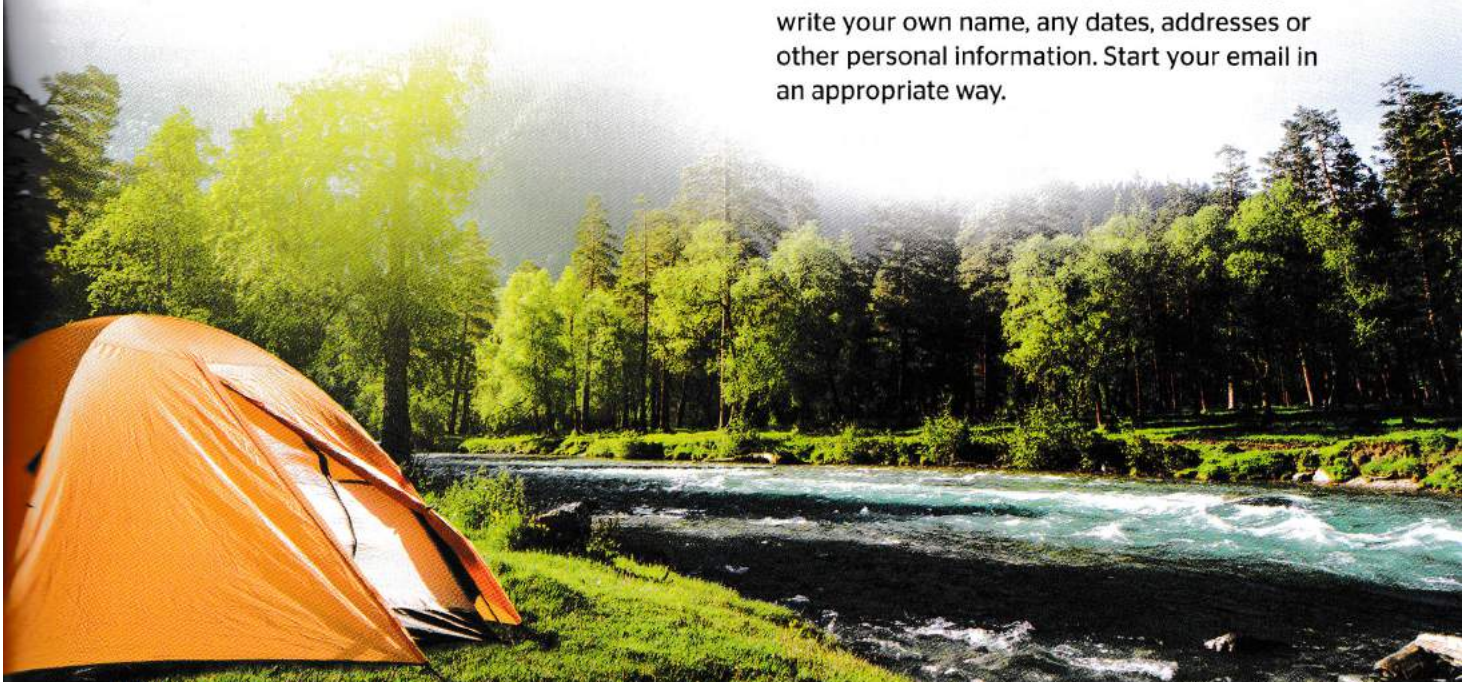
1. there _____
2. it _____
3. here _____
4. they _____

E You are studying in the US and your friend Linda has sent you an email inviting you to join her on a cycling adventure holiday, which will last for three days.

Write an email to Linda in which you

- accept the invitation
- say why you are interested
- ask for more information.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.



Unit 9: Art and culture

Key Vocabulary 26

Art and culture Мистецтво та культура

(art) gallery художня галерея
 abstract art абстрактне мистецтво
 art festival фестиваль мистецтв
 art lover поціновувач мистецтва
 art мистецтво
 artist художник
 classic класичний
 collection колекція
 cultural centre центр культури
 cultural institution заклад культури
 exhibit експонат
 exhibition виставка
 historical історичний
 historical monument / see the monuments історична пам'ятка/ відвідувати пам'ятки
 landscape пейзаж
 masterpiece шедевр
 modern art exhibition виставка сучасного мистецтва
 museum музей
 photography фотографія
 portrait портрет
 preview попередній перегляд
 sculpture/sculptor скульптура/ скульптор
 statue статуя
 still life натюрморт
 work/piece of art витвір мистецтва

Films Фільми

director режисер
 receive an award отримувати нагороду
 scene сцена
 soundtrack саундтрек до фільму

the film is directed by режисер фільму
 the film is set in (place) in (time) події в фільмі відбуваються в (місце) в (час)
 Y stars in the film в ролі знімався

Kinds of films Види фільмів

(auto)biographical film автобіографічний фільм
 action film бойовик, фільм-екшн
 adventure film пригодницький фільм
 cartoon мультфільм
 children's film дитячий фільм
 comedy комедія
 detective film детективний фільм
 documentary документальний фільм
 drama драма
 educational film навчальний фільм
 feature film художній фільм
 film based on a true story фільм, заснований на реальних подіях
 historical film історичний фільм
 horror (film) фільм жахів
 love story / romantic film романтичний фільм
 musical мюзикл
 nature film фільм про природу
 science fiction film науково-фантастичний фільм
 silent film німий фільм
 thriller трилер
 war film фільм про війну

Books Книги

a piece/work of literature літературний твір
 bookworm книголюб

classical/contemporary/modern literature класична/сучасна література
 crime/detective story детектив
 drama драма
 enjoy a book подобається книга
 fairy tale казка
 fantasy novel фантастика / фентезі
 love story любовний роман
 novel роман
 science fiction book наукова фантастика
 short story коротке оповідання
 story історія

TV programmes Телевізійні програми

current affairs поточні події
 entertainment programme розважальна програма
 live programme пряма трансляція програми
 news/sports programme новини/ новини спорту
 phone-in програма "Дзвінок-відповідь"
 political debate політичні дебати
 quiz show телевікторина
 series серіал
 sit com комедійне шоу
 soap opera мильна опера
 talk/chat show ток-шоу
 weather forecast прогноз погоди

Theatre Театр

applause оплески
 audience аудиторія
 backstage за лаштунками
 boo освистати
 children's theatre дитячий театр
 dressing room гардеробна

performance вистава
 play п'єса
 poster афіша
 puppet theatre ляльковий театр
 rehearsal репетиція
 row ряд
 stage сцена
 stage/perform ставити
 (виставу) / грати (у виставі)
 stage fright страх перед
 аудиторією
 The show's been running for
 a year. Вистава вже рік в
 репертуарі театру.
 What's on at the theatre? Що
 зараз показують в театрі?

Press Преса

article стаття
 column колонка в газеті
 daily newspaper/paper (informal)
 щоденна газета
 issue видання
 letter to the editor лист
 редактору
 local/regional newspaper місцева/
 регіональна газета
 newspaper editor редактор
 газети
 news photographer
 фоторепортер
 newspaper with a TV guide газета
 з телевізійною програмою
 journalist журналіст
 subscribe оформлювати
 підписку
 tabloid жовта преса
 today's/yesterday's newspaper
 сьогоднішня/вчорашня газета
 weekly/monthly magazine
 щотижневий/щомісячний
 журнал

Music Музика

band музичний гурт
 choir хор
 concert hall концертний зал
 concert tour концертний тур
 conduct/conductor диригувати/
 диригент
 give a concert давати концерт

He has strange taste in music.
 В нього дивні уподобання в
 музиці.
 listen to music слухати музику
 live concert живий концерт
 lyrics текст пісні
 music festival музичний
 фестиваль
 musical instrument музичний
 інструмент
 orchestra оркестр
 piece of music музичний твір
 play/sing out of tune фальшивити
 play the piano/guitar/drums грати
 на фортепіано/гітарі/барабані
 release an album випускати
 альбом
 write/compose music писати/
 складати музику
kinds of music види музики
 classical класична
 dance/electronic танцювальна/
 електронна
 heavy metal важкий метал
 jazz/blues/soul джаз/блюз/соул
 Latin латино-американська
 pop поп
 punk панк
 rap/hip-hop реп/хіп-хоп
 R&B музика R&B
 reggae регі (реггі)
 rock рок
 track аудіодоріжка

Other words and phrases

ІНШІ СЛОВА ТА ВИРАЗИ

admission free вхід вільний
 appear in the film з'являться в
 фільмі
 audition прослуховування
 box-office failure / a flop касовий
 збій, провал
 box-office hit/success касовий
 успіх
 box office каса в кінотеатрі
 cameraman оператор
 cast акторський склад
 controversial book/film
 скандальний фільм/книга
 dubbed film дубльований фільм

entertain/entertainment
 розважати/розваги
 film premiere прем'єра фільму
 film star зірка фільму
 go to (see) a film дивитися фільм
 в кінотеатрі
 hero/character герой
 newsreader диктор
 plot сюжет
 recommend рекомендувати
 remote control пульт управління
 review рецензія
 screenplay/script сценарій
 shoot/make a film знімати фільм
 special effects спеціальні ефекти
 stuntman каскадер
 subtitles субтитри
 the film/book tells the story of
 у фільмі/книзі йдеться про
 trailer трейлер, фрагмент фільму
 TV programme/channel/station
 телевізійна програма/канал/
 станція
 TV viewer/audience телеглядач

Literature Література

bestseller бестселер
 chapter розділ
 character герой
 fiction/non-fiction художня/
 наукова література
 poetry поезія
kinds of literature жанр
літератури
 autobiography автобіографія
 biography біографія
 historical novel історичний роман
 novel роман
 science fiction book наукова
 фантастика

Dance Танці

ballet балет
 ballroom танцювальний зал
 hip-hop хіп-хоп
 modern модерн

A Write the words that match the following definitions.

1. The thing you use to change TV channels. _____
2. An article in which someone gives an opinion of a film, play, book, etc. _____
3. A newspaper or a magazine that comes out once a week. _____
4. All the actors that appear in a film or play. _____
5. A series of related events that make up the main story in a film, book, etc. _____
6. A performance that can be watched and listened to at the same time as it happens. _____
7. A traditional story for children in which some magic things happen. _____
8. A building where there are many valuable exhibits. _____

B Choose the correct word/phrase from the box to complete the sentences.

masterpiece appear soundtrack box-office hit based on row character
awards release shoot

1. The film is _____ historical events.
2. The _____ to *The Last of the Mohicans* is one of my favourites.
3. The band will soon _____ their new album.
4. He is planning to _____ the whole film in Paris.
5. When I was a little girl, I always wanted to _____ in films.
6. This film is a real _____ of special effects.
7. We had front _____ seats at the theatre last night.
8. That film got five Oscar _____ last year. You just can't miss it!
9. Mickey Mouse, a famous cartoon _____ created by Walt Disney, was first seen in *Steamboat Willie* in 1928.
10. When he was making his new film, no one expected it was going to be such an incredible _____.

C Work in groups of three or four. One student thinks of a film that has recently been on TV or in cinemas. The other students ask him/her yes-no questions to guess the title of the film. You may use the expressions given below. Be imaginative!**Suggested expressions**

Does... appear in this film?
Is the director Ukrainian/Italian...?
Is it a(n)... film?
Was/Is it on TV / in cinemas?

D Write true sentences about yourself.

1. When I'm sad, I like to listen to _____.
2. My most/least favourite TV programme is _____.
3. I like books written by _____ because he/she _____.
4. The magazine/newspaper I often read is _____.
5. If I were an actor/actress, I would like to play the role of _____.
6. The first book I read by myself was _____.

E Match the words/phrases in the box with the categories given below (some words/phrases may be used in more than one category).

statue based on issue controversial gallery character editor stuntman
exhibit series sculptor bookworm article review subscribe monument

Films / TV

Books / Literature

Art / Culture

Press

F What are the following?

1. *Hamlet* _____
2. *Newsweek* _____
3. *Titanic* _____
4. *The Beverly Hills 90210* _____
5. *Dracula* _____
6. *Jurassic Park* _____
7. *Star Wars* _____
8. *Chicago* _____

G Imagine you and your partner are at a cinema complex. The three films below are being shown. Which one would you and your partner like to see? Discuss and decide, giving reasons for your choice. Then, say why you didn't choose the other two.

Useful phrases

I would/wouldn't like to see...
because it may be...
I enjoy / don't enjoy watching...
I really like/love/hate...
because...
I find... film...

He's determined to get the job done - no matter how!!!	Love is in the air...	We are not alone...
A 	B 	C 
The Mission	Falling in Love	Unwelcome Visitors

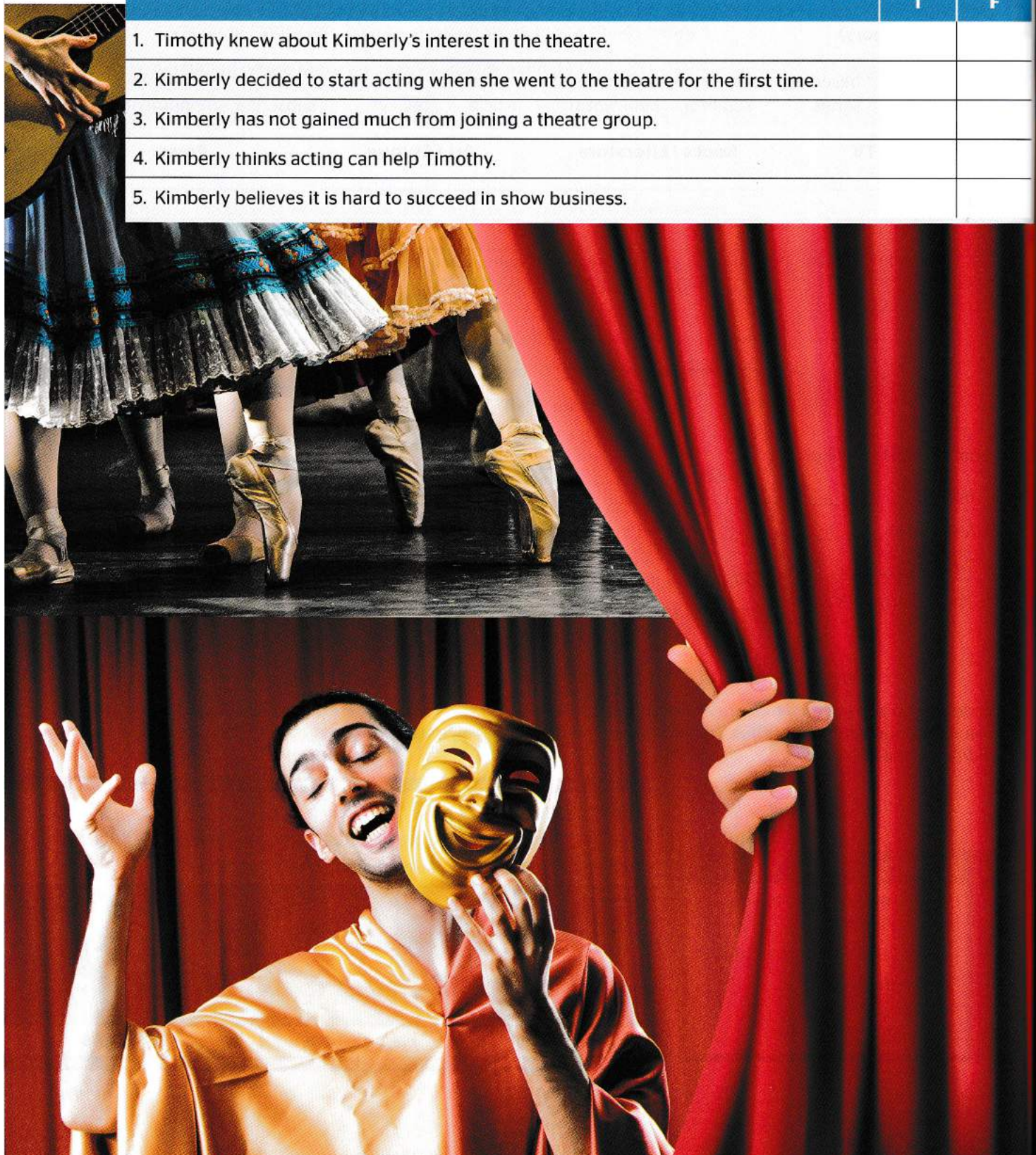
POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you like going to the theatre? Why? / Why not?
- Have you ever performed on stage? If yes, did you enjoy it?
- Have you ever been to a concert? What was it like?
- What things do you expect to see at a concert?

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. Timothy knew about Kimberly's interest in the theatre.		
2. Kimberly decided to start acting when she went to the theatre for the first time.		
3. Kimberly has not gained much from joining a theatre group.		
4. Kimberly thinks acting can help Timothy.		
5. Kimberly believes it is hard to succeed in show business.		



B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- 
1. What made the concert a success?
 - A. the fireworks
 - B. the music
 - C. a number of things
 2. Why didn't the fireworks go off at the time planned?
 - A. There was a technical problem.
 - B. The concert was outdoors.
 - C. It was a surprise.
 3. Why were T-shirts thrown to the crowd?
 - A. so that everyone could get one free
 - B. so that people would know that the band was coming on stage
 - C. so that people would get into the right mood
 4. Why did the lights go out?
 - A. because of technical problems
 - B. as part of the show
 - C. to stop the crowd from screaming and shouting
 5. What does Jane say?
 - A. The band will probably release a new album.
 - B. The band is not planning on releasing a new album.
 - C. She doesn't know if the band is working on a new album.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you like listening to musicians playing music in public places? Why? / Why not?
 - What kinds of cultural events are popular with young people in Ukraine? Why?
 - What forms of entertainment are available in your area?
- 

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you enjoy attending cultural or artistic events? Why / Why not?
- How do you usually find out about the events you attend?
- Where do cultural and artistic events usually take place?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

1

The Colón Theatre is located in the centre of Buenos Aires, Argentina. It is one of the best opera houses in the world because of the way it is designed and the quality of sound it offers to audiences. Famous singers, such as Maria Callas and Luciano Pavarotti, as well as important composers, such as Igor Stravinsky, have performed there.



2

The National Centre for the Performing Arts in Beijing, China, has got a funny nickname because of its design: 'The Giant Egg'. Even though this magnificent building is located in the heart of the city, the man-made lake and the trees around it create a peaceful atmosphere. There, you can attend opera, dance, musical and theatrical performances, as well as traditional Chinese opera.



3

One of the most famous theatres in Kyiv is the Taras Shevchenko National Opera and Ballet Theatre of Ukraine. It is named after the important Ukrainian poet, Taras Shevchenko. Concerts, ballets and operas are staged there. The building first opened its doors in 1901, and has since been reconstructed twice; today it can hold 1304 people.



Radio City Music Hall in New York City is the largest indoor theatre in the world. It is an impressive venue that can hold 5,900 people. Popular concerts and shows are held there. In addition, films like *Mary Poppins* and *The Lion King* (1994) were shown there for the first time. Some film premieres still take place at Radio City today, but not as often as in the past.

The Royal Opera House is located in London's Covent Garden. You can visit it to enjoy opera and ballet, or just to have a bite and a drink at one of its many restaurants and cafés. The theatre is home to the world-famous Royal Opera and the Royal Ballet. Their performances are often broadcast online or through radio and TV around the world.

The Oslo Opera House in Norway is impressive to look at, as it seems to be floating on the waters of Oslo Fjord. The architects used stone, wood and metal to create this modern building. Apart from the main stage, there are two smaller performance halls. Visitors can walk on the roof of the building and enjoy amazing views!

- A. has functioned as a cinema
- B. gives you the chance to see shows without being there
- C. looks like something that can be eaten
- D. welcomes poets on its smaller stages
- E. provides an excellent listening experience
- F. allows you to enjoy a meal near the water
- G. has seen significant changes in design
- H. allows visitors to stand on top of it

□ □ □ □ □ □ □



Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



Here comes Mr Bean!

He's a comedian, he's an actor, he's British and the whole world knows him as the silent, black-haired, tweed-jacket-wearing character Mr Bean. That's right, he's Rowan Atkinson.

Atkinson was born in Newcastle, England, and was educated at Newcastle University and Oxford. While at Oxford, he met the writer Richard Curtis, who was studying there too, and they became friends. Curtis was the opposite of Atkinson. He had a great love for words while Atkinson enjoyed

non-verbal comedy. Together they began writing comedy reviews for the Oxford Playhouse. Shortly afterwards, Atkinson began appearing in smaller theatres in Edinburgh. After a show at the Hampstead Theatre in 1978, he was offered a part in the BBC series *Not the Nine O'Clock News*. This series got off to a slow start, but soon became a huge success, with Atkinson winning a BAFTA award for his work. While this series showed some of Atkinson's physical comedy, it also showed what he could do with the spoken word. However, being a very sensible man, Atkinson saw the whole acting job as a hobby, along with his growing interest in car racing.

His big-screen debut came in 1983's unofficial James Bond film, *Never Say Never Again*. That same year Atkinson appeared in a BBC series called *The Black Adder*. The main hero, a cowardly and cunning Tudor prince named Edmund Blackadder, tries unsuccessfully to become King of England after accidentally killing his uncle Richard III during a battle. The first series was followed by three hugely successful sequels, each set in a different era of England's history. The fourth and final *Blackadder* series was awarded the BAFTA for Best Comedy Series in 1990.

Atkinson then went on to create Mr Bean. A walking disaster, Bean was purely physical comedy, the opposite of Edmund Blackadder. This clumsy character was a huge success and became another national treasure. In 1997 *Bean* came to the big screen. A few years later, *Scooby Doo* became a box-office hit in the US, followed in 2003 by *Johnny English*, a hilarious parody of James Bond films.

In his spare time Atkinson collects classic cars and takes part in races. He also writes for the British magazine *CAR*. He is a very shy man, and has managed to keep his private life private.

- What is true about Richard Curtis?
 - He is Atkinson's childhood friend.
 - He has nothing in common with Atkinson.
 - He starred in the same series with Atkinson.
 - He went to the same university as Atkinson.
- What did the BBC series *Not the Nine O'Clock News* do for Atkinson?
 - He became immediately successful.
 - It showed some of his weaknesses as an actor.
 - It brought him fame.
 - It made him give up physical comedy.
- What did Atkinson do at the beginning of his career?
 - He started car racing.
 - He wrote comedies.
 - He had an argument with Curtis about comedy.
 - He only worked as an actor occasionally.
- What is true about Mr Bean?
 - He was not a successful character.
 - He is different from Blackadder.
 - He is similar in many ways to Johnny English.
 - He was originally created for the theatre.
- Which of the following is **NOT** mentioned as one of Atkinson's leisure activities?
 - collecting car magazines
 - collecting cars
 - writing articles
 - taking part in car races

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you prefer watching a film at the cinema or at home? Why?
- What's your favourite form of entertainment? What do you like about it?



Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



The Disappearing Act

It's opening night and the actors are waiting in the wings for the curtains to go up. The stage manager notices that one of the actors is not there. The person (1) _____ missing is the lead actor. The assistant stage manager goes looking for him. He finds the actor sitting on the floor of the toilets, his head in his hands. His face is white and he is shaking.

'I'm sorry,' he says, 'I feel terrible. I'm not (2) _____ to go on stage. I feel like I'm going to be sick.' Luckily, the assistant has seen it all before. It's classic stage fright.

Stage fright, (3) _____ can happen to the most experienced of actors, can happen at any point in a show, not just before a play starts, and it doesn't have to be a first-night performance. It can be in the middle of the play when a thought suddenly flies into an actor's head. He may, for instance, think that he is not performing up to standard and that he is boring the audience. Suddenly, he is too upset to continue. He just wants to run off the stage and hide. If you would like (4) _____ a performer, but are worried about stage fright, the good thing is you can use fear to your advantage, as feeling nervous can often lead to someone (5) _____ at their best.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. which is | B. who is | C. whose | D. is |
| 2. A. so well | B. too well | C. well enough | D. very well |
| 3. A. who | B. that is | C. which | D. whose |
| 4. A. to be | B. being | C. be | D. to being |
| 5. A. perform | B. to perform | C. will perform | D. performing |

Modern Museums



Traditionally museums played an important role as places where works of art from around the world were (6) _____, preserved and exhibited for people to see. As such, the experience of visitors in these museums was primarily a(n) (7) _____ one. However, the role of modern museums is changing as they develop into more dynamic cultural (8) _____ with a focus on local cultural identity. In doing so, many museums are creating more (9) _____ exhibits which appeal to all the senses. In Qatar's new National Museum, visitors walk from one (10) _____ to the next over floors which rise and fall like sand dunes in the desert. The Taizhou Contemporary Art Museum in China highlights the cultural heritage of the region with a fishing village exhibit that allows visitors to feel the sea breeze and even smell dried fish.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------|----------------|
| 6. A. painted | B. collected | C. performed | D. released |
| 7. A. historical | B. controversial | C. visual | D. theatrical |
| 8. A. institutions | B. transformations | C. reminders | D. landscapes |
| 9. A. directed | B. conventional | C. classic | D. interactive |
| 10. A. stage | B. ballroom | C. gallery | D. conference |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever attended a cultural or artistic event? If yes, what was it and what did you enjoy about it? If no, what kind of event would you like to attend?
- What do you think makes a cultural or artistic event a success?

A Read the task and letter below. Then answer the questions that follow.

You recently attended a very interesting event which you wish to tell an English friend about. Write a letter in which you

- tell him/her about the event
- give your general impression of the event and what other people you know thought of it
- encourage your friend to attend the event.

Dear Mike,

How are you? I recently went to a street event which was absolutely fantastic! It's the best event I've been to this year and I really want to tell you about it. It's called Pichação Blues and it's a street art event from São Paulo that a group of graffiti artists have brought to our city.

The graffiti was incredible to look at and it really got me thinking. My friend, Brian, who is a really good graffiti artist himself, was also impressed. The event also had some public participation. I even had a go at working on a mural with one of the graffiti artists. It was pretty cool! As well as the new graffiti, there's an exhibition, talks and workshops. Everyone's talking about this event, and guess what—they're touring five countries, including England! Don't miss the chance to go! I think you'll love it.

Yours,

Bradley

1. What kind of event did Bradley attend?
2. What was Bradley's impression of the event?
3. What did Bradley's friend think of the event?
4. What does Bradley do at the end of the letter?

B Read an informal letter about an art event. Use the words in the box to complete the gaps.

abstract collection exhibition recommend shots entertaining series advertised works

Dear Louise,

Let me tell you about Here Today, a photography (1) _____ in Sydney's Rennet Gallery, that I went to with a friend of mine. I saw it (2) _____ in our morning paper and was curious so I thought I'd give it a go. Let me tell you, it was definitely worth the visit.

The exhibition is a(n) (3) _____ of pieces from six photographers who expressed their own interpretation of the title Here Today.

Some photos are (4) _____, but others thought provoking and controversial; what I liked most though were the more (5) _____ pieces. Sandy Adamson's photos stood out for me. She has a (6) _____ of black-and-white photographs of patterns of light that somehow gave me a feeling of time rushing by.

The photographs at that exhibition are real (7) _____ of art!

There are also some amazing (8) _____ of nature in Australia taken from the air, such as the Great Barrier Reef.

I totally (9) _____ this exhibition! Trust me, you won't regret it.

Yours,

Karen

C You recently went to an event which you enjoyed, and want to write a letter to an English friend telling him/her about it.

Write a letter in which you

- tell him/her what kind of event it is
- give your general impression of the event and what other people you know thought of it
- encourage your friend to attend the event.

Write a letter of at least 100 words.

Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your letter in an appropriate way.



Unit 10: Sport

Key Vocabulary 29

Kinds of sports and sportsmen / women

Види спорту/спортсмени

combat sports єдиноборства

boxing/karate/judo/wrestling
бокс/карате/дзюдо/боротьба (реслінг)

extreme sports екстремальні види спорту

bungee jumping банджі-джампінг, стрибати з мотузкою

individual sports індивідуальні види спорту

cycling/golf / horse riding
велоспорт/гольф/їзда верхи

team sports командні види спорту

basketball/baseball/cricket/
handball/football/volleyball
баскетбол/бейсбол/крикет/
гандбол/футбол/волейбол

water sports водні види спорту

canoeing/rowing/sailing/
swimming / water polo / water
skiing / windsurfing/surfing
гребля на каное/веслування/
вітрильний спорт/плавання/
водне поло/водні лижі/
віндсерфінг/серфінг

winter sports зимові види спорту

ice hockey / (figure/speed)
skating / ski jumping / skiing хокей
на льоду/фігурне катання/
стрибки на лижах з трампліна/
катання на лижах

athletics легка атлетика

the long jump / the high jump / the
relay race / the hurdles / the javelin /
the discus / the hammer /
the pole vault стрибок в
довжину/стрибок у висоту/
естафета/біг з перешкодами/
метання списа/метання диску/
молоту/стрибок з жердиною

other sports інші види спорту

archery/athletics/fencing / motor
racing / speedway/tennis / table
tennis / weightlifting стрільба
з лука/легка атлетика/
фехтування/автоперегони/
спідвей/теніс/настільний теніс/
важка атлетика

sportsmen / sportswomen спортсмен/спортсменка

archer/athlete/cyclist / hockey
player / jumper/hurdler/
parachutist / pole vaulter / racing
driver / skater/skier/swimmer/
weightlifter/windsurfer/wrestler
лучник/атлет/велосипедист/
хокеїст/стрибун/бар'єрист/
парашутист/стрибун з
жердиною/гонщик/фігурист/
лижник/плавець/важкоатлет/
віндсерфер/борець

Sports events Спортивні події

competition змагання

event подія

field/track events змагання з
легкої атлетики

final/quarter-final/semi-final
фінал/чвертьфінал/півфінал

inter-school chess tournament
міжшкільний шаховий турнір

marathon марафон

match матч

open competition відкриті
змагання

Paralympics паралімпійські ігри

race перегони

the Olympic Games / Olympics
Олімпійські ігри

the UEFA Cup Кубок UEFA

the World Cup кубок світу

tournament турнір

world championship чемпіонат
світу

Sports equipment

Спортивне спорядження

arrow стріла

basket кошик

(baseball / table tennis) bat
бейсбольна бита, ракетка для
настільного тенісу

ball: catch/kick/lose/pass/win
м'яч: ловити/забивати ногою/
втрачати/передавати/здобувати

board дошка

golf club гольф-клуб

(boxing) gloves боксерські
рукавички

goggles захисні окуляри

gym mat гімнастичний мат

helmet шолом

(hockey) stick ключка

kit інвентар

net сітка

pad вистілка, підкладка

paddle весло

pole жердина

(tennis/badminton) racket ракетка
(тенісна/для бадмінтону)

sail вітрило

snowboard дошка для
сноуборду

swimming cap шапочка для
плавання

indoor/outdoor (swimming) pool
критий/відкритий басейн

spikes / studded shoes / training
shoes шиповане взуття/
спортивне взуття

(running) track / racecourse
(бігова) доріжка / іподром

sword шпага

Parts of the body

Частини тіла

ankle щиколотка

arm рука від плеча до зап'ястя

back спина
bone кістка
chest грудна клітина
ear вухо
elbow лікоть
eye око
finger палець
foot стопа
hand рука
heart серце
knee коліно
leg нога
lungs легені
mouth уста
muscle м'язи
shoulder плече
stomach шлунок
throat горло
toe палець на нозі
waist талія
wrist зап'ястя

Sports accidents Спортивні травми

bleed кровити
break зламати
bruise синець
burn отримати опік
cut поріз
dislocate вивих
fracture перелом
hurt завдавати болю, болить
injure травмувати
sprain розтягнення зв'язок
strain напруження
tear розрив

other words related to sports accidents інші слова, які пов'язані з нещасними випадками

come round оговтуватись
crash into зіштовхнутись з кимось
have a leg/arm in plaster нога/рука загіпсована
heal загоювати(ся)
I ache all over. У мене болить все тіло.
I've twisted my ankle. Я підвернув ногу.
injury травма
lose/regain consciousness втратити свідомість/прийти до тями
pain біль

put a plaster/dressing/bandage on накладати гіпс/бинтування/накладати биндаж на
sprained ankle вивих щиколотки
swollen припухлий
wound рана
X-ray рентген

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

be held проводиться
be in good/poor form/shape бути в хорошій / поганій формі
break the record / set a new record / hold the record побити рекорд/встановити рекорд/утримувати рекорд
break the rules порушувати правила
champion чемпіон
coach тренер
defeat (beat) / win зазнати поразки/виграти
defeat поразка
dope / take drugs допінг/приймати допінг
doping test допінг-тест
draw гра в нічию
drug abuse зловживання допінгом, наркотиками
eliminations дискваліфікація
fair play чесна гра
football pitch футбольне поле
foul / commit a foul фол/вчинити фол
game гра
go to the gym ходити в спортзал
goalkeeper воротар
golf course майданчик для гри у гольф
He took third place in the race. Він посів третє місце в забігу.
I do / go to aerobics twice a week. Я займаюсь аеробікою двічі на тиждень.
indoor/outdoor sports спорт в закритому приміщенні/спорт на свіжому повітрі
Let's go for a swim. Ходімо поплаваємо.
Let's have/play a game of chess. Пропоную зіграти в шахи.
medallist медаліст

national/school team національна/шкільна команда
Olympic sport Олімпійські види спорту
player гравець
practise a sport займатися спортом
referee суддя
round (of golf/cards) партія в гольф/карти
score гол/рахунок
shoot/score a goal забити гол
ski slope / ski lift гірськолижний схил/підйомник (витяг)
spectator глядач
sporting facilities спортивне обладнання
sports centre/complex спортивний комплекс
sports coverage висвітлення спортивних подій
sports hall / stadium / club / field спортивний зал/стадіон/клуб/поле
substitute замінити (гравця)
take part in a competition брати участь в змаганнях
take up a sport займатись спортом
team команда
training / train / train for тренування/тренуватись/тренуватись до
training camp тренувальний табір
umpire (in tennis/baseball) рефери (в тенісі/бейсболі)
unfair competition нечесне змагання
warm-up розминка
What sports do you do? / Do you do any sports? Яким видом спорту ти займаєшся?
What's the score? Який рахунок?

B Match the words (1-10) with the nouns (a-j).

- a. gloves
- b. the ball
- c. a goal
- d. stick
- e. pitch
- f. tournament
- g. court
- h. slope
- i. aerobics
- j. bat

- 5 water sports
- 4 verbs that go with the word 'ball'
- 5 Olympic sports
- 4 popular sports in Ukraine

1. referee – umpire
2. football player – goalkeeper
3. tennis – table tennis
4. draw – defeat
5. net – basket

1. coach	a. a person who watches a sports event
2. score	b. the number of points or goals in a game or competition
3. sports complex	c. a short practice done in preparation for a particular sports activity
4. warm-up	d. buildings, services, equipment that are provided for doing sports
5. sports facilities	e. a person who trains players or teams in sport
6. spectator	f. a group of buildings where you can do sports in one place

F The table below contains verbs and body parts that can form collocations related to injuries. For each verb, tick at least one body part.

[illegible]

G Read the dialogues and circle the correct words.

- A:** You were so lucky you didn't suffer a heart attack. How did you realise that something was wrong?
B: I knew because I had a lot of pain in my **chest / stomach**, so I went to the doctor.
- A:** I was trying to twist the cap of my water bottle off when I felt the pain.
B: Was it serious?
A: Not really. The doctor said that I had strained my **wrist / knee** during the tennis match.
- A:** I bent forward to pick up the ball and I ended up in terrible pain.
B: I had a pain in my lower **back / stomach** the other day. So, I understand how you feel.
- A:** After running for so long, I felt my **lungs / heart** hurt.
B: You obviously pushed yourself too hard! You need to slow down every so often to catch your breath.
- A:** How come you're limping?
B: Well, I sprained my **ankle / leg** during the basketball match yesterday.
- A:** Why isn't Jake playing in today's football match?
B: Didn't you hear? He tore a **waist / muscle** during football practice.

H Work in pairs. You are members of the committee that will decide who the best sportsperson in your school is. Read the profiles of the three candidates and choose the best of the best. Present your choice to the class and give reasons.



Kathy: aged 16, has been swimming for over ten years. She wakes up at 5 o'clock every morning so that she can go to swimming practice before school starts. She has taken part in the national swimming competition three times, and last year she won a gold medal in an inter-school competition. Her hobbies are playing the guitar and doing yoga.

Michael: aged 17, likes team sports and his favourite is basketball. He plays for the school team and was last year's sports champion. Three years ago, his team took part in the international junior championships. He is said to be the best player of the last few seasons. In his free time, he plays computer games or watches TV.



Karen: aged 17, is interested in fencing. Apart from joining a fencing club, where she practises five times a week, she represents the school team in many tournaments held both within the country and abroad. She hasn't won a title yet, but her coach says she is very talented and hard working. Her favourite leisure activities are bungee jumping and reading.

Useful phrases

I think... would be the best... in school because...

It seems to me that... would be suitable for... because...

I don't think... I would choose... as... ...can't / should(n't) be chosen... because...

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

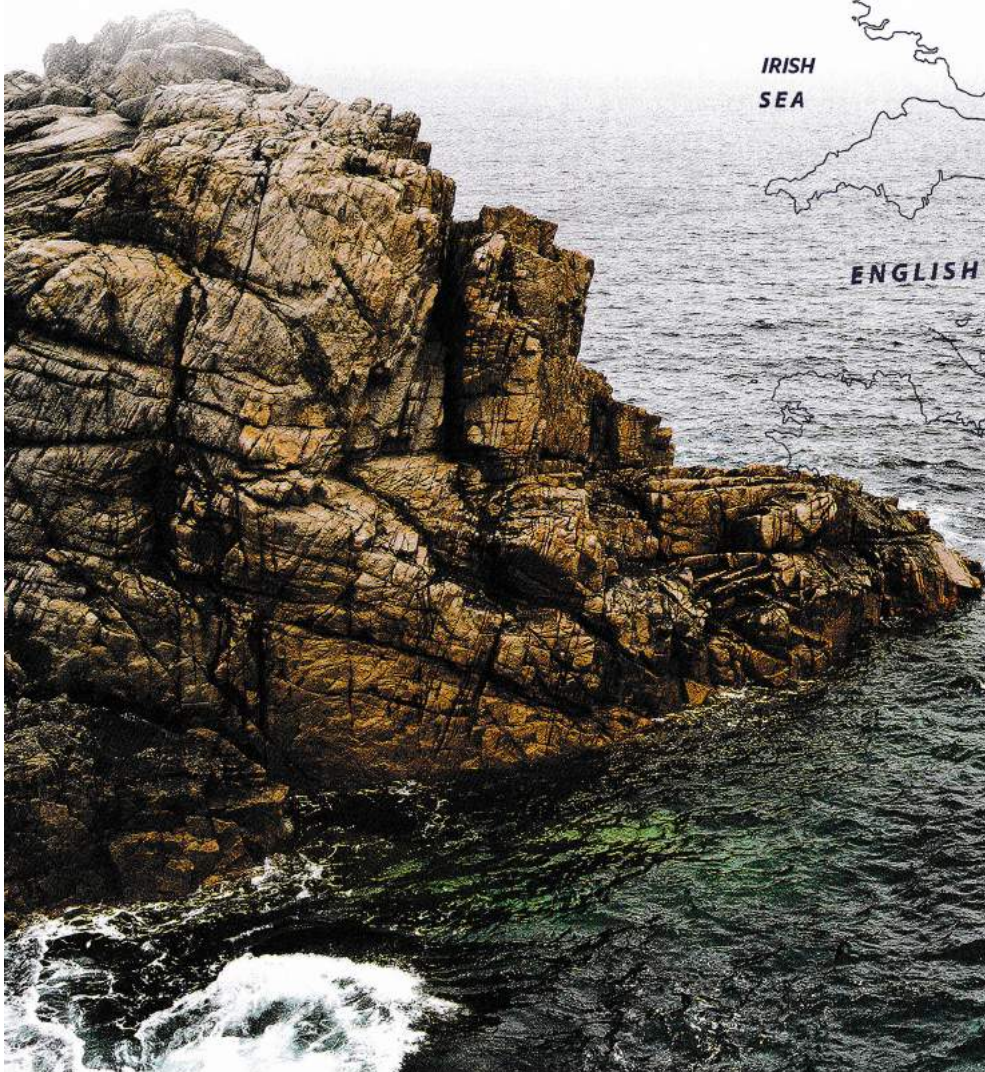
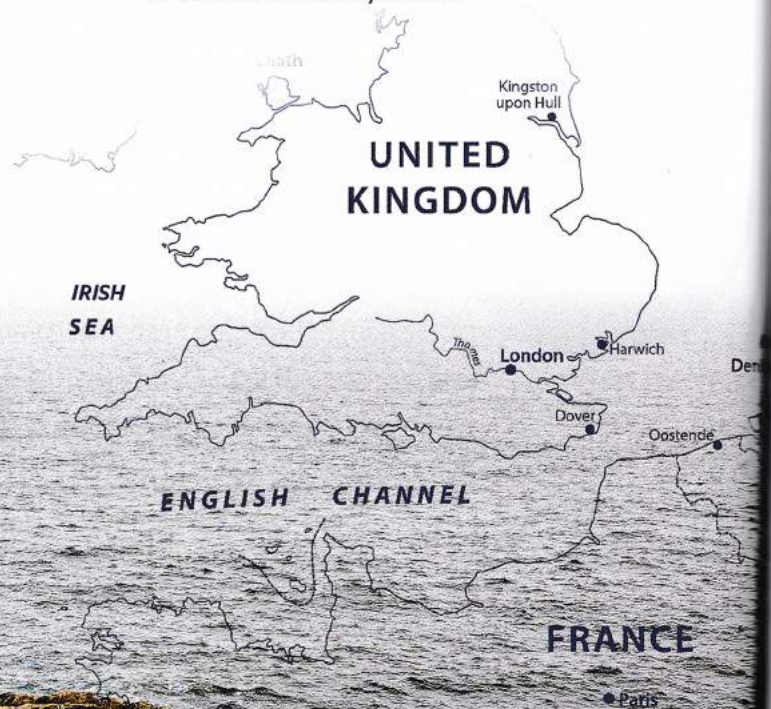
- What is your favourite sport? What do you like about it?
- What are the most popular sports among young people in Ukraine? Why?
- What sports facilities are available near the place you live? Do you use them? Why? / Why not?

A

Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- How old was Dawn Smythe when she first crossed the Channel?
 - five
 - eighteen
 - twenty-two
- Who has an extra advantage when swimming the English Channel?
 - men
 - women
 - neither men nor women
- What determines how fast you can swim?
 - mainly your physical condition
 - how hard you've trained
 - many different factors
- What does the speaker say about swimming the English Channel?
 - It is boring because it's a long swim.
 - It is difficult because of the marine life.
 - It is demanding because of the various problems.
- What is the main reason why people want to swim across the Channel?
 - to do what seems impossible
 - to win the prize money
 - to be admired by others



B Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What sport does the woman do?



A



B



C

2. What has the woman done at the gym?



A



B



C

3. What should Steven bring with him?



A



B



C

4. What will the woman do tomorrow?

- A. go ice skating
- B. go bowling
- C. play tennis

5. Will the man be able to play football today?

- A. definitely not
- B. yes
- C. possibly

6. What is John going to do later today?

- A. play tennis with some friends
- B. play basketball with some friends
- C. play tennis with the woman



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you do any sports? Why? / Why not? If yes, what are they?
- Do you like extreme sports? Why? / Why not?

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Would you like to be a professional sportsman/woman? Why? / Why not?
- Do you ever go to watch sporting events? Why? / Why not?
- What major sporting events can you think of?

A Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

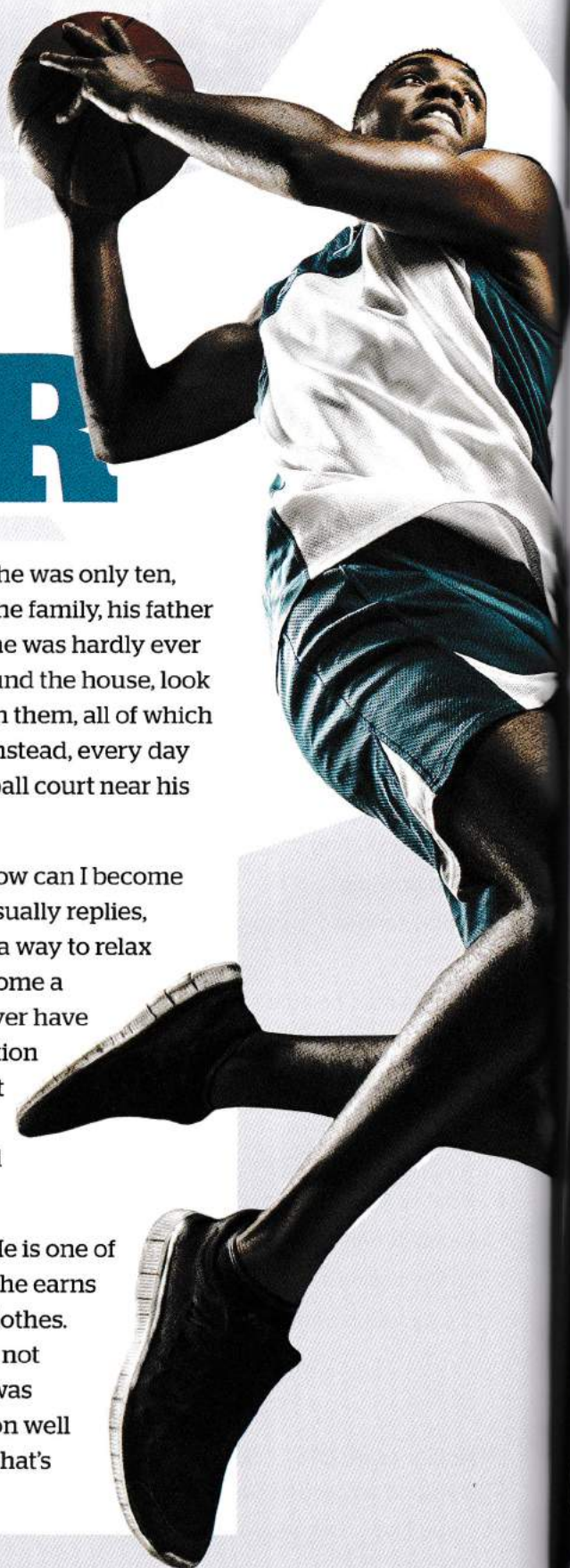
Basketball

STAR

Andy Jameson didn't have a typical childhood. When he was only ten, his mother fell ill and had to stop working; to support the family, his father had to find a second job, which meant, of course, that he was hardly ever at home. As the oldest child, Andy had to help out around the house, look after his younger brothers and do their homework with them, all of which left him little time to go out and play with his friends. Instead, every day after his father came home, he would go to the basketball court near his house for an hour or two and practise his skills alone.

Today, one of the questions Andy gets asked a lot is, 'How can I become a professional basketball player like you?' To this, he usually replies, 'Practise.' He says that playing basketball every day as a way to relax and deal with stress was the training he needed to become a talented player. Without that, he believes he would never have won a place in his school team, nor attracted the attention of Thomas Brayden, coach of one of the country's most popular professional teams, who—after seeing him score the winning points in one match—recommended that Andy come for a try-out.

Andy's life today is nothing like that of his childhood. He is one of the highest-paid basketball players in the country, and he earns a lot of extra money doing advertisements for sports clothes. Despite this, those who work with him say success has not changed him. 'He has remained the same nice guy he was when he first came,' says Coach Brayden, 'and he gets on well with his teammates both on and off the court. For me, that's the greatest achievement of all.'





1. What is the writer doing in this text?
 - A. describing how Andy made it as a professional player
 - B. arguing the importance of encouraging children to play sport
 - C. showing how success has improved Andy's life
 - D. explaining how Andy became so good at basketball

2. Why did Andy have to help his brothers with schoolwork?
 - A. They couldn't concentrate at school.
 - B. He was the only family member who could help them.
 - C. Their mum was too busy to help them.
 - D. They had health problems.

3. How did Andy end up playing for a national team?
 - A. Their coach saw him play for his school team.
 - B. His school team beat a professional team.
 - C. Andy's school coach recommended him to them.
 - D. He scored the winning points against his school team.

4. What does Coach Brayden believe?
 - A. Andy is the most talented player in the team.
 - B. Andy's success has not changed him as a person.
 - C. Andy sometimes has problems with his teammates.
 - D. Andy's past has made him try harder to achieve his goals.

5. What might Andy say about his life?
 - A. Coach Brayden helps him remember to be a nice guy.
 - B. He realised early on that money is the most important thing in life.
 - C. He feels lucky he was discovered at a young age and made a lot of money.
 - D. His way of dealing with his difficult childhood led him to where he is today.



B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Fiction Comes to Life

Flying broomsticks disappearing referees, magic spells and Quaffles... it could only be Quidditch, the sport of witches and wizards in the magical world of J K Rowling's Harry Potter novels. Fast and dangerous, Quidditch is played by two teams of seven players (1) _____, though they are sometimes knocked to the ground by another player or a magic spell cast by one of the spectators. The aim is to score points (2) _____, the Quaffle, through hoops. So, what are the rules of play? If you think it's something (3) _____, think again. Firstly, there are three goal posts at either end of the Quidditch pitch and there are four balls. Confused? Well, the Quaffle is used to score points, the two Bludgers are hit by players called Beaters and are the most dangerous balls, and the Golden Snitch is a tiny magic ball with wings (originally a real bird, until their use was banned from the game). The match ends when a Seeker catches the Golden Snitch, gaining 150 points for their team and usually winning the match. Sounds simple enough, doesn't it? Well, it's not. You see, there are 700 ways of getting a foul, so the referee really needs to be on his or her guard.

Now, (4) _____, Quidditch might seem the least likely fictional sport to be played in real life, but Muggle Quidditch has taken off on student campuses, only a little closer to the ground. The rules of Muggle Quidditch are close to the Quidditch of the Harry Potter novels. The players even sit on broomsticks—it's just that instead of flying, they run around with the broom between their legs. (It's obviously not a sport for someone (5) _____.) A volleyball is used for the Quaffle, Bludgers are dodgeballs and the Snitch is a tennis ball at the bottom of a long gold or yellow sock, hanging from the back of a Snitch Runner's shorts (6) _____. The sport was created at a college in Vermont in 2005 and is like fictional Quidditch with some rugby, dodgeball, lacrosse, tag and wrestling thrown in. It's a rough game with a lot of tackling. It has gained an enthusiastic global following, but is particularly popular in the US and Canada—and because fanatics of the sport take their fun seriously, there is even a Quidditch World Cup.

- A. by throwing a ball
- B. like an ordinary ball
- C. who fly through the air on broomsticks
- D. who takes themselves too seriously
- E. like football or basketball on broomsticks
- F. after scoring a point
- G. with magic birds and players flying through the air
- H. like a tail

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What do you think of the sports activity described above?
- Can you think of any unusual sports?
- Why do you think people enjoy them?



Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

PRACTICE DOESN'T MAKE PERFECT

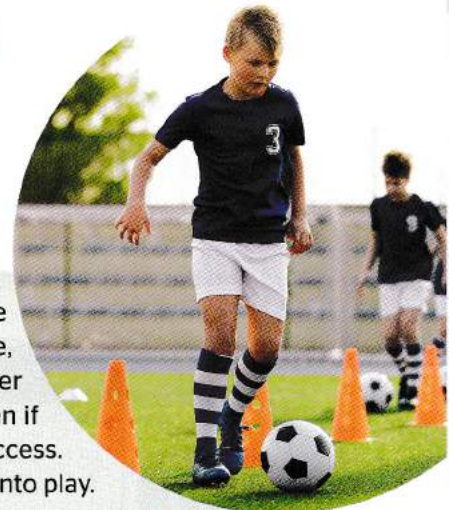
Lately, growing emphasis has been placed on encouraging children to specialise in one particular sport. The idea is that if kids practise a sport from a young age, they will have an increased chance of becoming a professional athlete at a later stage. However, recent research suggests that this approach may be flawed. Even if an athlete were to train hours every day for years, it still would not guarantee success.

(1) _____ is this? Other factors such as motivation and psychological state come into play.

Kids who have done many hours of intensive training in a single sport risk injury and burnout.

That's not exactly good news for young athletes, is (2) _____? What's more, by the age of twelve or thirteen, they may start to lose interest—and (3) _____ could be worse than lack of enthusiasm in sports?

Studies show that as specialisation increases, satisfaction often drops, increasing the risk of burnout. So, parents need to remember that they have to allow children more time for unstructured play and offer (4) _____ the chance to experience a variety of activities. (5) _____ do you think is more important for kids: playing for fun, or carrying on in order not to disappoint Mum and Dad?



1. A. Who
2. A. it
3. A. where
4. A. them
5. A. Why

- B. Where
- B. this
- B. what
- B. them to
- B. Where

- C. How much
- C. that
- C. how
- C. to them
- C. What

- D. Why
- D. he
- D. that
- D. for them
- D. Who



Make karate an Olympic sport

Karate is one of the world's most popular martial arts. Yet, unlike other (6) _____ sports, it is not part of the Olympics. The World Karate Federation has been trying for years to get it recognised as an Olympic (7) _____, but so far it has not succeeded. The International Olympic Committee announced that breakdancing, sport climbing, surfing and skateboarding would be included in the 2024 Olympics, which will be (8) _____ in Paris; karate would not. In the past it was argued that, because there are so many different styles of karate, there weren't enough common rules for (9) _____ to judge a competition fairly at the Olympic level. This is no longer true. Moreover, karate is a sport which is (10) _____ by tens of millions of men and women of all ages around the world who feel that it deserves to be Olympic!

6. A. wrestling
7. A. tournament
8. A. celebrated
9. A. referees
10. A. organised

- B. combat
- B. championship
- B. won
- B. coaches
- B. practised

- C. extreme
- C. match
- C. held
- C. experts
- C. taken

- D. team
- D. event
- D. scored
- D. professionals
- D. played

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever had a sports accident? If yes, what happened and what tips would you give someone doing the same sports activity? If no, what do you think helped you avoid injury?
- How could sharing your experiences and giving tips benefit others?

A Read the email below and answer the questions that follow.

J

Jeff

From: Jeff

To: Mark

Dear Mark,

Thank you for your last email. I'm glad you're doing well at tennis. I'm not feeling so well; in fact, I'm writing to you while lying in bed with a broken leg!

Do you remember when I first told you about parkour? Well, you know I've been practising it for quite some time now and I've always managed to avoid a serious injury—until last week, that is. Thinking about my accident makes me feel very disappointed with myself as I should have known better. When it comes to parkour, you have to follow some rules. The one that I overlooked was the one that says that you have to get enough rest and give your body time to recover. You see, I had sprained my ankle but was eager to get back to training. Initially, I ignored the pain, but it wasn't long before I lost my balance and landed at the bottom of a flight of stairs. In sports like parkour you must know your limits and never train when you have an injury. Now, all I can do is make sure the bone heals properly, so it may be several months before I even try parkour again... if I do at all.

That's all for now. Please write soon.

Your friend,

Jeff



1. What kind of accident did Mark have?
2. How does he feel about what happened to him?
3. What didn't he do that he should have done?
4. How did he injure himself?

B The email below has several mistakes, which have been underlined and marked using the correction code in the box below. Read it and correct the mistakes.



Claire

From: Claire

To: Steve

Hi Steve!

How are you? Let me tell you what happened to me here in Cape Town. The news isn't good, as I had a life-threatening experience a couple of days before and it took me a while to get over the shock. I'm embarrassed to say that I actually nearly drowned. You are most probably wondering how I managed to do that, given that I am the professional swimmer. Well, I found in the hard way that swimming in a pool and swimming in the ocean are two totally different things. While taking a stroll, I found myself on the beach and decided ^ take a swim.

I dive in only to find that the underwater current was so strong and the waves so big that I was in no position to get out. After struggling for quiet a while and being carried out to much deeper water, I was rescued by a fishing boat. I think that if I werent such a strong swimmer, I most probably would have drowned. So, remember, when visit another country, look for the coloured flags which tell you where is it safest to swim, and always choose to swim where there is a lifeguard on duty.

I'm feeling stronger and more confident every day, and I certainly learnt my lesson!

That's all for now. Write back soon.

Yours,

Claire

Correction Code

WW: wrong word

WO: word order

Pr: preposition

Gr: grammar

T: tense

A: article

Sp: spelling

P: punctuation

^: something missing

C Circle the words in bold that complete the sentences.

- A:** Hey, Ronnie. Why didn't you come to school yesterday?
B: I **crashed / sprained** my ankle playing football at the weekend and the doctor told me to rest it for a couple of days.
- A:** We heard about Martha's accident. What happened?
B: Well, her horse got frightened for some reason and threw her off. She **tore / fractured** her wrist when she fell on her hand and will have to have it in plaster for a month.
- A:** Are you alright? You look as if you're in pain.
B: Yeah. I **strained / cut** a muscle in my lower back yesterday playing basketball and now it hurts no matter what I do.
- A:** So, are you going to come running with me tomorrow morning?
B: I'm afraid not. I **tore / broke** a muscle behind my knee. My leg is now very bruised and swollen and I have difficulty bending it. The doctor says I won't be able to do anything until the muscle heals.
- A:** What did the doctor say?
B: Fortunately, there were no broken bones. It turns out I **dislocated / bruised** my arm and he just needed to put it back into place.
- A:** So, when are you taking the plaster off?
B: My leg is **broken / sprained** in two places so I'll need to keep it on for at least a month.

D You recently had an accident while doing your favourite sport, and want to write an email to an English friend telling him/her about it.

Write an email to your English friend in which you say

- what the accident was and when it happened
- how the accident happened and how you feel
- what this experience taught you.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses, or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Revision 6–10

A Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- I got a 20% _____ on this pair of jeans because I am a regular customer at their shop.
A. special offer B. sale C. discount
- We should _____ a tip for the waiter.
A. pay B. give C. leave
- Why is our bus _____ late? The timetable says it should have been here already!
A. running B. coming C. travelling
- Don't go over the speed limit when you drive. You might _____ an accident.
A. collide B. cause C. hit
- He will definitely win the next chess _____ because they say that he is the next Garry Kasparov.
A. race B. contest C. tournament
- _____ at the Olympic Games were from many countries.
A. Spectators B. Audiences C. Medallists
- Jane loves reading books. She's such a _____.
A. reader B. newsreader C. bookworm
- There were more tourists during this holiday _____ than ever before!
A. resort B. reservation C. season
- The dressing room is busy with actors getting ready for their _____.
A. rehearsal B. stage fright C. backstage
- The album he _____ in May contains music from the last ten years of his career.
A. composed B. sang C. released

B Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- Would you like _____ chocolate?
A. some B. any C. no
- A: _____ we help Bill prepare for his test on Monday?
B: Yes, let's help him.
A. Are B. Will C. Shall
- A: Where's Mum?
B: She _____ to the supermarket. She'll be back soon.
A. 's gone B. 'd gone C. been
- I haven't seen any of my old classmates _____ I left school ten years ago.
A. when B. for C. since
- My brother is searching for a gym _____ also has a swimming pool.
A. that B. who C. where
- A: _____ you _____ this car for a long time?
B: Yes, for 20 years and it still works just fine!
A. Have... had B. Have... been got C. Did... have
- Congratulations! Your marks have improved. You did very _____ on the test.
A. good B. well C. better
- At this time tomorrow, Sandra _____ by the beach.
A. will relax B. is relaxing C. will be relaxing
- I think it's time for a break now because we _____ all day and are very tired.
A. will be working B. have been working C. are working
- I can't stand _____ all alone in the house at night.
A. being B. to be C. been

C Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Food Made Fun

Most children around the world have heard their parents tell them not to play with their food. (1) _____ parents, though, do just that.

That's what a father in England did when his son was being difficult one day. He prepared him a sandwich that looked like a space rocket and included vegetables his son (2) _____. He then went on (3) _____ other cartoon- and animal-themed sandwiches—SpongeBob, crocodiles, giraffes—and posted pictures of them online. A publisher ended up noticing the imaginative creations and offered him a contract to write a book that would include recipes for party food.

On the other side of the Atlantic, a New York artist (4) _____ a sandwich that looked like a dinosaur as part of a project while she was at design college. Her imagination took over after that and today she creates delicious sandwiches that look like monsters, aliens and popular TV characters. (5) _____ makes her business unique? She takes photos of her creations and prints them on T-shirts.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. Someone | B. Somebody | C. Some | D. Somewhere |
| 2. A. don't normally eat | B. hasn't normally eaten | C. not normally ate | D. doesn't normally eat |
| 3. A. to create | B. create | C. creating | D. created |
| 4. A. makes | B. has made | C. has been making | D. made |
| 5. A. Which | B. What | C. Why | D. How |

Bike Tourism

Bike tourism is growing fast in the United States. It is all about riding long distances and stopping along the way to enjoy both natural areas and historic (6) _____.

People choose a route and (7) _____ reservations to stay at guesthouses or campsites along the way. There are also companies that specialise in providing support for bicycle tourists, including transporting their luggage to their next (8) _____.

The TransAmerica Bicycle Trail is a classic route across the country. You can (9) _____ it for 4,218 miles, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Oceans, through mountains, deserts, towns and farms. Cycling the TABT takes about three months and for many it is the (10) _____ of a lifetime. As you can imagine, being in good shape is a must—parts of the route climb to as high as 11,000 feet.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 6. A. ideas | B. sites | C. scenes | D. views |
| 7. A. make | B. do | C. have | D. catch |
| 8. A. port | B. station | C. destination | D. step |
| 9. A. travel | B. tour | C. follow | D. hitchhike |
| 10. A. transport | B. journey | C. cruise | D. voyage |

Unit 11: Health

Key Vocabulary 32

Health problems and symptoms

Проблеми зі здоров'ям та симптоми

backache біль в спині
 catch a cold застудитися
 (cold/flu) symptoms симптоми (грипу/застуди)
 cough / have a bad cough кашляти / мати поганий кашель
 earache / stomach ache біль у вусі/біль у шлунку
 faint знепритомніти
 feel bad почуватись погано
 get food poisoning отруїтись
 have a high temperature мати високу температуру
 have a rash мати висип
 have a runny nose нежить
 have breathing problems мати проблеми з диханням
 He was unconscious for five days. Він був непритомний 5 днів.
 He's been sneezing and coughing all day – he must be coming down with something. Він чхає та кашляє весь день, мабуть, він захворіє.
 He's got a heart condition. У нього хворе серце.
 high/low blood pressure високий/низький кров'яний тиск
 I feel dizzy. У мене запаморочення.
 I have a sore throat. У мене хворе горло.
 I've got a pain in my chest. У мене болить в грудях.
 I've got toothache / a headache. У мене болить зуб / У мене головний біль.
 pale блідий
 sneeze чхати
 take sb's blood pressure / temperature вимірювати тиск/температуру

Healthy lifestyle Здоровий спосіб життя

avoid stress уникати стресу
 eat healthy food споживати здорову їжу
 have a healthy appetite мати здоровий апетит
 keep fit підтримувати гарну фізичну форму
 vitamins вітаміни

Diseases and treatment Хвороби та лікування

allergy алергія
 (common) cold (звичайна) простуда
 alternative/conventional medicine нетрадиційна/традиційна медицина
 be operated on бути прооперованим
 cancer рак
 cough syrup сироп проти кашлю
 disease хвороба
 drops краплі
 flu грип
 give sb a shot / give sb an injection робити укол комусь
 have an injection зробити укол (собі)
 have an operation прооперуватись
 He had his chest X-rayed last year. Йому робили рентген грудної клітини минулого року.
 heart attack серцевий напад
 I need something for a cough. Мені потрібне щось проти кашлю.
 illness/sickness хвороба
 infection інфекція
 mental disease психічні захворювання
 outbreak of flu спалах (епідемія) грипу
 painkillers знеболювальні засоби

pneumonia пневмонія
 side effects побічні ефекти
 stroke інсульт
 suffer a heart attack переносити серцевий напад
 treatment лікування
 virus вірус

Disability Інвалідність

blind сліпий
 deaf глухий
 disabled people люди з обмеженими можливостями
 physical/mental disability люди з фізичними та розумовими вадами
 special facilities for disabled people спеціальне обладнання для людей з інвалідністю
 wheelchair ramp пандус для інвалідного візку

Addictions Залежність

addict наркоман, людина, яка має залежність від чогось
 addiction залежність
 be addicted to бути залежним від
 become/get addicted to пристраситися до
 cut down on smoking / eating sweets кинути палити/зменшити вживання солодоців
 dose/overdose доза/передозування
 gambling азартні ігри
 get into / give up a habit увійти у звичку/кинути звичку
 have a drink / get drunk випити/сп'яніти
 lead to addiction призводить до залежності
 take/use drugs вживати наркотики

At the doctor's / In hospital

У лікаря/В лікарні

Are you taking any other medicine?
Ви приймаєте інші ліки?

Breathe deeply. Дихайте глибоко.

be referred / refer to hospital бути
направленим до лікарні/
звертатися в лікарню

consult/see a specialist
консультуватись з лікарем

Cough, please. Покашляйте, будь
ласка.

doctor's orders призначення
лікарем (медичних препаратів)

emergency нещасний випадок,
надзвичайна ситуація

examine проводити огляд

general practitioner (a GP) / family
doctor лікар сімейної медицини

go for / have a check-up
проходити медичний огляд

go to see / visit a doctor
звертатися до лікаря

have a blood test зробити аналіз
крові

How long have you been feeling
like this? Як довго ви себе так
почуваєте?

I have an appointment at the
doctor's tomorrow. Я завтра
записаний до лікаря.

I'm allergic to penicillin. У мене
алергія на пеніцилін.

I'm going to prescribe a course of
antibiotics. Я випишу вам курс
антибіотиків.

I've been taking antibiotics for 10
days and it hasn't got any better.
Я приймаю антибіотики 10 днів,
але стан не покращується.

Is it catching? Це заразно?

make a diagnosis ставити діагноз

make out / give a prescription
виписати рецепт

medicine/medication ліки

patient пацієнт

pill пігулка

Please undress to the waist. Будь
ласка, роздягніться до пояса.

sick leave лікарняний

(doctor's) surgery кабінет лікаря /
операційна

stay in bed залишатись в ліжку

Take one pill every 8 hours.

Приймайте 1 таблетку кожні 8
годин.

waiting room приймальня

What's wrong with you? / What's the
problem? На що скаржитесь?

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

be taken ill / fall ill with захворіти/
хворіти на

call an ambulance викликати
карету швидкої допомоги

come down with злягти від

come round оговтатись

contagious/infectious disease
заразне / інфекційне
захворювання

die of/from sth вмирати від

fatal disease смертельна
хвороба

feel well/unwell почуватись
добре/зле

filling пломба

first-aid kit аптечка

first-aid course курси першої
медичної допомоги

first-aid post пункт надання
першої медичної допомоги

get over (the flu) одужувати після
(грипу)

go on a diet бути на дієті

have plastic surgery on робити
пластичну операцію

health здоров'я

health centre медичний центр

health clinic клініка

health insurance медичне
страхування

health problems проблеми зі
здоров'ям

health service/care медична
система

hypochondriac людина, яка
страждає від іпохондрії

lose weight втрачати вагу

National Health System
Національна система охорони
здоров'я

operating theatre операційна

overweight надлишкова вага

pull through вилікуватись

put on / gain weight набирати
вагу

recover from an illness
вилікуватись

spread розповсюджуватись

suffer from страждати від /

хворіти на

surgery операція

take care of / look after

піклуватись про когось

vaccine for/against sth щеплення
проти (певного) захворювання

vaccinate against зробити
щеплення проти

vaccination вакцинація

ward палата

A Who do the following words/phrases refer to: a patient (P), a doctor (D) or both (B)? Write P, D or B.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. feel dizzy _____ | 5. surgery _____ | 9. make a diagnosis _____ |
| 2. refer to a specialist _____ | 6. get treatment _____ | 10. stay in bed _____ |
| 3. ward _____ | 7. recover _____ | |
| 4. examine _____ | 8. give a prescription _____ | |

B Read these sentences carefully. Put a tick (✓) if the sentence is correct. If it is incorrect, put a cross (X) and correct the mistake.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Robert didn't feel well yesterday so he did an appointment with his family doctor. ☐ | 4. It seems that I'm coming up with something because I'm not feeling very well. ☐ |
| 2. I went to the doctor yesterday and he prescribed a course of antibiotics. ☐ | 5. Smoking 20 cigarettes a day drives to a serious addiction. ☐ |
| 3. Her mother had an operation six hours ago, but she hasn't come round yet. ☐ | 6. The doctor advised me to make a blood test to make sure I'm not allergic to my cat. ☐ |

C Choose a correct preposition from the box to complete the phrases. There are some extra prepositions which you will not need to use.

for on from with into down to onto

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. recover _____ an illness | 3. cut down _____ smoking | 5. lie _____, please |
| 2. be addicted _____ an activity | 4. get _____ a habit | 6. go _____ a check-up |

D Circle the correct words.

Julia had never had any (1) **health / healthy** problems, but that day she got up feeling a bit dizzy. She was also very (2) **poor / weak**, and although she had a terrible headache, she drove to work. As usual, she parked her car in front of the office. As she was getting out of her car, she (3) **came round / fainted**. Luckily for her, Bob, her colleague, saw her and gave her first (4) **aid / help**. He then called an ambulance and Julia was (5) **taken / brought** to hospital. She was given some (6) **painkillers / sleeping pills**, which soothed the pain and provided temporary (7) **reduction / relief**, but in fact she wasn't feeling any better.

A week later, she was sent to a health clinic where she had some tests. Fortunately, nothing was wrong. However, the doctor told her that her general (8) **position / state** of health was very poor. He advised her to stay at home and not go to work for a week. He also suggested that she should change her lifestyle, relax and not worry so much.

E Work in pairs and act out a dialogue which takes place in a surgery.

Student A

You are a hypochondriac. Prepare a list of symptoms you have had for the last few months. Insist that your doctor should refer you to different specialists to make sure you are all right. Be nice... but effective!

Student B

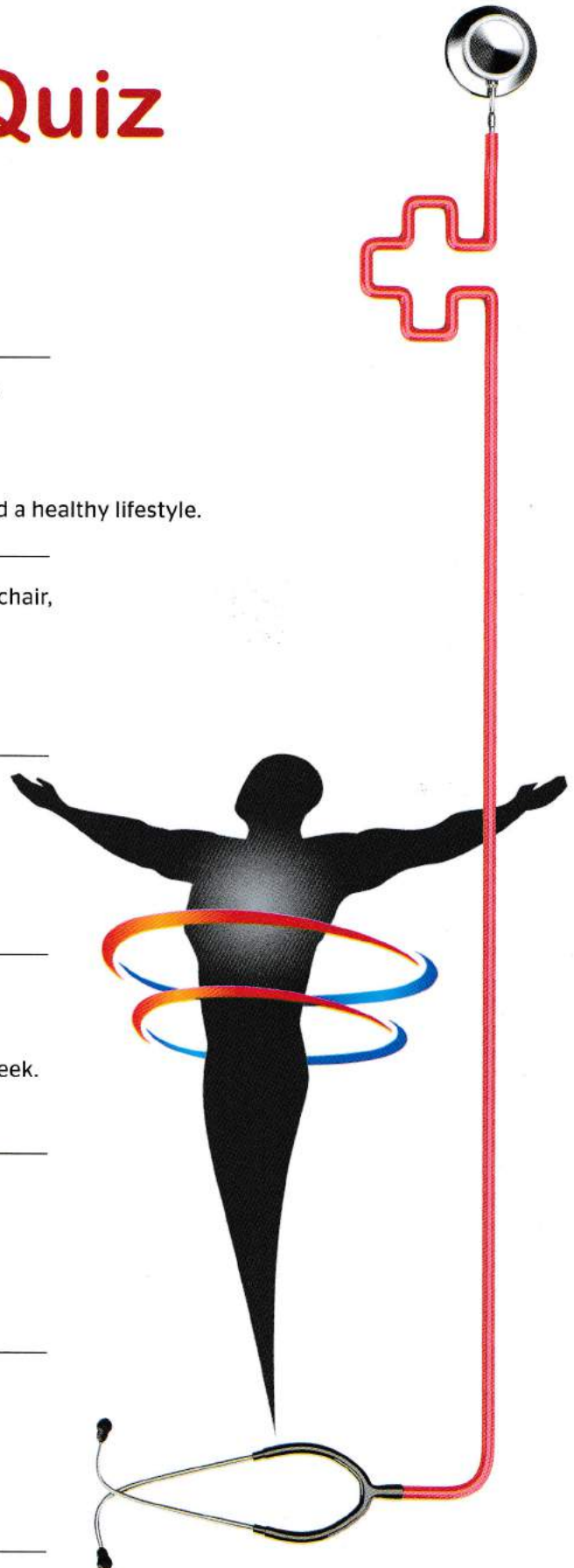
You are a doctor in a local surgery. One day, one of your new patients visits you. The patient looks healthy but demands to have all manner of tests done in order to make sure that he or she is all right. Persuade the patient that the tests are absolutely unnecessary.

When you have finished, act out your dialogue in front of the class. Be imaginative!

F Do the quiz on health-related topics below in pairs. Ask your partner the questions and write down his or her answers. Exchange roles.

Health Quiz

1. How often do you get the flu?
 - A. once or twice a year
 - B. every month
 - C. occasionally
 - D. other _____
2. What is your attitude towards leading a healthy lifestyle?
 - A. I don't really care about it.
 - B. I'm too young to think about it.
 - C. Health is the most important thing in life so I try to lead a healthy lifestyle.
 - D. other _____
3. I have noticed that when people see someone in a wheelchair,
 - A. they are uncaring.
 - B. they don't treat them as equals.
 - C. they are kind.
 - D. other _____
4. You witness a serious car accident. What do you do?
 - A. call an ambulance and do nothing
 - B. don't stop as you are in a hurry
 - C. give first aid immediately
 - D. other _____
5. Physical Education in school, in your opinion,
 - A. should be optional because it's too stressful.
 - B. is good because you should exercise at least twice a week.
 - C. should be obligatory but only once a week.
 - D. other _____
6. What do you do when you have a headache?
 - A. take a painkiller
 - B. try not to think about it
 - C. make an appointment to see the doctor
 - D. other _____
7. When you feel you are catching a cold, you
 - A. take medication
 - B. wait until it goes away
 - C. stay in bed for a few days
 - D. other _____



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you go to the gym? Why? / Why not?
- What can people do to keep fit and stay healthy?
- What is first aid? What is the purpose of it?



A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.

33

	T	F
1. Both Peggy and Jeremy have problems with cholesterol.		
2. Peggy used to have longer training sessions in the past.		
3. Peggy didn't have any problems with weight.		
4. Jeremy hasn't been to the gym before.		
5. Peggy and one of the trainers are relatives.		



B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What is true of Dr Robert Moore?
 - A. This is his first guest appearance on the radio programme.
 - B. He regularly gives advice on the radio programme.
 - C. He previously gave advice on what to do after an accident.

2. What is the purpose of first aid?
 - A. to take care of the patient yourself
 - B. to avoid calling a doctor
 - C. to make sure the victim is safe until help arrives

3. What procedure is recommended to stop bleeding?
 - A. washing the wound carefully with some water
 - B. changing the bandage often if bleeding continues
 - C. raising the bleeding part and bandaging it

4. What are second-degree burns characterised by?
 - A. the red colour of the skin
 - B. severe damaging of the skin
 - C. blistering of the skin

5. In which cases can you use cold water to treat a burn?
 - A. first- and second-degree burns
 - B. third-degree burns
 - C. second- and third-degree burns



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Should students be taught first aid? Why? / Why not?
- Do people in Ukraine take care of their health?
- Do you think you lead a healthy lifestyle? Why? / Why not?



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What activities do you think can improve our health?
- What do you do when you are ill?
- How do you feel when you visit a doctor or a dentist?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Suggested activities for keeping fit

**1****Meditation**

Suffering from stress? Is having too many things on your mind affecting your concentration? Come to one of our meditation classes and we will help you have a richer and deeper experience of life. You will develop calmness and peace of mind, and reduce any feelings of stress.

**2****Indoor Cycling**

Also known as 'spinning', this is a great workout done on stationary bikes that increases endurance and works the lower body. So if you don't want to bother with the weather, want to avoid physical risk, or need a little extra motivation from an instructor, come to one of our classes.

**3****Aerobics**

Have you been under a lot of pressure lately? Well, there is nothing like working up a little sweat to make you forget all about your problems. We offer a range of aerobics classes to suit everyone's needs and abilities.



Whether you are setting foot on a boat for the first time or planning a trip along the coast, we will help you achieve your goals. We offer the best sailing lessons in the country both for beginners and more advanced levels. Because we realise that most people nowadays are very busy, we have also designed a number of weekend sailing lessons.



Our scuba diving classes not only teach you how to be a diver, they also allow you to fully enjoy your underwater adventures in a safe and comfortable way. You do not even have to buy any study materials or equipment.



At our riding academy we teach children and adults how to ride. What better way to explore the great outdoors at the weekend than on a horse! Set off on one of the many trails on your own or accompanied by one of our guides. We provide all the equipment you need.

- A. take up a high-energy activity to beat stress
- B. explore the ocean depths
- C. exercise but is worried about getting injured
- D. improve their skills and become professional
- E. relax and find some inner peace
- F. take up an activity which is offered for free
- G. take up an activity that combines their love for animals and the countryside
- H. take up an outdoor activity on weekdays

□ □ □ □ □ □ □ □

B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.



The Sweet and the Sour of Sugar



In the past, people had a good idea of how much sugar was entering their bodies because they baked their own bread and cakes, and squeezed their own juice. It was also easier to recognise sugar as an ingredient because it didn't have so many different names. These days, we have to watch out for words like glucose, corn syrup, dextrose, fructose, sucrose, maltose and all sorts of other names. In fact, any ingredient (1) _____ is probably sugar of one kind or another. With so many names, it isn't surprising that people get confused about how much sugar their sweet tooth is really getting.

Often, the food we eat contains 'empty' calories because of (2) _____. Empty calories come from either fats or sugars, which add calories but few or no nutrients to the food. Fats and sugars tend to make food more appealing, and the more of them you eat, the more addicted you become. An overdose of 'bad' sugars in our body (3) _____ and even heart disease. In some cases, sugar can cause diabetes, which can lead to other conditions like blindness. Apart from health complications, (4) _____ can cause problems in the way we act. Children are especially at risk because too much sugar can cause behavioural problems, a lack of concentration and subsequent learning difficulties.

All the bad news about sugar doesn't mean that people should avoid it altogether or replace it with artificial sweeteners, like aspartame, that are created in a laboratory. Although these have fewer calories, they can also cause problems and (5) _____ of diseases. Rather than avoid sugar altogether, we should replace sweets with fruit. It is a great source of natural sugar and also (6) _____ the body against viruses. So, if you are looking to satisfy your sweet tooth, choose something that does that but also provides a bit of nutrition at the same time.

- A. high amounts of sugar entering our blood
- B. are linked to all sorts
- C. that ends with 'ose' or the word 'syrup'
- D. the amount of sugar hidden in it
- E. can lead to weight gain, high blood pressure
- F. that has 'empty' calories without any nutritional value
- G. can be the reason
- H. contains vitamins that help protect

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do young people need to be better informed about health issues? Why? / Why not?
- How can they be persuaded to adopt a healthier lifestyle?



Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Break your fast

If someone were asked to choose between having an extra half hour in bed and getting up to have breakfast, he or she (1) _____ most likely choose to get more sleep. In fact, that is exactly what a survey on food habits says most people do.

According to last year's findings, most of the men that took part in the survey said that they very often leave their first meal of the day till lunch even though they wish they (2) _____, and almost half of the parents reported that preparing the family breakfast is the most stressful time of their day. Although we all know that breakfast gives us the energy we need to kickstart our system for the day, lifestyle habits ultimately influence our decisions. If we feel tired or stressed in the morning, breakfast (3) _____ one of the first things to go.

In the morning rush, it can be all too easy to go without breakfast, but this means that we are not taking care of ourselves. Doctors say that if you wish to reduce the risk of developing high blood pressure, obesity or heart disease, you should (4) _____ breakfast! So it's time we all (5) _____ an effort to have breakfast every day.



- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| 1. A. would | B. may | C. is going to | D. will be |
| 2. A. don't | B. hadn't | C. won't | D. didn't |
| 3. A. was | B. is | C. would be | D. were |
| 4. A. never skip | B. not have skipped | C. have never skipped | D. skip |
| 5. A. make | B. have made | C. are making | D. made |



Vaccines

Vaccines are among the most effective (6) _____ medical treatments available. Vaccines contain very small amounts or weakened versions of the disease they were developed to combat. They work by causing the body's (7) _____

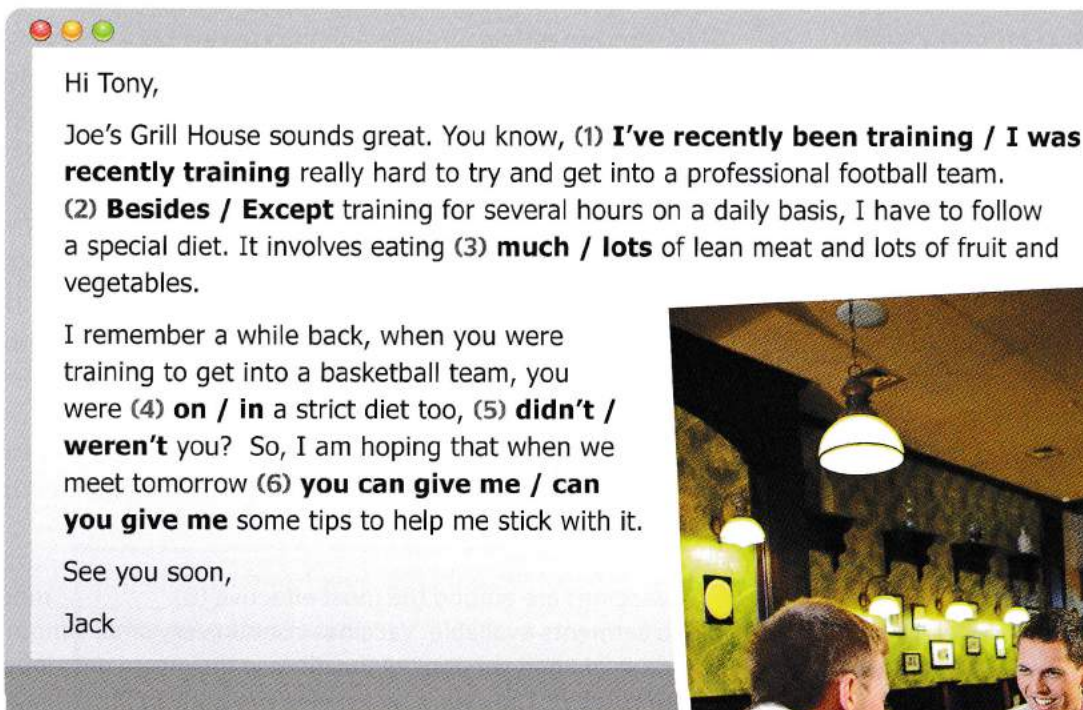
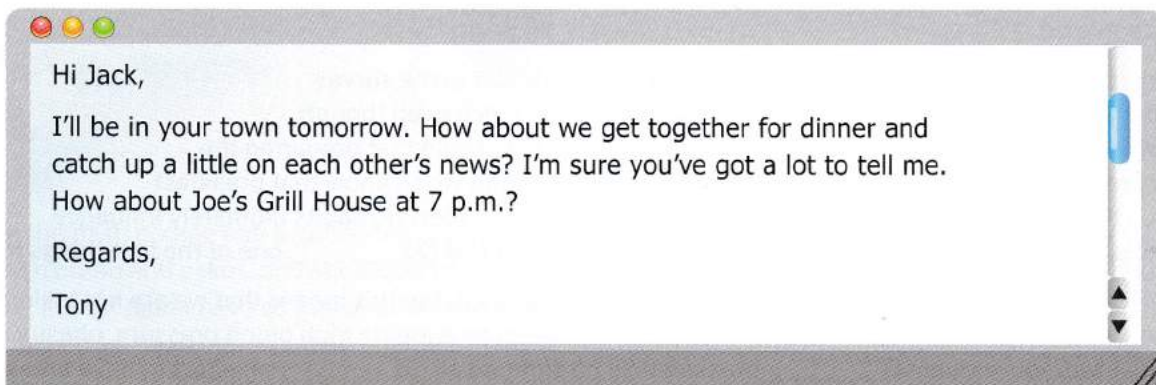
system to develop protection against the disease. When a large enough percentage of the population has been vaccinated, herd immunity is achieved, effectively stopping the (8) _____ of the disease. The first vaccine ever produced was created for smallpox in 1796. That disease, which was highly (9) _____, had an extremely high fatality rate, killing between 20 and 60 per cent of adults and over 80% of children who were (10) _____. It is estimated that smallpox had killed between 300 and 500 million people in the twentieth century alone by the time it was finally wiped out in the late 1970s.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 6. A. preventative | B. accidental | C. alternative | D. fatal |
| 7. A. infection | B. recovery | C. immune | D. cure |
| 8. A. distress | B. operation | C. injection | D. spread |
| 9. A. conventional | B. contagious | C. recoverable | D. receptive |
| 10. A. cured | B. convinced | C. refused | D. infected |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever been put on a special diet? If yes, why? If no, what reasons can you think of for people to be on a special diet?
- Apart from going on a special diet, what other ways are there of leading a healthy lifestyle?

A Read Tony's and Jack's emails and circle the correct words/phrases.



B Read Jack's email again. Which of the following does Jack do?

1. He accepts Tony's invitation.
2. He gives Tony some advice.
3. He makes arrangements for the dinner.
4. He gives Tony some news.
5. He mentions what his diet includes.
6. He mentions that he needs Tony's advice.
7. He suggests that Tony should go on a diet.

C The sentences in the paragraphs below have been jumbled. Put the sentences in each paragraph in the correct order (1-4).

Hi Sue,

(A) I hope you are well.

- ☐ No, really, it's true!
- ☐ You know how we talked about going to *Gina's* so you could get vegetarian food and I could eat meat, well guess what?
- ☐ I still eat fish, eggs and milk products but I haven't eaten red meat and poultry for over a month!
- ☐ I've become a vegetarian too!

(B) ☐ So, I cut out red meat and poultry altogether.

- ☐ Well, I've had some health problems and my doctor said I need to cut down on meat.
- ☐ You are most probably wondering how a meat lover like myself decided to go vegetarian.
- ☐ Now, you know pretty well that I don't do things by halves.

(C) ☐ Anyway, that's all for now.

- ☐ So, if you don't mind, we can go to that favourite vegetarian place of yours - *Olive*, is that the name?
- ☐ When we meet you can also give me some advice on how to keep healthy on a vegetarian diet.
- ☐ That way I can try some of those dishes you've been going on about!

See you soon,

Jane

D You have recently put on some weight. You came across an advertisement for a diet and decided to follow it. You want your friend Andrew, who is a health expert, to give you some advice.

Write an email to Andrew in which you

- explain why you are writing
- say when and why you started the diet
- ask for advice.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Unit 12: Science and technology

Key Vocabulary 35

Research and Science

Дослідження та наука

achieve досягти чогось
achievement досягнення
advanced/modern technology провідна/сучасна техніка
analyse аналізувати
argument for/against sth докази за/проти
branch/field of technology галузь/сфера технологій
breakthrough прорив
collect data збирати дані
design (v) розробляти
do/conduct / carry out an experiment проводити експеримент
do / carry out / conduct research on (ways of treating cancer) проводити дослідження (способи лікування раку)
digital electronics техніка/цифрова електроніка
do research into sth робити дослідження в галузі
discover виявляти, відкривати
invent винаходити
invention винахід
invention of the telephone/printing/paper винахід телефону/друку/паперу
lab/laboratory лабораторія
laboratory technician лаборант
make a discovery зробити відкриття
manual інструкція
microchip мікрочип
microscope мікроскоп
new technologies нові технології
one must assume that маємо визнати що
proof/evidence докази
prove доводити щось
publish a study опублікувати дослідження
research paper наукова праця
research project дослідницький проєкт
research work дослідницька робота
results результати
robot робот
sample зразок
satellite супутник
(scientific) research наукове дослідження

(scientific) discovery наукове відкриття
(scientific) approach науковий підхід
(scientific) theory теорія (наукова)
scientific knowledge наукові знання
scientist/discoverer/inventor/researcher вчений/першовідкривач/винахідник/дослідник
scientifically-based information науково обґрунтована інформація
scientifically proven науково доведено
study вчення/дослідження
technological progress технічний прогрес
technological revolution технічна революція
telecommunications телекомунікації
test проба/тест

Technological devices Технічні прилади

3D cinema 3D кінотеатр
3D printing 3D друк
bluetooth блютуз
Blu-ray disc диск у форматі Blu-ray
button кнопка
cable кабель
charger зарядний пристрій
copier копіювальний пристрій
cordless telephone безпроводний телефон
digital camera цифрова камера
display images показувати зображення
earphones навушники
fax факс
flat screen TV телевізор з плоским екраном
gadget пристрій
GPS GPS пристрій для визначення місцеперебування
graphics графіка
high-definition TV телебачення високої чіткості
iPod iPod
MP3/MP4 DVD player програвач MP3/MP4
photocopier фотокопіювальний пристрій
plasma TV плазмовий телевізор
plug in підключатись до
remote control пульт управління
(portable) TV портативний телевізор

video camera / camcorder відеокамера
waterproof watch водонепроникний годинник

Computer Комп'ютер

access a website/file мати доступ до вебсторінки/файлу
antivirus/antispam/antispyware program антивірусна програма/програма проти спаму/антишпигунська програма
application (app) додаток
be out of / within range поза зоною досяжності / в зоні досяжності
browse the web переглядати вебсторінки
burn a CD записати CD
CD (-ROM) / DVD drive CD(-ROM)/DVD привід
chat room чат
check one's email перевіряти пошту
collect data збирати дані
computer program комп'ютерна програма
computer programming програмування
connect to the Internet підключатись до Інтернету
connection з'єднання
copy копіювати
crash зламати
cursor курсор
cut вирізати
database база даних
delete/erase a file видаляти файл
double click подвійний клік
download завантажувати
download/upload a file/data / a program завантажувати файл (на свій пристрій)/завантажувати дані/програму
electronic mail (email) електронна пошта
equipment обладнання
external hard disk зовнішній жорсткий диск
file файл
folder папка
forward an email/link пересилати email/посилання
go online заходити в Інтернет
graphics/sound card відеокарта/звукова карта
graphics графіка

hack (into) зламувати щось
 hard copy паперова копія
 hard disk / hard drive жорсткий диск
 hardware апаратне забезпечення
 insert вставити
 install a program встановлювати програму
 instant messenger чат, миттєвий обмін повідомленнями
 (wireless) keyboard (бездротова) клавіатура
 laptop ноутбук
 load завантажувати
 log on під'єднатися до
 memory stick / USB stick карта пам'яті/флеш-накопичувач
 modem модем
 mouse миша
 mouse pad килимок для миші
 online shopping покупки онлайн
 open/close a file відкривати/закривати файл
 password пароль
 paste вставити
 PC (personal computer) / desktop computer персональний комп'ютер/стаціонарний комп'ютер
 pop-up ads рекламні оголошення, що спливають
 portable портативний
 press a button натискати кнопку
 print друкувати
 (laser) printer лазерний принтер
 printout друк
 properties властивості
 receive spam отримувати спам
 reply відповідати
 run запускати (програму)
 save зберігати
 scanner сканер
 screen екран
 screensaver заставка екрану
 scroll down/up/across прокрутити вниз/вверх/через (весь екран)
 search engine пошукова система
 select обирати
 send an attachment / attach a file надсилати вкладення/додавати файл
 server сервер
 settings налаштування
 software програмне забезпечення
 speakers колонки
 store information зберігати інформацію
 tablet планшет
 technical problems технічні проблеми
 technical knowledge технічні знання
 technical experts технічні експерти
 tower системний блок
 undo анулювати, скасувати
 USB port USB-порт
 user friendly зручний у користуванні
 virus вірус
 webcam вебкамера

website вебсайт
 window вікно
 wireless/Wi-Fi бездротовий/Wi-Fi
 write/type on a computer писати/набирати текст на комп'ютері

Telephone Телефон

answer the phone відповідати на телефон
 answering machine / answerphone автовідповідач
 be out of / within range бути поза зоною/ бути у зоні досяжності
 dial the number набирати номер
 extension розширення номеру
 hands free керування пристроєм без допомоги рук
 Hold on, please. Зачекайте, будь ласка.
 keypad клавіатура на телефоні
 leave a message залишати повідомлення
 make a phone call зателефонувати
 mobile (phone) мобільний телефон
 phone / ring up / call sb телефонувати до когось
 pick up / lift the receiver підіймати слухавку
 put down / replace / hang up the receiver класти слухавку
 receiver/handset слухавка
 recharge/charge the battery заряджати батарею
 ringtone рингтон, мелодія (на телефоні)
 run down / go dead розрядитися (про батарею)
 text a message / send a short message відправляти текстове повідомлення/SMS
 screen екран
 smartphone смартфон

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

access доступ
 accessible via the Internet доступний через Інтернет
 attach a document додавати документ
 attachment додаток, вкладення
 back up зробити резервну копію
 battery-powered/battery-operated працює на батареї
 be on/connected to the Internet бути підключеним до Інтернету
 be down не працювати
 benefit користь
 break down зламатись
 browser програма для перегляду вебсторінок
 chat (on the Internet) чат/спілкуватись в чаті

come in handy for бути в пригоді
 develop розвивати
 development розвиток
 device пристрій
 do without sth обійтись від чогось
 effective ефективний
 engine двигун
 enter the web page відвідувати вебсторінку
 explore досліджувати
 function функція
 get/receive an email отримувати email
 handy практичний
 hang up покласти слухавку
 have access to the Internet мати доступ до Інтернету
 headphones навушники
 improve / make improvements to sth покращувати/робити покращення чогось
 Internet user користувач (Інтернетом)
 inbox вхідні листи
 log in/on увійти в систему/вийти із системи
 mailbox поштова скринька
 take advantage of скористатися чимось
 offline без підключення до Інтернету
 online підключений до Інтернету
 (photo)copy sth копіювати щось
 plug штепсель
 press the button натиснути кнопку
 run down розряджати (про батарею)
 search (for) шукати щось
 search engine пошукова система
 send an email відправляти e-mail
 set up встановлювати
 sign in/out підписуватись/відписуватись
 solution рішення
 socket розетка
 space exploration дослідження космосу
 switch on/off - turn on/off вмикати/вимикати
 telephone/computer network телефонна/комп'ютерна мережа
 update оновлення
 turn up/down вмикати/вимикати
 via/through the Internet через Інтернет
 virtual reality віртуальна реальність
 zoom in/out збільшувати/зменшувати зображення
 My email address is (abcd@efgh.as.pl - said: A-B-C-D at E-F-G-H dot A-S dot P-L). Моя електронна адреса (abcd@efgh.as.pl).
 @ «комерційне ет»

A Choose a, b or c to complete the sentences.

- I have to _____ the battery in my mobile usually once a week.
a. load b. change c. recharge
- Penicillin was _____ by Alexander Fleming.
a. found b. discovered c. invented
- _____ cameras are much more popular than traditional ones.
a. Virtual b. Digital c. Cordless
- It has been scientifically _____ that optimists live longer than pessimists.
a. proven b. based c. improved
- If you want to find some information on the USA, you must _____ the right web page.
a. connect b. click c. enter
- Technical _____ such as printers or copiers make life much easier.
a. devices b. appliances c. software

B Write the words in the box under the correct heading(s). Some of the words can be used more than once.

browser	achievement	handset	range	dial	breakthrough	approach
sample	keypad	properties	study	chat	message	proof
Telephone		Computer/Internet		Science and technology		

C In pairs, discuss how life would be different if...

- there was no TV.
- people communicated via the Internet only.
- every computer crashed at the same time.
- people could travel in space.
- printing had not been invented.

Useful phrases

I think people would...
There would be (no)...
If..., nobody would...
Life on Earth...

D Form collocations by matching the words/phrases 1-8 with a-h.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. carry out | ☐ | a. advantage of |
| 2. recharge | ☐ | b. range |
| 3. take | ☐ | c. a number |
| 4. pick up | ☐ | d. an experiment |
| 5. press | ☐ | e. a battery |
| 6. make | ☐ | f. the receiver |
| 7. be out of | ☐ | g. a discovery |
| 8. dial | ☐ | h. a button |

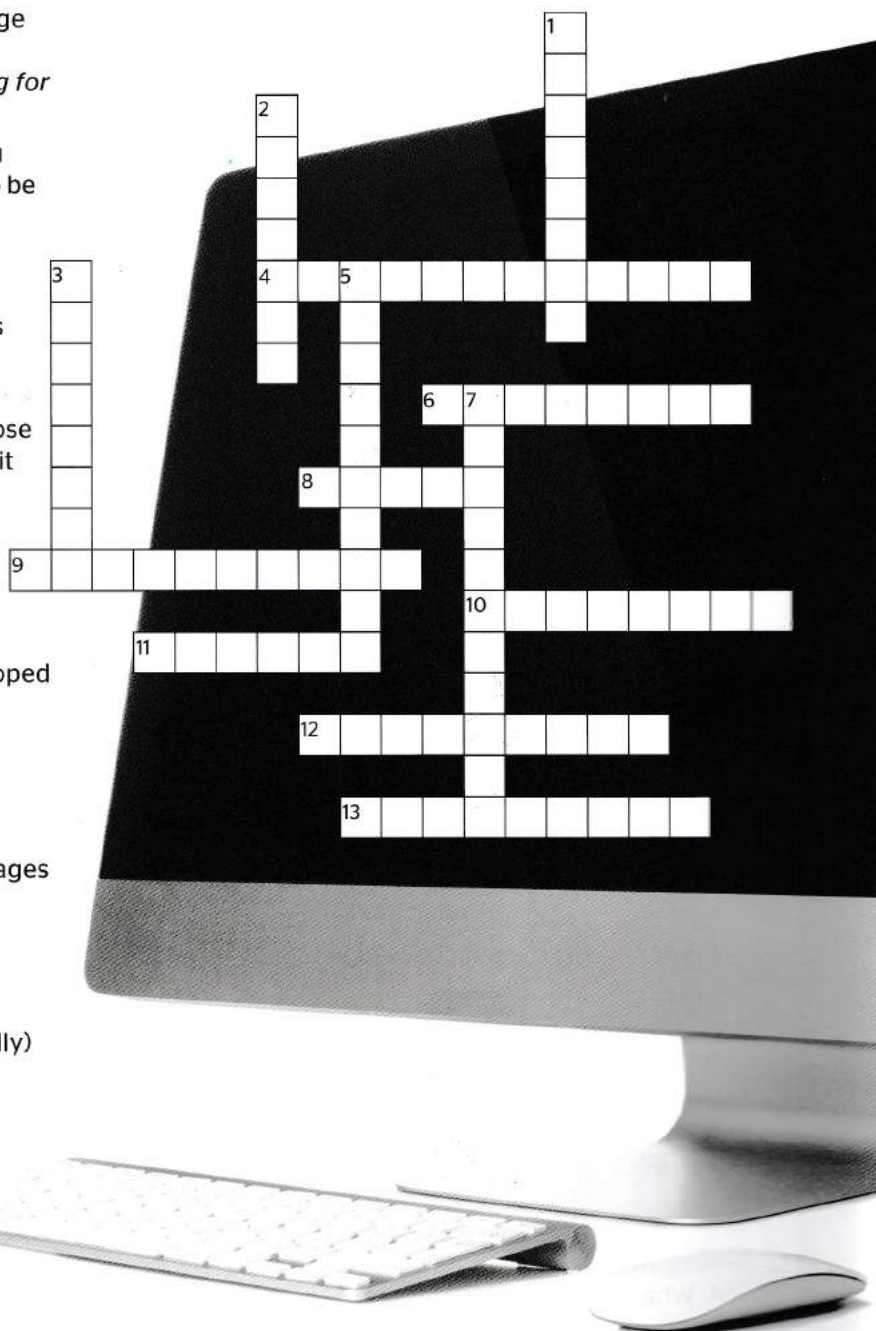
E Do the crossword.

Across

4. an important discovery that leads to huge achievements in the field of medicine, science, etc. example: *People are hoping for a... in the search for a cure for AIDS.*
6. a secret word, phrase or number that you must type into a device, computer, etc. to be able to use it
8. something that your computer may be infected with
9. something that you wear over your ears to listen to music without other people hearing it
10. the part of a telephone that you hold close to your mouth and ear when talking on it
11. a small machine or device that is handy and does something useful
12. the act of finding (out) something which has always been there but has never been observed before
13. a new device, method or process developed from study and experimentation

Down

1. programs that you need to operate a computer
2. a file in which received electronic messages are kept
3. a large collection of information that is stored on a computer and which can be accessed or changed at any time
5. a scientific test that is carried out (usually) by scientists to gain new knowledge
7. a machine that you can connect to your telephone in order to receive messages left by a person who is calling



F Work in pairs. Tell your partner what your life would be like without the Internet. Say why.

Useful phrases

I don't think I could do without the Internet because...

It would be really difficult for me to live without the Internet because...

I can't imagine my life without the Internet because...

Not having Internet access would be no problem for me because...

PRE-LISTENING TASK

- Are you interested in modern technology? Why? / Why not?
- What three gadgets or devices could you not live without? Why?
- Why do so many people use smartphones nowadays?

A Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



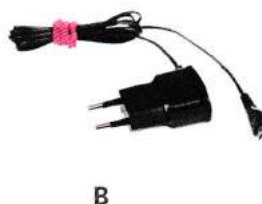
1. What does the man receive?



2. Why wasn't Mary's mobile phone working?



3. What hasn't the man packed yet?



4. What is the man's profession?

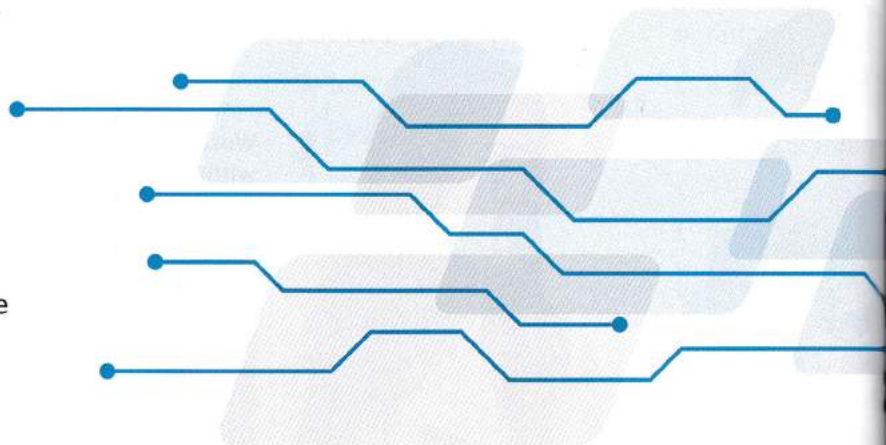
- A. inventor
- B. scientist
- C. salesperson

5. Where is the woman?

- A. at her home
- B. outside someone else's home
- C. in the street

6. What is the man asking for?

- A. a case for his mobile phone
- B. service for the camera on his mobile phone
- C. his money back



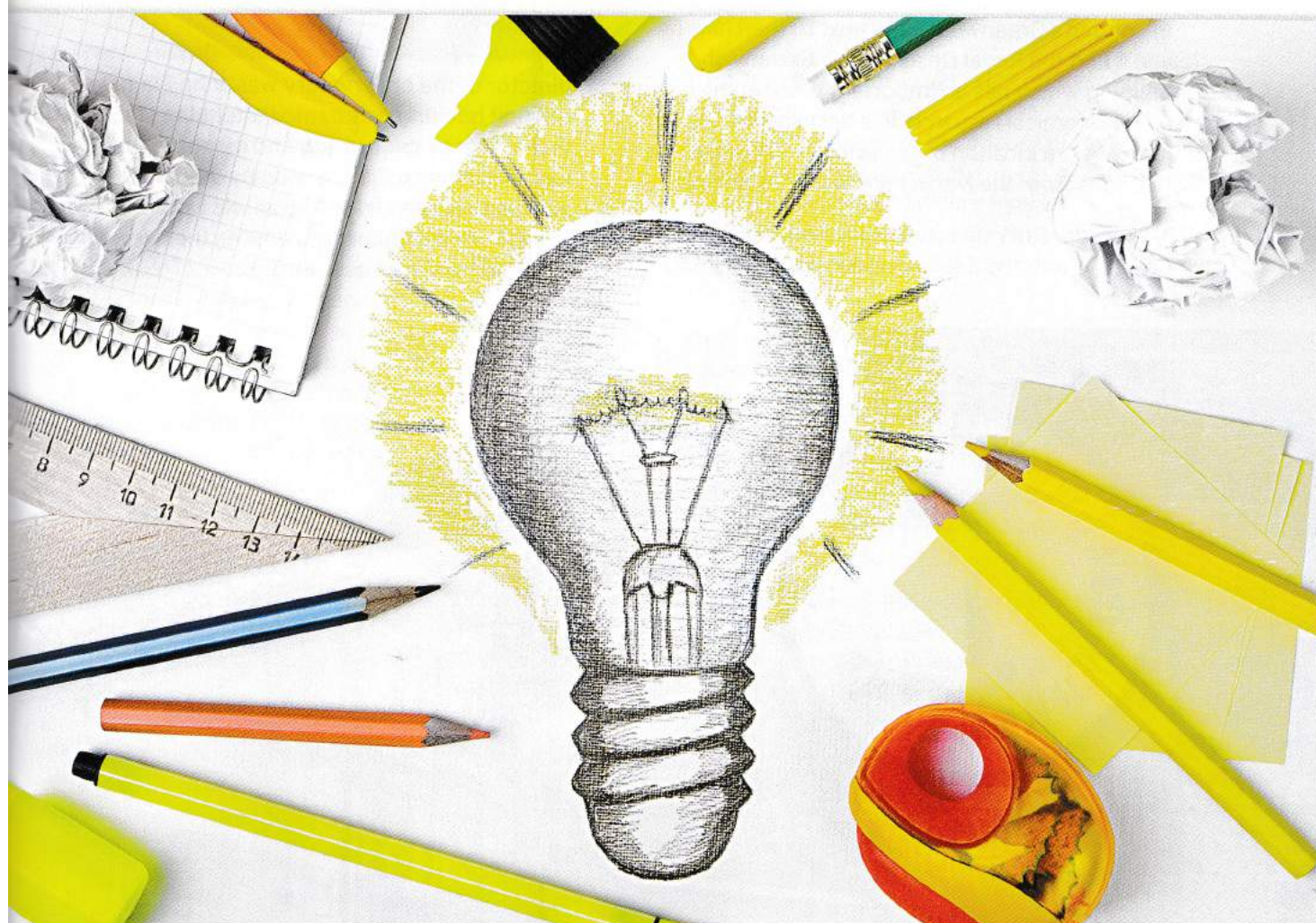
B Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin while on holiday.		
2. Percy Spencer got the idea for the microwave oven from a melted chocolate bar.		
3. A very popular soft drink was invented by a pharmacist.		
4. The recipe of that drink is now known to everybody.		
5. Pemberton died not knowing how successful his creation would become.		

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Are you interested in scientific discoveries? Why? / Why not?
- In your opinion, what is the most important invention/discovery of all time? Why?

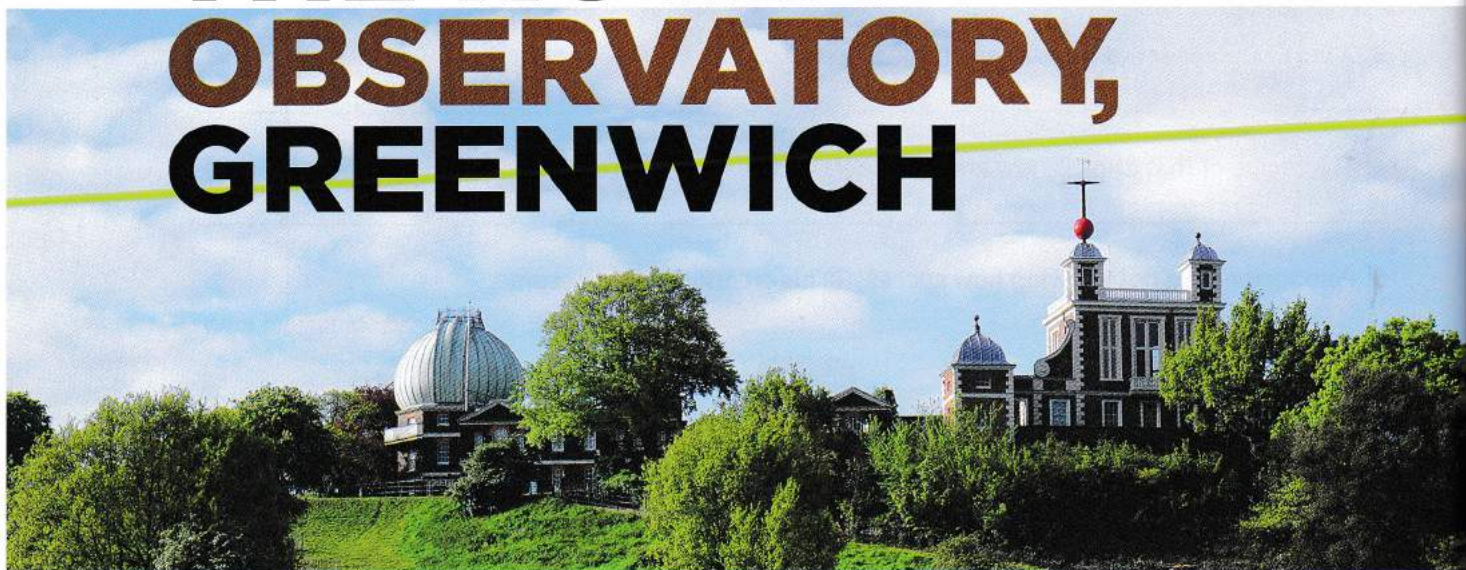


POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Are you interested in astronomy? Why? / Why not?
- What is your opinion on space exploration?

A Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

THE ROYAL OBSERVATORY, GREENWICH

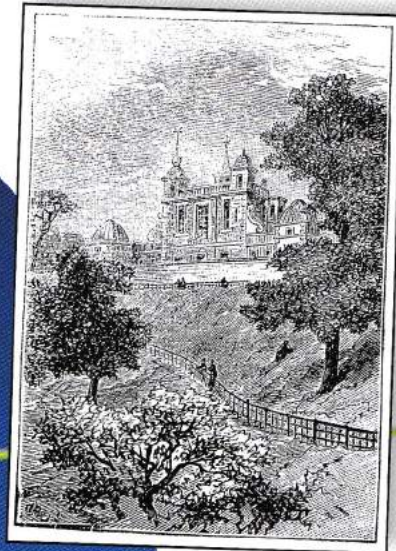
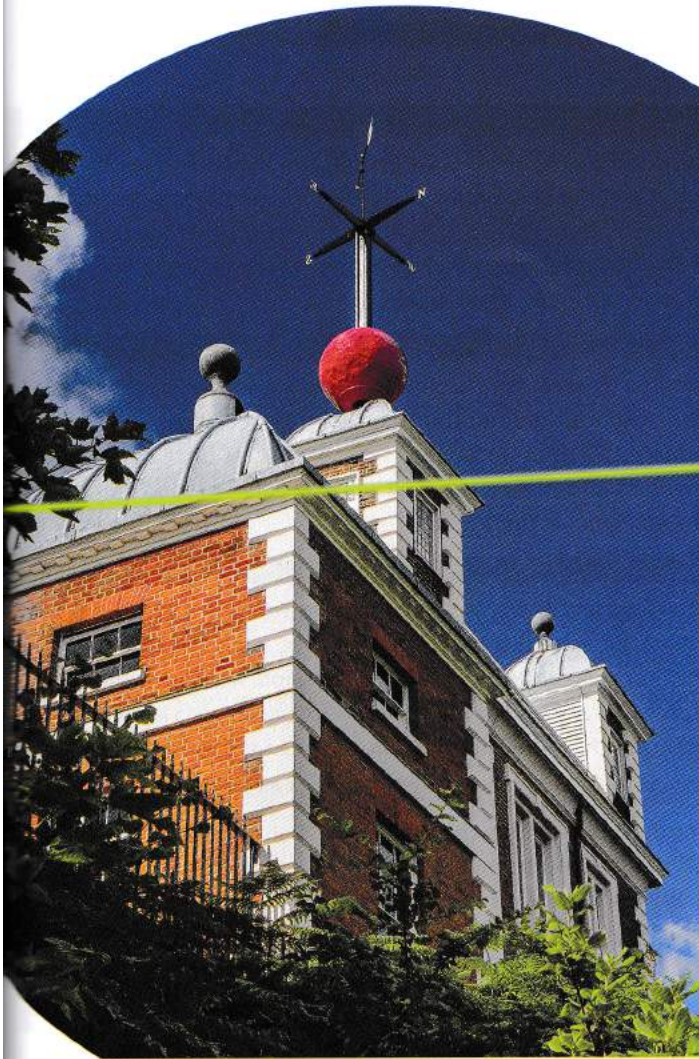


In London's Greenwich Park, next to the Thames, you'll find the Royal Observatory, Greenwich, a building which has an important place in the history of astronomical research. It is best known for marking the location of the prime meridian, a line that runs from the North Pole to the South Pole.

The observatory was commissioned by King Charles II and the building was completed in 1676.

Designed by Sir Christopher Wren, it was the first scientific research facility built in Britain. The first director of the observatory was John Flamsteed and the first building was named after him. Flamsteed was in charge of studying and mapping the stars, mainly so they could be used by sailors to avoid accidents at sea. In 1957, scientific work was moved to a different location; since 1960, the Greenwich site has been used as a museum.





Visitors to the museum can see a metal line on the ground which shows the path of the prime meridian. Between the years 1848 and 1972, all the world's major countries started using time zones which were based on Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), which is the local time at the prime meridian. For example, people in the UK often say GMT+1 for the time zone which is one hour ahead of the UK. However, it is more common in the rest of the world to use the term Universal Time, which is written UTC+1. To help people in London set their clocks and watches a time ball was installed on the roof of the observatory, which still drops every day at exactly 1 p.m.

It is popular for visitors to take pictures of each other with one foot on either side of the prime meridian line—that is, with one foot in the east and the other foot in the west. Since 1999, a green laser has shone across the London night sky, following the prime meridian north across the city. If you continued the line south, it would pass through the UK, France, Spain, Algeria, Mali, Burkina Faso, Togo, Ghana and end in Antarctica.

- What happened to the observatory in 1960?
 - It was closed to the public.
 - It became a place for scientific work.
 - It was used to help prevent accidents.
 - It was turned into a museum.
- What is the time difference between GMT and UTC?
 - GMT is one hour ahead.
 - GMT is one hour behind.
 - UTC is one hour behind.
 - There is no difference.
- Why does a ball drop every day on top of the observatory?
 - to remind people of the history of the observatory
 - to help people know the correct time
 - to remind people to eat lunch
 - to show people why GMT is important
- What do the countries mentioned in the last paragraph have in common?
 - They are considered part of the east and the west.
 - They are lit by a green laser.
 - They all share the prime meridian line.
 - They are in the GMT+1 time zone.
- What is the significance of the green laser light shining across London?
 - It represents the prime meridian line.
 - It reminds people of the presence of the observatory.
 - It helps people determine their location.
 - It leads people to the observatory from wherever they are in the city.

B Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

1 Mercury is the smallest planet in our solar system and the one closest to the sun; however, it isn't the hottest planet. NASA's *Mariner 10* was the first spacecraft to explore it, from 1973 to 1975. In 2018, an eight-year mission to Mercury called *BepiColombo* was launched by the European Space Agency and the Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency.

2 Mars has been visited by several missions. It has been discovered that it has seasons, weather, polar ice caps and volcanoes—just like Earth does. NASA's robotic mission Mars 2020 aims to look for signs of past life on the planet. It will also give scientists information they will use to prepare to send human explorers to the Red Planet in the 2030s.

3 Venus is the second-closest planet to the sun, but its atmosphere makes it the hottest planet in our solar system. Since the 1960s, it has been visited by more than thirty spacecraft. Japan's *Akatsuki* mission, which was the country's first successful mission to explore another planet, was launched in 2010. Its aims are to study Venus's weather and search for active volcanoes.

4 Neptune is the farthest planet from the sun. In 1612, Galileo observed Neptune with his small telescope, but thought that it was a star. In 1846, scientists predicted the location of the planet with the help of mathematics. *Voyager 2* is the only spacecraft to have ever flown past Neptune, but it provided scientists with lots of information about this planet.

5 Jupiter, the biggest planet in our solar system, has been visited by nine spacecraft. People could observe the planet's Great Red Spot through their telescopes more than a hundred years ago. Now we know that this is actually a gigantic storm. The European Space Agency's *JUICE* mission, planned to arrive at Jupiter in 2029, is going to explore the planet further.

6 Saturn is the second-largest planet in our solar system, and it is famous for its beautiful rings. People have known about it since ancient times because it is visible even without advanced telescopes. The international *Cassini-Huygens* mission—the fourth spacecraft to visit Saturn—studied the planet from 2004 to 2017 and gave scientists information about its rings and moons.

Which planet _____?

- A. was first identified by people thousands of years ago
- B. got its rings because of a volcanic eruption
- C. has been approached by one mission only
- D. shares some similarities with our planet
- E. is characterised by an extreme weather phenomenon
- F. has the highest temperatures
- G. was first explored by a Japanese mission
- H. is being explored by a joint mission of two space agencies

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- If you had the opportunity, would you travel to space? Why? / Why not?
- What do you think are some of the problems that humans would face if they travelled to other planets?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Fixing a wobble

The London Millennium Bridge (1) _____ not only for its engineering, but for its beauty as well—it (2) _____ to resemble a 'blade of light'. However, the completion of the 320-metre-long bridge was not without its difficulties. When the Millennium Bridge opened to the public in June 2000, more than 160,000 pedestrians crossed during the opening weekend. Unfortunately, no one (3) _____ what the effect of that much traffic would be. The bridge began to wobble, which means that it moved alarmingly from side to side. As a result, it was closed a few days later.

The problem wasn't the weight of such a large number of pedestrians (which could easily be supported (4) _____ the bridge's design), but their movements. When the bridge moved slightly in the wind, all of the walkers moved their feet at the same time to maintain their balance. This added energy to the natural movement of the bridge, making it sway even more.

Studies were carried out and the Millennium Bridge Trust (5) _____ money to make alterations to the bridge. After successful walking tests were carried out, the Millennium Bridge was finally safe for public use.



- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. has praised | B. praised | C. has been praised | D. has been praising |
| 2. A. was designed | B. was designing | C. designs | D. designed |
| 3. A. had predicted | B. was predicted | C. was predicting | D. is predicted |
| 4. A. from | B. by | C. for | D. with |
| 5. A. raised | B. raising | C. was raised | D. has been raised |

The History of WWW

2019 was the 30th anniversary of the World Wide Web, which was (6) _____ by Sir Tim Berners-Lee. It all started in the late 1980s, when Berners-Lee was a computer scientist at CERN, a European particle physics laboratory in Geneva. A huge amount of (7) _____ is collected there from many different sources, and back then there was no easy way for researchers around the world to (8) _____ and analyse it.

Berners-Lee set to work on solving this problem. The (9) _____ came when he created a system of saving and sharing information in files which include connections, or "links" between them.

Berners-Lee insists that he only built on the work of scientists who came before. For one thing, the (10) _____ already existed, in the form of computers which could be linked together over the Internet. Nevertheless, Berners-Lee's solution to the problem at CERN ended up becoming the WWW.

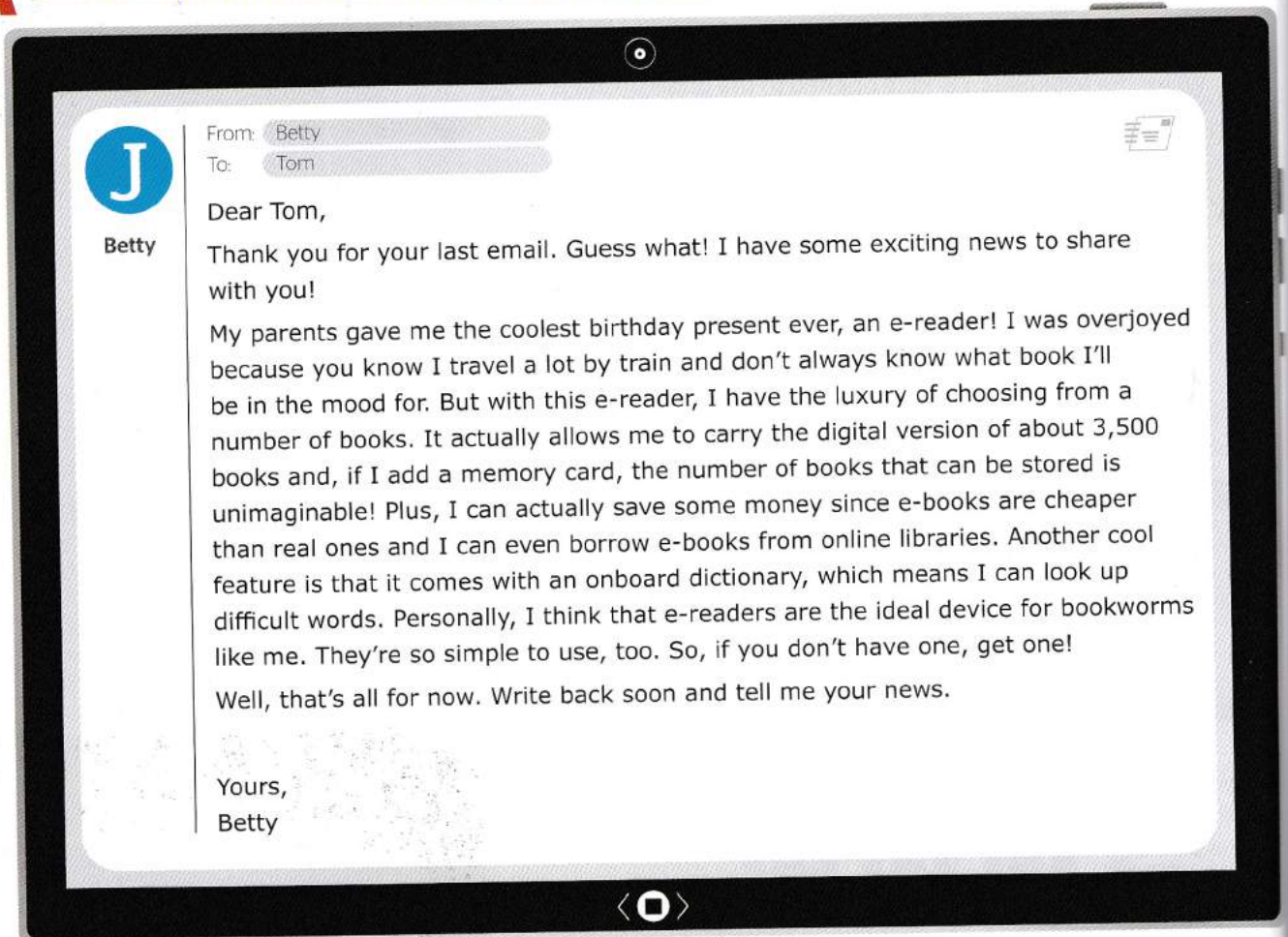


- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 6. A. discovered | B. invented | C. proved | D. updated |
| 7. A. data | B. proof | C. software | D. evidence |
| 8. A. explore | B. improve | C. access | D. attach |
| 9. A. argument | B. breakthrough | C. development | D. device |
| 10. A. hard copy | B. hard drive | C. memory stick | D. hardware |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What examples of technology do we see around us in our everyday lives?
- What kind of technological devices do you use?
- Which do you feel has had the biggest impact on your life? Why?
- What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of this technological device?

A Read the email below and answer the questions that follow.


Linking words/phrases

When you want to list or add points, use the linking words/phrases below:

Firstly / First of all / To begin with

Secondly / Also / In addition / Moreover /

Furthermore / What is more / Plus / Another

Finally / Lastly / Last but not least

To sum up / All in all

1. Is the writer in favour of e-readers or not? How do we know?
2. Which points does she use to build her argument?
3. Which words/phrases does she use to list her points? Underline them.
4. Which word/phrase does she use to introduce her final opinion? Circle it.



B Read the post below and complete it using the linking words/phrases in the box below.

All in all Secondly The way I see it Furthermore Last but not least
In contrast First and foremost Personally

Cleo Smith Age: 38



I read your post yesterday, Sandy, but I can't say I agree with you. Call me old-fashioned, but I like paper books. (1) _____, while it's true that you can store many books on one device, if something happens to your e-reader you'll have to go find and download hundreds or even thousands of books again. (2) _____, if—or rather when, because it's a matter of time—your e-reader dies and you get a new one, your old e-books might not be readable on your new e-reader. (3) _____, paper books are more likely to last and when they age and the pages turn yellow, they do so gracefully. (4) _____, time just adds to a book's character. (5) _____, I like the way they feel and smell. To my mind, reading is just not the same when I'm not holding a book. (6) _____, you don't have to remember to recharge a book's battery, nor does it run out when you are in the middle of a story. (7) _____, reading from a screen puts a strain on your eyes. (8) _____, the value of a good old paperback is timeless, so get your hands on one and enjoy!

C Read the following letter and put the sentences in the correct order.

Dear Harry,

I hope you are well. I finally got the camera drone I've been saving up for, and I'm so happy about it I wanted to share the news with you.

- ☐ I had to download an application so that my phone can communicate with the drone.
- ☐ The application also allows me to see what the camera 'sees' on my screen.
- ☐ It looks like four tiny helicopters facing each other, and it can fly pretty high. The camera hangs down from the centre.
- ☐ Anyway, as soon as I get some good photos, I will post them on my blog. Please write soon!
- ☐ You know how much I love photography—and this drone is so cool!
- ☐ You see, I'm going to spend my holiday in the countryside in Scotland, taking pictures of its beautiful landscapes from high above.
- ☐ After I downloaded it, I spent the rest of the day learning how to control the drone while taking pictures and video at the same time.
- ☐ I am still discovering all the features this device has, and I only have a week left to practise before I travel!

Take care,
Steve

D An English-speaking friend sent you an email telling you that her grandparents are going to buy her a laptop or a tablet before she goes to university, but she cannot decide which she should ask for.

Write an email to your friend in which you say

- which present she should ask for
- what you think the advantages are to justify your opinion
- why you don't think the other option would be suitable for her.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Exam Tip

When writing an email/letter expressing your opinion:

- use linking words/phrases to list or add points.
- give reasons to support your opinion and examples to make your point.
- use phrases like: *I (definitely) think... / Personally, I believe... / The way I see it...*

Unit 13: Nature

Key Vocabulary 38

Climate and the weather

Клімат та погода

climate клімат

cold холодний

cool прохолодний

hot/warm спекотний, гарячий/
теплий

humid вологий

mild м'який, помірний (клімат)

tropical тропічний

wet/dry мокрий/сухий

weather погода

beautiful/lovely/gorgeous weather
гарна/чудова/прекрасна погода

chilly прохолодно

clear sky безхмарне небо

freezing cold холоднеча

It's cloudy/sunny/windy. Хмарно./
Сонячно./Вітряно.

It's foggy/rainy/stormy. Туманно./
Дощить./Негода.

It's snowing/raining. Йде сніг/
дощ.

It looks like rain. Схоже на дощ.

clear up розвиднітись

downpour злива

drizzle мжичка, мряка

fog туман

frost / ground frost мороз/
приморозки на землі

hail град

heat / heatwave спека

rain дощ

rainbow веселка

rainy/sunny spell період дощів/
сонячної погоди

showers зливи

sleet дощ зі снігом

snowdrift снігопад

temperature above/below zero
температура вище/нижче нуля

There will be a drop/rise in
temperature next week. На
наступному тижні буде
похолодання/потепління.

weather forecast прогноз погоди

snow сніг

storm шторм, непогода

wind вітер

Plants and animals

Рослини та тварини

plant рослина

insects комахи

ant мураха

bee бджола

bumble bee джміль

butterfly метелик

fly муха

grasshopper коник стрибунець

mosquito комар

wasp оса

birds птахи

crow ворона

cuckoo зозуля

eagle орел

owl сова

parrot папуга

peacock павич

pheasant фазан

pigeon голуб

seagull чайка

sparrow горобець

stork лелека

swan лебідь

farm animals свійські тварини

cock півень

cow корова

duck качка

goat коза

goose/geese гуска/гуси

hen курка

horse кінь

pig свиня

sheep вівця/вівці

turkey індик

pets домашні улюбленці

budgie хвилястий папуга

canary канарка

dog: Alsatian/dachshund/mongrel/

Doberman пес: вівчарка/такса/
дворняжка/доберман

guinea pig морська свинка

hamster хом'як

rabbit кролик

tortoise черепашка

wild animals дикі тварини

bear ведмідь

crocodile крокодил

deer олень

elephant слон

fox лисиця

giraffe жирафа

hare заєць

hippo бегемот

kangaroo кенгуру

lizard ящірка

seal тюлень

snake змія

squirrel білка

wolf вовк

zebra зебра

sea animals морські тварини

whale кит

shark акула

sea turtle морська черепашка

dolphin дельфін

flowers квіти

crocus шафран

daffodil нарцис

daisy маргаритка

lily of the valley конвалія

poppy мак

primrose первоцвіт

snowdrop пролісок

sunflower соняшник

tulip тюльпан

violet фіалка

trees дерева

chestnut каштан

oak дуб

pine сосна

willow верба

Landscape Пейзаж, краєвид

beautiful/picturesque/

breathtaking гарний/

мальовничий/захоплюючий

rocky/mountainous кам'янистий/
гірський

rural/urban сільський/міський

Nature and environment Природа та навколишнє середовище

acid rain кислотний дощ

be environmentally aware
екологічно свідомі

blossom / be in bloom цвісти/
розцвітати

biodegradable біорозкладні

bottle/paper/plastic

bank контейнер для пляшок/
паперу/пластику

campaign for/against sth кампанія
за/проти чогось

deforestation вирубка лісів

desert пустеля

destroy (natural habitat)

знищувати природне
середовище

destruction знищення

die out / become

extinct вимирати/бути на межі
вимирання

do/cause damage to the
environment шкодити /
завдавати шкоди
навколишньому середовищу

ecology екологія

ecological disaster екологічна
катастрофа

emit викидати, випромінювати

emissions викиди

endangered species of
animals види тварин під
загрозою зникнення

environment(ally)

friendly безпечний для довкілля

environmental protection/
preservation охорона
навколишнього середовища

environmental threat екологічна
загроза

exhaust fumes вихлопні гази

global warming глобальне
потепління

greenhouse effect парниковий
ефект

jungle джунглі

natural resources природні
ресурси

natural disaster стихійне лихо,
природна катастрофа

nature reserve природний
заповідник

nature trail екологічна тропка

oil spill вилив нафти, нафтова
пляма

ozone layer/hole озоновий шар/
озонова діра

planting trees саджати дерева

protect/preserve/preserved
захищати/оберігати, зберегти /
збережений

pollution забруднення

rainforest тропічні ліси

recycle переробка відходів

renewable/alternative source
of energy відновлювальна
енергія / альтернативне
джерело енергії

returnable bottles пляшки, які
можна здавати

rubbish / rubbish dump сміття/
смітник, сміттєзвалище

sewage / sewage plant стічні
води/станція очищення стічних
вод

sewage / waste disposal
каналізація/вивіз сміття

soil ґрунт

Some animals are in danger
of extinction. Деякі тварини
знаходяться під загрозою
вимирання.

sort the rubbish into glass, paper,
plastic, etc. сортувати сміття на
скло/папір/пластик тощо
(toxic/industrial/nuclear)

waste відходи (токсичні,
промислові, радіоактивні)

tropical forests тропічні ліси

wildlife дика природа

wilderness дике місце, пустеля

Earth Day День Землі

Mother Nature Матір Природа

National Park Національний парк

scarce обмежений, дефіцитний

natural habitat природне
середовище проживання

Natural disasters

Природні катастрофи

avalanche лавина

drought засуха

earthquake землетрус

flood/flooding повінь

forest fire лісова пожежа

tornado торнадо

tsunami цунамі

typhoon тайфун

volcanic eruption виверження
вулкану

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

animal shelter притулок для
тварин

be bitten by mosquitoes бути
покусаним комарами

be stung (on the arm) by a wasp
бути вжаленим осою

cage клітка

come/go to sb's/sth's rescue
приходити комусь на допомогу

crop failure неврожай

evacuate/evacuation
евакуювати/евакуація

feed годувати

flood damage збитки від повені

future generations майбутні
покоління

grow vegetables/crops
виросувати овочі/
сільськогосподарські культури

iceberg айсберг

melt танути

natural/artificial (chemical) fertiliser
природні/штучні (хімічні)
добрива

pesticides пестициди

reduce зменшувати

rescue рятувати

rescue operation операція з
порятунку

save sb/sth from (death)
врятувати когось від (смерті)

season of the year пора року

survivor of a tsunami особа, яка
пережила цунамі

threat/danger загроза

victim of an earthquake
потерпілий від землетрусу

wave хвиля

in season в сезон

A Choose A, B or C to complete the gaps.

The combination of the pollution of the atmosphere by industrial emissions and the greenhouse effect is bringing about noticeable changes in the earth's (1) _____.

In spring, for example, when one would expect the weather to be (2) _____, there is frost on the (3) _____, or it snows at the beginning of May, which happened a few years ago.

Sometimes, long rainy spells are followed by unbearable (4) _____ which cause serious (5) _____. This often results in major crop failures. In many places, summers are cold and rainy, and the danger of (6) _____ is always present.

There are also winters, like the last one, when the temperature hardly ever (7) _____ below zero, and many plants are already (8) _____ in the middle of January. Unusual as it seems, it's true!

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. climate | B. soil | C. nature |
| 2. A. freezing | B. warm | C. hot |
| 3. A. dirt | B. atmosphere | C. ground |
| 4. A. waves | B. hot | C. heatwaves |
| 5. A. dryness | B. droughts | C. showers |
| 6. A. hurricane | B. hail | C. flooding |
| 7. A. drops | B. drips | C. rises |
| 8. A. in bloom | B. blossom | C. planted |

**B** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There is one extra word.

damage biodegradable disaster stung rise endangered aware
protect extinct dangerous

- After a week of heavy rains and cold weather, there will be a _____ in temperature next week.
- We can all _____ the environment by using _____ packaging.
- If the pace of environmental destruction does not slow down, some animal species will become _____.
- Many birds and sea animals died in an environmental _____ caused by a huge oil spill.
- People worldwide are gradually becoming more _____ of ecological problems.
- Certain animals, such as seals or sea turtles, are considered to be _____ species and may soon die out.
- The development of various industries is causing more and more _____ to the environment.
- Being _____ by a wasp can be very painful.

C Complete the sentences with your own opinions and ideas.

- My favourite season of the year is _____ because _____.
- I think the greatest threat to the environment is _____.
- In my opinion, animals should/shouldn't be kept in zoos because _____.
- _____ are the most dangerous natural disasters because _____.
- What we can do to help survivors of an earthquake is _____.
- The biggest environmental problem for future generations will be _____.

D Match the words/phrases with their definitions.

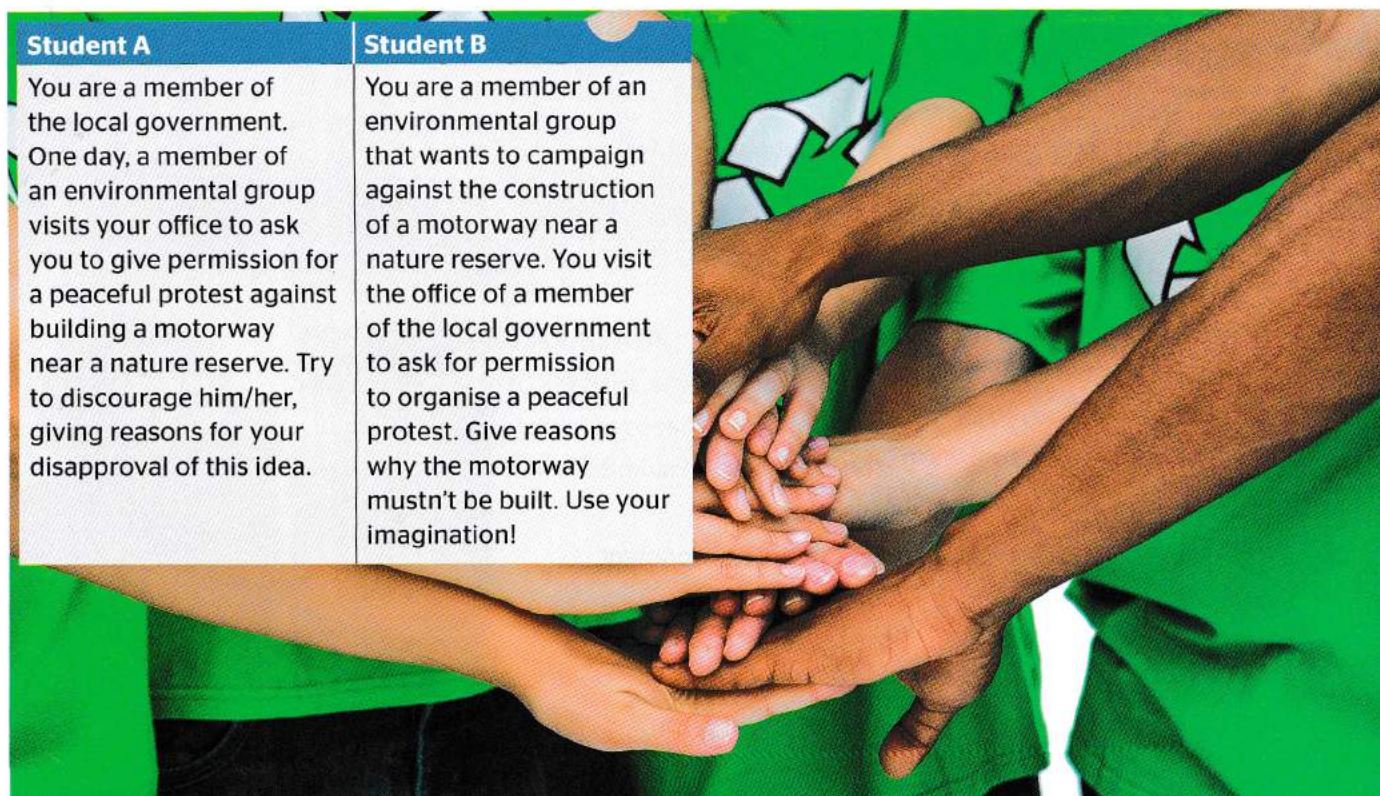
- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. wilderness | ☐ | a. rain that contains chemicals from factory gases and destroys the environment |
| 2. ozone | ☐ | b. a very large wave that causes a lot of damage |
| 3. victim | ☐ | c. a gas which people and animals breathe out from their lungs |
| 4. survivor | ☐ | d. someone who has been affected by a bad situation or event |
| 5. carbon dioxide | ☐ | e. an area of land where no people live and there are no buildings |
| 6. nature reserve | ☐ | f. the disappearance of a species of animal or plant |
| 7. tsunami | ☐ | g. rain that falls fast and heavily |
| 8. extinction | ☐ | h. a gas which blocks the ultraviolet radiation from the sun |
| 9. acid rain | ☐ | i. a large area of land where plants and animals are protected |
| 10. downpour | ☐ | j. someone who is still alive in spite of experiencing a situation or event that could have killed him/her |

E Circle the odd one out.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------|------------|
| 1. urban | humid | picturesque | rural | rocky |
| 2. foggy | rainy | windy | cloudy | snowing |
| 3. severe | mountainous | mild | tropical | wet |
| 4. downpour | rain | frost | drizzle | shower |
| 5. mosquito | bee | fly | hare | butterfly |
| 6. eagle | stork | wasp | pigeon | swan |
| 7. tulip | oak | daisy | poppy | daffodil |
| 8. rabbit | lizard | giraffe | seal | wolf |
| 9. hamster | seagull | tortoise | dog | guinea pig |
| 10. cock | hen | goat | goose | fox |

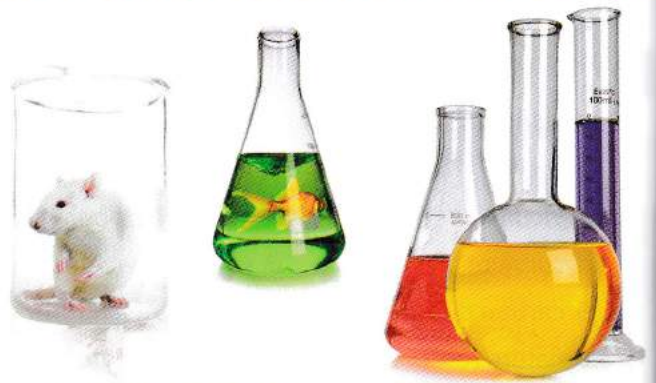
F In pairs, act out a dialogue according to the situation given below.

Student A	Student B
You are a member of the local government. One day, a member of an environmental group visits your office to ask you to give permission for a peaceful protest against building a motorway near a nature reserve. Try to discourage him/her, giving reasons for your disapproval of this idea.	You are a member of an environmental group that wants to campaign against the construction of a motorway near a nature reserve. You visit the office of a member of the local government to ask for permission to organise a peaceful protest. Give reasons why the motorway mustn't be built. Use your imagination!



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Why is it important to protect the environment?
- Why are rainforests important to our planet?
- What do you know about climate change?



A Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



1. What was the weather like on the second day?



A



B



C

2. Where are they going on holiday?



A



B



C

3. Which animal did the speaker see up close for the first time?



A



B



C

4. What is the biggest problem facing the area now?

- A. air pollution
- B. water pollution
- C. land pollution

5. What happened to the speaker?

- A. He was bitten by mosquitoes.
- B. He was annoyed by grasshoppers.
- C. He was stung by a wasp.

6. What has the man never done before?

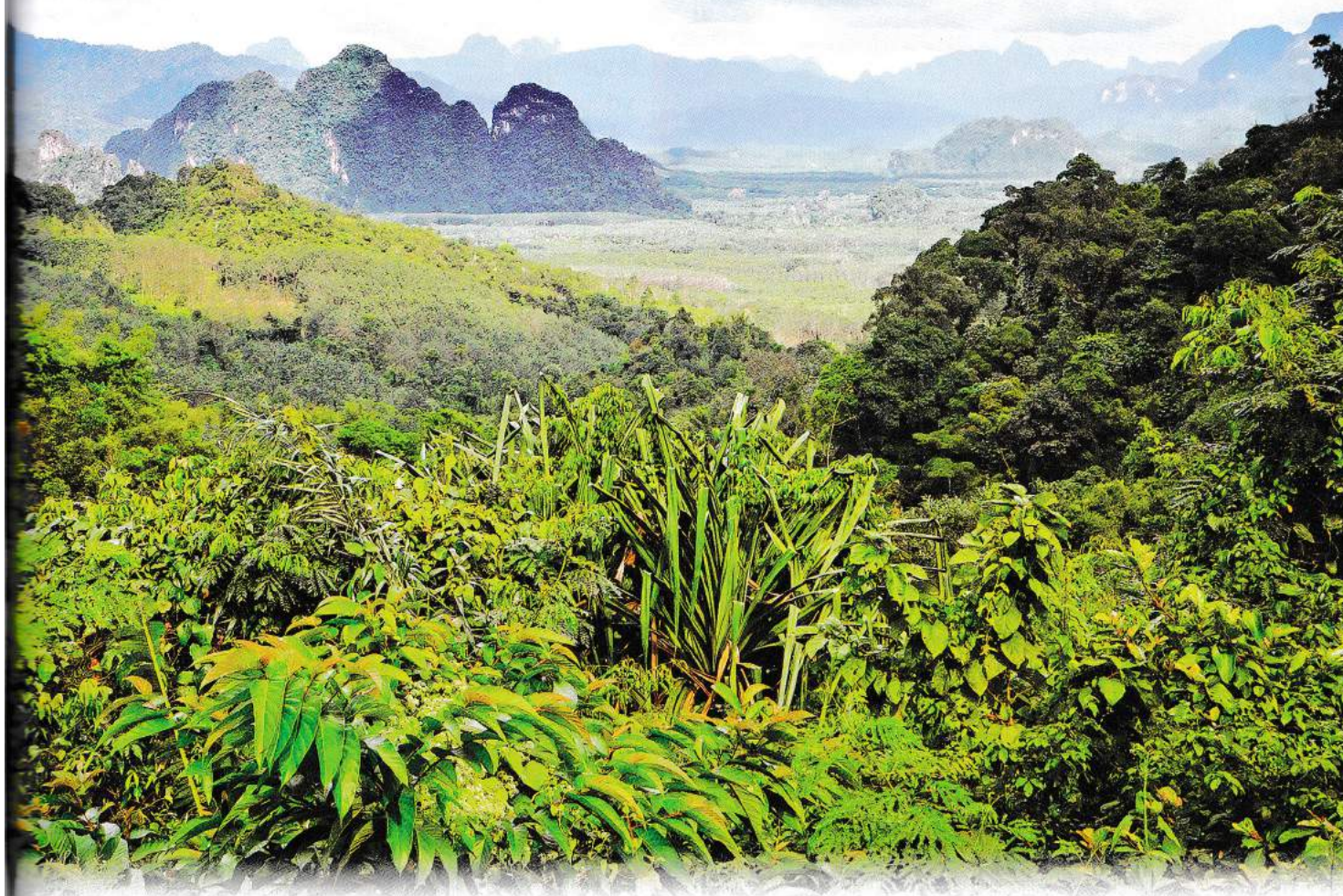
- A. used materials that do not harm the environment
- B. returned bottles to the supermarket
- C. recycled glass and plastic



B Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.

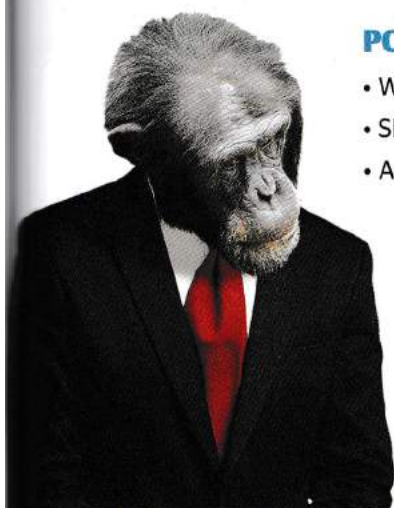


	T	F
1. Rainforests do not grow in Asia.		
2. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests.		
3. More than half of the world's rainforests have disappeared.		
4. Rainforests are being destroyed only because people need wood.		
5. Some rainforest plants are used in making medicines.		



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What can we do to keep the environment clean?
- Should animals be kept in zoos? Why? / Why not?
- Are people and animals similar? Why? / Why not?



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- How important is the preservation of areas of extreme natural beauty or ecological significance? Why?
- Do you know of an area that is protected because of its natural or ecological value? If yes, what is special about it? If no, is there an area which you feel should be protected? Why?

A Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

NATURE'S TREASURE TROVE

1

The Socotra Archipelago is situated in the north-west Indian Ocean, just south of Yemen. It consists mainly of four islands and is considered a place worth protecting for two reasons. Firstly, it supports a large number of land, sea and air animals, as well as a wide variety of plant life. More importantly, 37% of Socotra's 825 plant species, 90% of its reptile species and 95% of its land snail species cannot be found anywhere else in the world.

2

The Sichuan Giant Panda Sanctuaries, located amongst the Qionglai and Jiayin Mountains in China, include nine scenic parks and seven nature reserves. It is believed that the forests here are more than 65 million years old. After the tropical rainforests, they are the most plant-rich areas in the world. The sanctuaries are where more than 30% of the world's pandas live, alongside other endangered animals such as the red panda, the snow leopard and the clouded leopard.

3

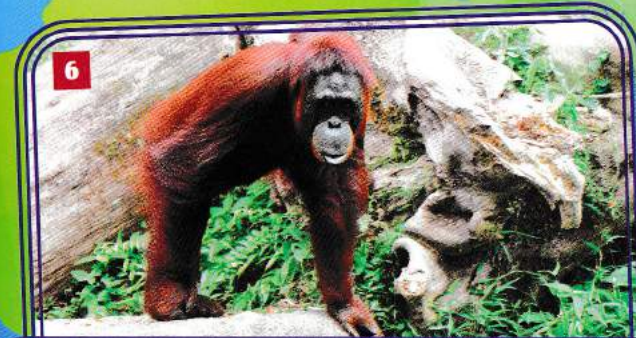
The Great Barrier Reef, off the north-east coast of Australia, is famous for its breathtaking beauty and eye-catching colours. It covers around 345,000 km² of sea floor and contains the world's largest collection of coral reefs. Corals are tiny marine animals that live on a hard, rock-like substance which they make as they grow; it's this substance that gives shape to the reefs. When conditions are good—lots of light, steady temperatures and mild wave action—corals may grow up to 4.5 centimetres per year.



Surtsey is a new island that was formed after volcanic eruptions in the 1960s. It is situated 32 km off the south coast of Iceland and is exceptional because it has been protected from human activity ever since it was created. This is why scientists have used it as an open-air, natural laboratory to study how a place gets 'invaded' by organisms, plants and animals. First, seeds were carried there by the ocean waters, then bacteria and fungi grew; after that, plants appeared, with 10 species inhabiting the island by the end of the first decade. Today, it also hosts 89 species of birds and 335 species of other types of animals.



The Los Glaciares National Park in the south of Argentina owes its beauty to the mountains that surround numerous glacial lakes, including the 160 km long Lake Argentino. This is where three glaciers meet and falling icebergs echo like thunder as they hit the waters below. What many find amazing is how the glaciers moving back and forth as the seasons change. The park contains black-necked swans, Chilean flamingos and Andean condors (one of the largest birds in the world when it comes to size and length of wings), among other beautiful species.



The Sangha Trinational protected area consists of three different national parks belonging to Cameroon, the Central African Republic and Congo-Brazzaville. Most of the 7,500 km² of land is unaffected by humans and features various plants and animals found in tropical forests, including Nile crocodiles, goliath tigerfish, elephants, gorillas and chimpanzees. Many of the species living there are endangered, as are some tree species, like the Mukulungu, which are cut down on a large scale elsewhere.

Which World Heritage Site ?

- A. is made up of sixteen different sites
- B. crosses national borders
- C. allows you to see the activity of huge blocks of ice
- D. is disturbed by human activity a lot
- E. includes structures that are made of small organisms
- F. contains a large number of species that exist only there
- G. is extremely dangerous to visit
- H. is the youngest of all those mentioned



Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



KILLER WAVES

They're monsters of the open ocean, a series of giant waves that travel for thousands of kilometres and have enough power to destroy anything and drown anyone in their way: *tsunamis*! *Tsunami* is a Japanese word which means 'harbour wave'. In the past, tsunamis were sometimes referred to as 'tidal waves' or 'seismic sea waves'.

Tsunamis are not like normal waves caused by strong winds. They are caused by earthquakes or volcanic eruptions under the ocean. It's a bit like when you jump into a swimming pool or throw a stone in a pond: you create a series of small waves. A tsunami is just like those ripples, only bigger because the ocean is no swimming pool or pond—and volcanoes are no pebbles!

Out in the ocean where the water is deep, tsunamis are not dangerous: the waves are small, and they can pass under a ship and not be felt or seen. However, as a tsunami approaches land, it can become very dangerous. The waves that reach the coast can be as high as 30 metres, and they can travel up to 950 kilometres per hour—as fast as a passenger jet! They sweep away anything in their path, damaging buildings and other structures. Most people who get caught in a tsunami will find it almost impossible to swim and stay in control. The only way they can survive is by holding onto something like a standing tree but, even then, the force of the water can be so strong that they won't be able to hold on for long.

The only way to minimise damage and loss of life is to have sufficient warning. Many countries have the technology to know when a tsunami is about to happen. For example, Australia uses earthquake monitors to detect events that might cause tsunamis around its coast and in the south-west Pacific Ocean. In places like Japan and Hawaii, where tsunamis occur frequently, there are official tsunami warning systems. However, these are not perfect: local tsunamis can reach the shore within minutes, almost before warning can be given; and with distant tsunamis, scientists can tell when they will arrive, but they cannot tell how big they will be.

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What natural disasters can you think of?
- Which do you consider to be the worst? Why?
- How can we minimise the effects of natural disasters?

1. What is true about tsunamis?
 - A. They can destroy thousands of kilometres of land.
 - B. They occur frequently in harbours in Japan.
 - C. They are a recent phenomenon.
 - D. They consist of more than one wave.
2. What are tsunamis?
 - A. underwater earthquakes
 - B. waves caused by seismic movements
 - C. underwater volcanic eruptions
 - D. waves caused by strong winds
3. Which is **NOT** true about tsunamis in the open ocean?
 - A. They are easy to detect.
 - B. They are not very high.
 - C. They are not very dangerous.
 - D. They are very fast.
4. According to the text, what is the best course of action to take in the event of a tsunami?
 - A. stay calm and in control
 - B. swim in the same direction as the tsunami
 - C. grab hold of anything that is fixed to the ground
 - D. wait until the tsunami loses its force
5. How is it possible to reduce the loss caused by tsunamis?
 - A. by providing a warning in advance
 - B. by finding out what causes them
 - C. by determining how frequently they take place
 - D. by developing new technologies

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

'TIS THE SEASON TO BE WASTEFUL

In many places around the world, Christmas goes down as the most festive time of the year. Yet, (1) _____ of all the joyful feelings, there is a darker side: Christmas is also a time when a large amount of waste is produced. It is estimated that the holiday season generates an extra six million tons of waste each year from, among other things, packaging, Christmas trees, decorations and wrapping paper. Did you know that nearly 50,000 trees are cut down (2) _____ produce 8,000 tons of wrapping paper for Christmas? Well, it's true!

To make matters worse, many new electronic devices appear on the market just in time for Christmas, turning our old gadgets, laptops, digital cameras and mobile phones into a mountain of dangerous e-waste. The amount of electronic waste that is created globally is expected to grow (3) _____ that by the year 2030 it will weigh over twelve times more than the Great Pyramid of Giza. Switzerland was one of the first countries to recognise that e-waste posed such a serious environmental problem (4) _____ it required immediate action. Back in 1994, it introduced a recycling fee that was charged every time a new electronic product was bought, (5) _____ to encourage people to bring their unwanted items back for recycling.



- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. A. in spite | B. although | C. despite | D. because |
| 2. A. so | B. to | C. so as | D. and |
| 3. A. so much | B. so many | C. too much | D. enough |
| 4. A. and | B. so | C. that's why | D. that |
| 5. A. because | B. so that | C. as a result | D. in order |

REDUCE, REUSE, RECYCLE

Our school took us on a school trip in order to learn more about recycling and what happens to (6) _____, and to collect information so that we could set up a recycling scheme in our school. The people who work at the recycling plant talked to us about the large (7) _____ of waste that still isn't recycled.

It was incredible to see where the waste from our homes is sorted before being recycled into new products! The rubbish is loaded onto a conveyor belt and then people (8) _____ the rubbish by hand, removing any objects that can't be recycled. The conveyor shakes the rubbish up and down as it moves and paper, plastic and metal are separated. Finally, the separated rubbish ends up as big square blocks.

There is so much that can be done with recycled materials! Did you know that a plastic bottle can be turned into material to make a jumper? So, next time you are ready to toss a plastic bottle in the rubbish, throw it in the recycling (9) _____ instead. Recycling is so important, and it is something that we can all do. It is an easy way to help (10) _____ our planet.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 6. A. pollution | B. source | C. waste | D. cage |
| 7. A. amount | B. size | C. number | D. evacuation |
| 8. A. grow | B. sort | C. melt | D. rescue |
| 9. A. plant | B. station | C. basket | D. bin |
| 10. A. protect | B. campaign | C. blossom | D. feed |



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever written to a friend while on holiday? If yes, what kind of information did you include in your letter/email? If no, what kind of information would you include? Why?
- If you were reading an email/letter about someone else's holiday, what kind of information would you like it to include?

A Read Danny's email and George's reply. Then answer the question that follows.

Hi George,

You remember how we were talking about going on holiday together? Well, I came across the following advertisement and I think I found the perfect destination. What do you say?

Regards,
Danny



Visit Ecuador!

Would you like to explore jungles, climb mountains, see volcanoes and visit one of the most amazing nature spots in the world—the Galapagos Islands?

Then come to Ecuador!

*It's one of the world's most exotic destinations.
Let Ecuador enchant you!*



Hi Danny,

Of course I'd love to go. As you know, I'm a nature lover at heart, so what better place to go than Ecuador with its amazing biodiversity? The only worry I have is the price. How much do you think a trip like this will cost? Also, the ad doesn't say anything about when the best time to go is. So when do you think we should go and how long should we stay for? Let me know what you think.

Regards,
George

Which of the following does George do?

1. ask about the cost
2. suggest a time to go
3. say why he would like to go
4. enquire about when to go and for how long
5. refuse the suggestion

B Read the letter Danny sent to his friend Matthew and decide which set of instructions (1-3) corresponds most closely to the letter. Then underline the sentences from the letter that match the instructions.

Dear Matthew,

How are you? I know I haven't written in a while but there's a good reason for it. You see, I'm in Ecuador with some friends, and I'm having the time of my life! You know, Ecuador is one of the most biodiverse countries in the world. Yesterday, we visited La Casa del Arbol station. It's a tree house in the mountains of Ecuador, where scientists study earthquake activity and the Tungurahua Volcano. The view from here is breathtaking. It's definitely worth the three-hour hike.

You won't believe what we did there. We rode the swing that hangs from the station! I was hesitant at first because it's a bit dangerous—it swings out over the edge of a cliff and only has a seat belt for safety—but I eventually found the courage to give it a go. It was amazing swinging hundreds of metres above the valley floor!

Well, that's all for now! Please let me know how you're spending your holiday.

Yours,

Danny

Set 1

- state where you are and why you chose this holiday destination
- talk about something interesting you did
- mention what you plan on doing next
- give your friend some advice

Set 2

- say where you are and who you are with
- mention why you picked this particular holiday destination
- provide some details of an interesting place you have visited

Set 3

- state your holiday destination and an interesting fact about it
- talk about a place you went to and why it is worth visiting
- say how you got there and what alternative ways there are
- warn your friend against a specific activity

C You received a letter from your friend Harry suggesting that you go on holiday together to Costa Rica, one of the most biodiverse regions on Earth.

Write a letter to your friend in which you

- say why you would like to go
- say what you would like to see and do
- ask him if you can go during the summer holidays.

Write a letter of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your letter in an appropriate way.



Unit 14: Society

Key Vocabulary 41

State and society – Politics

Держава та суспільство – Політика

adopt/establish заснувати
 be in authority бути при владі
 central government центральний уряд
 charity (organisation) благодійна організація
 citizen громадянин
 city/town council місцева рада
 constitution конституція
 criminal organisation кримінальна організація
 department/ministry міністерство
 elect deputies to the Senate обирати депутатів до Верховної Ради
 election campaign передвиборча кампанія
 elections вибори
 electors/voters виборці
 embassy посольство
 general/presidential election загальні/президентські вибори
 go into / enter politics займатися політикою
 government offices державні установи
 government proposals пропозиції уряду
 head of state глава держави
 immigration authorities міграційна служба
 influential/leading politician впливовий політик
 local/municipal authorities місцева влада
 local government місцеві органи влади
 make a career in politics зробити політичну кар'єру
 mayor мер
 Member of Parliament (MP) член парламенту

Ministry of (National) Defence Міністерство оборони
 Ministry of Education Міністерство освіти
 Ministry of Finance Міністерство фінансів
 Ministry of Home Affairs Міністерство внутрішніх справ
 Ministry of the Interior and Administration Міністерство внутрішніх справ та адміністрування
 municipal government муніципальні органи влади
 national anthem національний гімн
 opinion poll опитування (громадської думки)
 party leader лідер партії
 (government) policy політика уряду
 politics політика
 president президент
 Prime Minister (PM) прем'єр міністр
 proposal for changes / new regulations пропозиція про зміни/нові положення
 province область
 (right-wing/left-wing) senator сенатор (лівий/правий)
 session/meeting засідання/ нарада
 society суспільство
 state держава
 support/backing підтримка
 talk politics (informal) говорити про політику
 the Customs Bureau митна служба
 the Ministry of Justice Міністерство юстиції
 the Municipal Council Муніципальна рада
 the Opposition опозиція
 the Senate сенат
 the tax office податкова інспекція

International organisations and institutions Міжнародні організації та установи

EC (European Commission) Європейська комісія
 European Parliament Європарламент
 EU (European Union) Європейський Союз
 ICJ (International Court of Justice) Міжнародний суд
 NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organisation) НАТО (Організація Північноатлантичного договору)
 UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation) ЮНЕСКО (Організація Об'єднаних Націй з питань освіти, науки і культури)
 UNICEF (United Nations Children's Fund) ЮНІСЕФ, Дитячий Фонд ООН
 UN/UNO (United Nations Organisation) Організація Об'єднаних Націй
 WHO (World Health Organisation) Всесвітня організація охорони здоров'я

Law Право

accuse sb of sth звинувачувати когось в чомусь
 against the law проти закону, незаконно
 arrest арештовувати
 be in prison перебувати у в'язниці
 break/obey/respect the law порушувати закон/ дотримуватись закону/ поважати закон
 capital punishment / the death penalty смертна кара

case справа
 crime rate темпи зростання злочинності
 criminal злочинець
 commit a crime вчинити злочин
 commit suicide вчинити самогубство
 death sentence смертний вирок
 go to / escape from prison потрапити до/втекти з в'язниці
 give evidence давати свідчення
 guilty/innocent винний/невинний
 investigate розслідувати
 judge суддя
 justification виправдання
 juvenile delinquency підліткова злочинність
 life sentence/imprisonment довічне ув'язнення
 offence правопорушення
 organised crime організована злочинність
 pass/adopt a law приймати закон
 prison/jail в'язниця
 proof/evidence доказ (речовий)/ доказ (з допиту)
 punishment кара
 put sb in prison ув'язнювати когось
 release sb from prison звільняти когось з в'язниці
 suspect / be suspected of sth підозрювати/бути підозрюваним в чомусь
 under Ukrainian law відповідно до законодавства (України)
 sentence sb виносити вирок комусь
 serve a sentence відбувати покарання
 sue (sb for sth) подавати позов до суду
 Supreme Court / High Court Верховний Суд
 trial слухання справи
 verdict/sentence/judgment вирок, судові рішення

Crimes and criminals Злочини та злочинці

arson/arsonist підпал/палій
 blackmail/blackmailer шантаж/шантажист
 burglary/burglar крадіжка зі зломом/крадій
 drug dealing / drug dealer наркоторгівля/наркоторговець

hijacking/hijacker викрадення (літака)/викрадач
 kidnapping/kidnapper викрадення людей/викрадач-шантажист
 mugging/mugger хуліганство (напад)/грабіжник
 murder/murderer вбивство/вбивця
 rape/rapist гвалтувати/гвалтівник
 robbery/robber грабіж/грабіжник
 shoplifting/shoplifter крадіжка в магазині/зłodий магазинний
 smuggling/smuggler контрабанда/контрабандист
 terrorism/terrorist тероризм/терорист
 theft/thief крадіжка/зłodий
 pickpocketing/pickpocket кишенькова крадіжка/кишеньковий зłodий

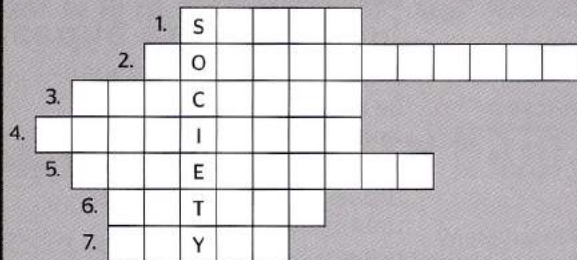
Social problems and unrest Соціальні проблеми та заворушення

employment працевлаштування
 authorities влада
 ban заборона/забороняти
 campaign кампанія
 community громада/спільнота
 community service громадські роботи
 crime злочин
 demonstration демонстрація
 homeless безхатко
 homelessness безпритульний
 population населення
 poverty бідність
 protest протестувати
 protest протест
 racism расизм
 refugee біженець
 social injustice соціальна несправедливість
 society суспільство
 violence насильство
 volunteer волонтер
 unemployment безробіття

Other words and phrases

Інші слова та вирази

accept a bribe брати хабар
 be robbed of sth бути пограбованим
 be fined for speeding отримувати штраф за перевищення швидкості
 bribery хабарництво
 bomb attack зривання бомби
 break into a house незаконне вторгнення в будинок з метою пограбування
 bully хуліган
 bullying булінг/залякування
 have a burglar alarm installed встановити сигналізацію
 charge / be charged with sth звинувачувати/пред'явити звинувачення
 corruption/corrupt корупція/корумпований
 demonstration against/for sth демонстрація проти/за щось
 go off вибух (про бомбу)
 hostage заручник
 kidnap attempt спроба викрадення
 legal costs юридичні витрати
 impose a fine on sb виписувати штраф комусь
 pay damages відшкодовувати збитки
 plant/drop a bomb закладати/скинути бомбу
 ransom викуп
 sexual harassment сексуальне домагання
 steal красти
 taxes податки
 military service військова служба
 make ends meet зводити кінці з кінцями
 make a living заробляти на життя
 active interest зацікавленість
 awareness raising programmes програми підвищення обізнаності

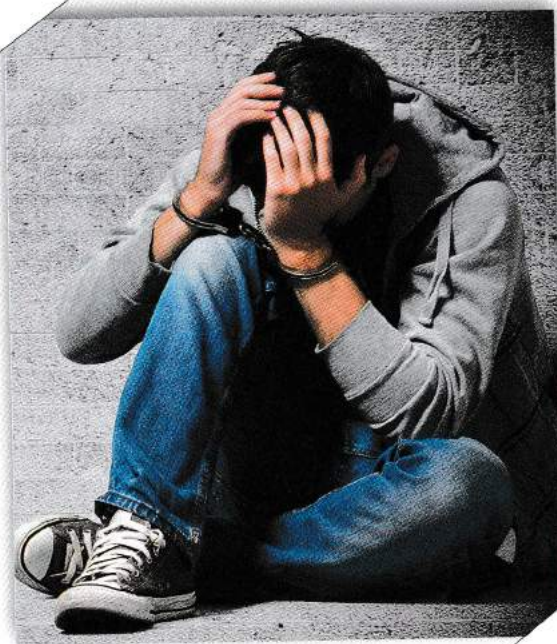
A Do the word puzzle.

1. a nation or a country
2. a set of laws or principles that describe the rights and duties of the citizens of a particular country
3. an occasion when citizens choose a person or group of people by voting
4. the head of state of a country that doesn't have a king or queen
5. a group of people who represent the state and are responsible for running a country
6. a nation's official song played on public occasions
7. the head of a city or a town

B In pairs, decide which definition is correct (if any). Write A, B, both or neither.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

1. Juvenile delinquency is
 - A. holding somebody prisoner to demand something from their family, employer, etc.
 - B. the criminal behaviour of young people.
2. A fine is
 - A. a sum of money that you have to pay when you break the law.
 - B. a financial penalty for breaking the law, contract or rule.
3. A robber is
 - A. someone who tries to take control of an airplane.
 - B. someone who uses violence to steal something from a bank or from another person.
4. A demonstration is
 - A. a march or gathering in which people protest against or support something.
 - B. a process in which people vote to choose the government.
5. Hostages are
 - A. people who have been forced to leave their country because of political, religious or social reasons.
 - B. people who don't pay taxes.
6. A policy is
 - A. a set of ideas or plans that the government, a party or a company has agreed on.
 - B. another word for politics.
7. A citizen is
 - A. someone who is a resident of a foreign country.
 - B. someone who leaves one country to live in another.
8. A life sentence is
 - A. a punishment for committing an offence.
 - B. another term for life imprisonment.



C What do the following abbreviations stand for?

1. NATO - _____
2. UNICEF - _____
3. UNO - _____
4. UNESCO - _____
5. PM - _____
6. WHO - _____
7. EU - _____
8. MP - _____

D Read the sentences and decide which criminal activity has taken place.



1. Their house was broken into while they were away.

2. He threatened the actress that he would publish the photos if she didn't pay him \$20,000.

3. Fortunately, the bomb that was planted in the bank didn't go off.

4. When Mary got up to leave the cafeteria, she realised someone had stolen her purse.

5. She liked the blouse so much that she put it into her bag and left the shop without paying for it.

6. George was walking down the street and talking on the phone when suddenly someone attacked him and stole his mobile.

E In pairs, decide what punishment the following people deserve.

1. A burglar breaks into your house/flat and steals your computer.
2. A passenger on a bus travels without a ticket.
3. A man kills a criminal in self-defence.
4. A boy bullies younger students at school.
5. A motorist drives after drinking a bottle of wine.
6. A terrorist kidnaps a Member of Parliament.
7. A drug dealer sells drugs to your friends.



F Complete the phrases/expressions by forming collocations using the words in the box.

serve go into give crime commit
pay break election break into opinion

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. _____ the law | 6. _____ evidence |
| 2. _____ a crime | 7. _____ rate |
| 3. _____ a sentence | 8. _____ a house |
| 4. _____ campaign | 9. _____ damages |
| 5. _____ politics | 10. _____ poll |

G Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in bold.

- If a government wants a healthy economy, it should deal with the problem of _____ first. **EMPLOY**
- _____ refers to discrimination on the basis of racial or ethnic identity. **RACE**
- The _____ was attended by more than 20,000 people who were protesting against new taxes. **DEMONSTRATE**
- Trying to find a place for the _____ to stay when it is cold does not take care of the problem they face all year round. **HOME**
- Viewers complained about the _____ in the series that was shown during the time of day when most schoolchildren are at home. **VIOLENT**
- He took his family and moved to Canada to escape the _____ in his country. **POOR**



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Do you know about any famous robberies? What happened?
- What can be done to prevent crime?

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. The incident took place in the afternoon.		
2. The incident took place at the National Bank.		
3. The robbers were in their 30s.		
4. The security guard tried to stop the robbers.		
5. The robbers managed to run away.		



B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- Who does the speaker congratulate?
 - the police force for raising awareness of crime prevention
 - the organisers of the meeting for giving such good speeches
 - members of a neighbourhood watch scheme for reducing crime
- What should those intending to go on holiday do?
 - They must put all valuables in a safe.
 - They should let passers-by know that they are leaving.
 - They should pack their car where others cannot see them.
- What does the speaker advise people to do?
 - leave their keys to a neighbour
 - cancel all their deliveries
 - mow their lawn before they leave
- What does the speaker say is an ideal hiding place for a thief?
 - an outdoor building
 - a garden
 - a nearby shop
- When do most break-ins happen?
 - during the day
 - at night
 - when people are away

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What does your local community do to help people in need?
- How could your school raise money for a special cause?



POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Which basic human rights can you name?
- Do you think it is necessary to have international organisations that deal with human rights? Why? / Why not?

A Read the texts below. Match questions (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

1

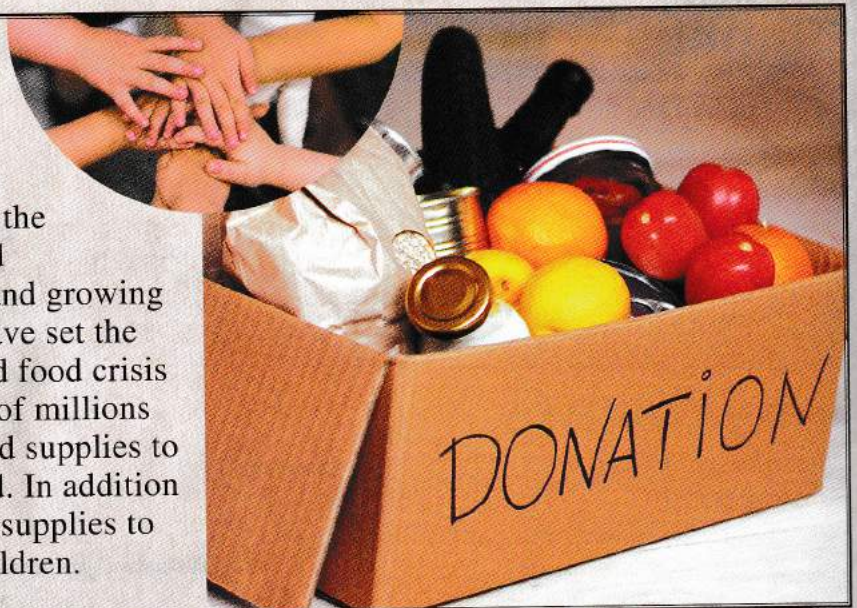
Water Rights

Action is urgently needed to ensure that no child in the developing world is denied access to clean water and sanitation. We are an organisation that supports projects that improve quality of life by developing local drinking-water resources, sanitation facilities and hygiene education programmes.

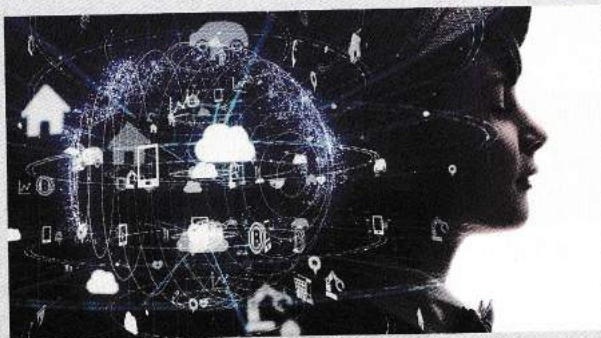
2

EQUAL CHILDREN

Millions of families across the globe are struggling to feed themselves. Rising prices and growing environmental problems have set the conditions for a widespread food crisis that will threaten the lives of millions of children. We collect food supplies to ship wherever there is need. In addition to that, we collect medical supplies to ensure better health for children.



3



Planning the future

Our vision is to help children achieve their goals in life. We work with governments, big companies and people who simply want to offer their time and energy to make sure no child is left behind. No child should be denied the opportunity to study and broaden their horizons.

4

TRADE NOT AID

Our aim is to help people who are living in isolated conditions and in poverty gain access to the outside world in order to sell their products. We believe that this is the only way to improve people's living conditions.



5

Human Rights

Are you between 10 and 18 years of age and interested in human rights? European Human Action (EHA), the organisation created to protect the freedom of European citizens, is celebrating its three-year anniversary by holding a competition that calls on young people to answer the following question:

'What can we do to improve the protection of human rights in Europe?' Young people from all European member states are invited to answer the question in 200 words or less. All entries should be e-mailed to eha@eha-rights.org with the words 'Essay Competition' in the subject line. They should be submitted no later than 20th November.



Which of the organisations _____?

- A. opens new markets to producers ☐
- B. aims at providing education to children ☐
- C. encourages people to save water ☐
- D. offers a chance to take part in a contest ☐
- E. aims at protecting the environment ☐
- F. sells products made by children ☐
- G. caters for various needs of poor children ☐
- H. focuses on the problem of water supply ☐

B Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

INTERNET USERS

BEWARE



We depend on computers for a great many things. You can do your shopping online, chat or make calls to friends and family. You probably even use the Internet to do your banking and pay bills. But just how careful are you?

Identity theft is nothing new. Before the Internet, criminals stole ID cards and pretended to be other people in order to withdraw money from bank accounts, take out bank loans or commit other crimes. So, (1) _____, they reported it to the police. Nowadays, however, cybercriminals can steal your identity online without warning. You may be a victim (2) _____!

Phishing is one of the oldest methods used in cybercrime. It often involves emails (3) _____, or offer you money and prizes. Some of these emails ask you to respond and confirm your personal information; others include a link to a website (4) _____. As a result, the sender can read your emails, your bank account information and credit card numbers and observe your online activities. Suddenly, they know everything about you.

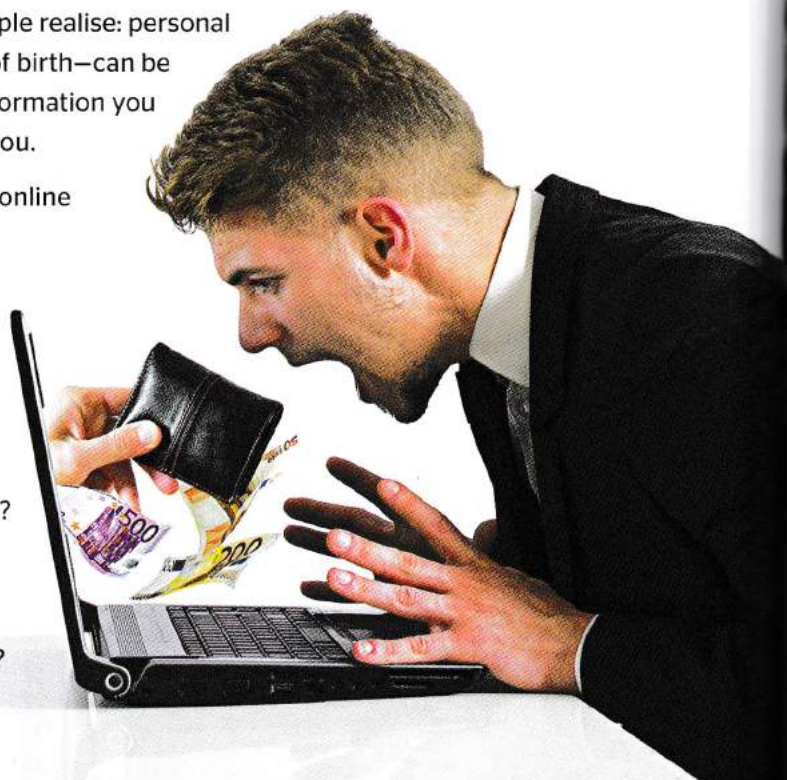
Internet scam analysts and statisticians say (5) _____ for credit card scams. And it's easier than a lot of people realise: personal information—names, addresses and dates of birth—can be obtained on public record sites, and any information you put online, (6) _____, can be used against you.

So, be aware of what information you have online and who might be watching!

- A. and not even be aware of what has happened
- B. that identity theft is most commonly used
- C. when they did that
- D. which secretly downloads a program onto your computer
- E. it has a hidden camera
- F. no matter how unimportant it may seem
- G. as soon as someone lost their purse or wallet
- H. that warn you about problems with your bank account

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- How should criminals pay for breaking the law?
- What should be done with young people who commit minor crimes?
- How effective are alternative means of punishment such as community service? Why?



Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

THE CRISIS IN THE STREETS

An increasing number of people around the world are sleeping on the streets. This increase has a lot to do with the recent global (1) ____ crisis. Besides pushing those who are already poor over the edge, the crisis also made it very difficult for a large percentage of middle-class families to make ends (2) ____.

Once people end up on the streets, it is extremely difficult for them to fulfil even basic needs, such as food, warmth, hygiene and somewhere to sleep. Most (3) ____ people head for hostels or night shelters. These serve as a temporary solution for those fortunate enough to find a place. However, the large demand means that there is not enough space to help everyone facing this problem.

The solution does not, however, lie in building more hostels. To deal with this problem and fight social (4) ____, these people need to be provided with support, skills and opportunities to help them find lasting solutions. FEANTSA, which is the only major European network that focuses exclusively on homelessness, does research and aims to make (5) ____ for changes that will genuinely make a difference.



- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. economy | B. economic | C. economical | D. economics |
| 2. A. meet | B. join | C. touch | D. come |
| 3. A. runaway | B. guilty | C. innocent | D. homeless |
| 4. A. injustice | B. judgement | C. violence | D. vandalism |
| 5. A. elections | B. proposals | C. sentences | D. justifications |

REAL-LIFE STORIES



Becky is volunteering in a charity shop. Actually, she is one of the 23,000 volunteers that run Oxfam's charity shops in the UK. How has volunteering changed Becky's life?

Becky was a medical student. However, she wasn't happy with the course she (6) _____. When she decided to leave university, she had to find something to do with her time. Becky (7) _____ her local Oxfam shop, so she just went in and asked if (8) _____ volunteer.

Becky is now in charge of the shop's book department. She said that volunteering (9) _____ her the structure she needed to get through a hard time in her life. At the same time, she's very pleased about how her work positively affects the world by supporting Oxfam's projects.

Becky's story teaches us that becoming active members of (10) _____ has multiple benefits. Even the smallest contribution to a good cause can help make a difference in the world, as well as in our personal lives.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 6. A. chose | B. chooses | C. has chosen | D. had chosen |
| 7. A. have always liked | B. did always like | C. had always liked | D. always likes |
| 8. A. could she | B. she could | C. she can | D. was she able to |
| 9. A. gave | B. give | C. given | D. have given |
| 10. A. social | B. socialise | C. society | D. socially |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What do you think is the main reason for juvenile delinquency?
- What do you think causes violence in schools?
- How serious is the destruction of private property? Why?

A Read the following article and email to the editor. Then complete the gaps in the email using the words in the box.



NEWS ONLINE

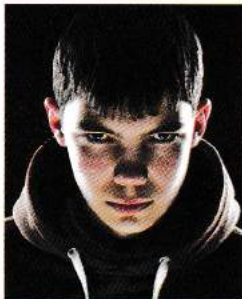
WORLD BUSINESS POLITICS WEATHER MARKET HEALTH SCIENCE TECH HOBBY MORE

Thursday, 2 April 2020

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY ON THE RISE

By John Lawson

The National Statistical Service (NSS) reports that the number of juvenile criminals has doubled in the last four years to 75,000 offenders. Commenting on the annual report, NSS chief Tony Klymenko said the results show a need for more police and surveillance, and tougher sentences. He also said that...



J

Judith Monroe

From: Judith Monroe

social root proposals active opportunity
points delinquency punishes express society

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to (1) _____ my opinion about John Lawson's article on juvenile delinquents, which I saw in yesterday's online newspaper.

I feel that Mr Klymenko's (2) _____ for 'more police and surveillance, and tougher sentences' do not provide a real solution to juvenile delinquency. The way I see it, children today are victims of various (3) _____ problems. These problems include lack of parental guidance, poverty, violence in the home or at school, substance abuse and peer pressure. To my mind, these are the reasons for (4) _____.

To prevent it, we need to get to the (5) _____ of the problem. This involves improving the way children interact with their families and (6) _____. A community in which older members take a(n) (7) _____ interest in younger members and provide them with support and guidance is obviously better than one that merely (8) _____ them when they lose their way.

Thank you for giving me this (9) _____ to share my opinion. I look forward to reading other readers' (10) _____ of view.

Yours faithfully,

Judith Monroe

B Complete the gaps in the email using the linking words/phrases in the box. There are some words/phrases which you do not need to use.

in addition
in my opinion
because of
as
nevertheless
second
in comparison
such as
first and foremost
first
it seems to
for example

C Which words or phrases in the box above are used to:

1. express opinion?
2. list points?
3. express contrast?
4. give the reason?
5. give an example?

D You have read an article in an online newspaper about acts of vandalism against private and public property, and want to write a letter to the editor expressing your opinion on the subject.

Write an email to the editor of the online newspaper in which you

- mention what you think is the cause of the problem
- refer to a possible solution and provide justification
- say that you hope to read other people's opinions on the issue.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

J

Jack Grey

From: Jack Grey

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing in connection with your recent series of articles on juvenile delinquency. I would like to focus on violence at schools.

(1) _____, it seems to me that there are two reasons for school violence. The (2) _____ is the psychological problems of young people who cannot cope with their negative emotions. The (3) _____ reason is young people's indifference towards aggressive behaviour.

(4) _____, a lot can be done to prevent violence.

(5) _____, there should be special awareness-raising programmes for young people, (6) _____ these would inform them about the different forms of violence and teach them skills to help them cope with their feelings.

(7) _____, the local government should have a special helpline for victims of violence. (8) _____ the anonymity provided by the helpline, young people are more likely to reach out for help.

Thank you for your time. I appreciate being given the chance to share my views, and I look forward to hearing what other readers have to say about this issue.

Yours faithfully,

Jack Grey

Exam Tip

When writing an email/letter expressing your opinion:

- write in an appropriate style.
- state your opinion clearly.
- justify your point of view.
- make relevant suggestions.
- say why your suggestions could make a difference.
- use linking words/phrases.
- do not be aggressive or use offensive language.

Unit 15: Knowledge of English-speaking countries

Key Vocabulary 44

The United Kingdom Об'єднане Королівство

the UK = United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (consists of England, Wales, Scotland & Northern Ireland)
Об'єднане Королівство Великої Британії та Північної Ірландії (складається з Англії, Шотландії та Уельсу)

Great Britain Велика Британія
the Union Jack назва прапора Об'єднаного Королівства

city capitals столиці

Belfast Белфаст (столиця Північної Ірландії)

Cardiff Кардіфф (столиця Уельсу)

Edinburgh Единбург (столиця Шотландії)

London Лондон (столиця Англії)

patron saints святі покровителі

St Andrew св. Андрій (покровитель Шотландії)

St David св. Давид (покровитель Уельсу)

St George св. Георгій (покровитель Англії)

St Patrick св. Патрік (покровитель Ірландії)

places to see/visit in London місця, які можна побачити/відвідати в Лондоні

the Tower of London
Лондонський Тауер

Buckingham Palace
Букінгемський палац

Hyde Park Гайд-парк (парк у Лондоні)

Westminster Abbey
Вестмінстерське абатство

Big Ben Біг-Бен (популярна туристична назва годинникової вежі Вестмінстерського палацу)

the Tate Gallery of Modern Art
Галерея сучасного мистецтва Тейт

Madame Tussauds Wax Figures Museum Музей воскових фігур
Мадам Тюссо

The British Museum Британський Музей

Soho Сохо (район французьких та італійських ресторанів у Лондоні)

10 Downing Street Даунінг-стріт
10 (офіційна резиденція голови уряду в Великій Британії)

other places to see/visit in the UK інші місця, які можна побачити/відвідати у Великобританії

Loch Ness озеро у Шотландії
Лох-Несс

Stonehenge Стоунхендж

festivals and holidays фестивалі та свята

St Patrick's Day (17th March) День св. Патріка (17 березня)

Pancake Day / Shrove Tuesday
День млинців / Масляний вівторок

Guy Fawkes Night / Bonfire Night (5th November) Ніч Гая Фокса або Ніч багать (5 листопада)

Halloween / All Hallow's Eve (31st October) Гелловін або «Вечір всіх святих» (31 жовтня)

Edinburgh Festival Единбурзький фестиваль

The United States Сполучені Штати Америки

the Stars and Stripes / Old Glory державний прапор США

Washington DC столиця Вашингтон

the Civil War (1861-1865)
Громадянська війна (1861-1865)

the Capitol Building in Washington DC Капітолій (місцеперебування Конгресу США на Капітолійському пагорбі в Вашингтоні, центр округу Колумбія.)

the White House Білий Дім (особиста канцелярія президента США)

places to see/visit in New York місця, які можна побачити/відвідати в Нью-Йорку

Madison Square Garden Медісон-сквер-гарден (спортивний комплекс у Нью-Йорку (США))

Empire State Building Емпайр-стейт-білдинг (хмарочос в Нью-Йорку)

The Statue of Liberty Статуя Свободи

Wall Street Волл-стріт

Broadway Бродвей

Fifth Avenue П'ята Авеню

the Museum of Modern Art Музей модерного мистецтва (музей в Нью-Йорку)

other places to see/visit in the USA інші місця для відвідування в США

the Grand Canyon Великий каньйон

Yellowstone National Park
Єллоустонський національний парк

Great Salt Lake Велике Солоне Озеро

festivals and holidays in the USA фестивалі та свята в США

Thanksgiving Day (the 4th Thursday of November) День Подяки (останній четвер листопада)

Independence Day (4th July) День Незалежності (4 липня)

Halloween Гелловін

Memorial Day (the last Monday of May) День пам'яті (останній понеділок травня)

Columbus Day (the second Monday of October) День Колумба (2 понеділок жовтня)

Other English-speaking countries

Інші англомовні країни

Australia Австралія
 Canberra Канберра (столиця Австралії)
 Canada Канада
 Ottawa Оттава (столиця Канади)
 Ireland Ірландія
 Dublin Дублін (столиця Ірландії)
 New Zealand Нова Зеландія
 Wellington Веллінгтон (столиця Нової Зеландії)
 South Africa Південна Африка
 Cape Town Кейптаун (столиця ПАР)

EU Європейський Союз

bilingual education двомовне навчання
 Comenius programme програма Коменіус (програма обміну школярами, розроблена ЄС)
 e-learning education навчання онлайн
 Erasmus programme Програма Еразмус (програма обміну студентами та викладачами між університетами в країнах ЄС)
 e-twinning eTwinning – це навчальна програма Європейської Комісії, започаткована в 2005 р. з метою розвитку співпраці європейських шкіл.
 Youth in Action programme програма "Молодь в дії"

Verbs with prepositions

Дієслова з прийменниками

believe in вірити в
 choose from/between обирати з/між
 compare with/to порівнювати з
 cooperate with співпрацювати з
 decide on приймати рішення щодо
 involve in залучати до
 report on доповідати про
 translate from/into перекладати з/на

Adjectives with prepositions

Прикметники з прийменниками

accustomed to звикнути до
 concerned about/for занепокоєний чимось
 equal to рівний чомусь
 famous for відомий чимось
 proud of пишатись чимось
 similar to подібний до

British English vs American English

British English

American English

autumn	fall
bill	check (at a restaurant)
chemist's	pharmacy
chips	French fries
cinema	movie theater
city centre	downtown
cooker	stove / oven
crisps	potato chips
film	movie
flat	apartment
flatmate	roommate
football	soccer
fridge	refrigerator
garden	yard
ground floor	first floor
holiday	vacation
jumper	sweater
lift	elevator
lorry	truck
mobile phone	cell phone
petrol	gas
primary school	elementary school
railway station	train station
rubbish	garbage / trash
secondary school	high school
shop	store
shop assistant	salesperson
surname	last name
trainers	sneakers
trousers	pants
TV/radio programme	TV/radio show
underground	subway

Complete the sentences with the correct word(s).

1. The capital city of Scotland is _____.
2. The patron saint of Ireland is _____.
3. One of the most important American holidays that is celebrated on the fourth Thursday of November is called _____.
4. _____ is a geographical area that consists of England, Wales and Scotland.
5. The American flag is known as _____ or _____.
6. The official home of the American president is _____.
7. The financial district in New York is called _____.
8. _____ is the capital city of the Republic of Ireland.
9. Education that involves the teaching of the school syllabus in two languages is called _____.
10. The _____ is a symbol of freedom and was the first sight to be seen by people who went to the USA looking for a better life.

Work in pairs.

Student A You work in a travel agency in Sydney, Australia. Convince your customer that the best place for a two-week holiday is the USA. Give the customer as much information about this country as you can.

Student B You are a customer in a travel agency in Sydney, Australia. You would like to go abroad for a two-week holiday. You haven't yet decided where to go. Talk to the travel agent and ask him or her to help you choose the right place for you. Explain that money is not a problem. Ask the travel agent to tell you as much as possible about places that are worth seeing/visiting.

When you have finished, exchange roles (Student A becomes Student B and vice versa).

Student A You work in a travel agency in Sydney. Convince your customer that the best place for a two-week holiday is Great Britain. Give the customer as much information about this country as you can.

Student B You are a customer in a travel agency in Sydney, Australia. You would like to go abroad for a two-week holiday. You haven't yet decided where to go. Talk to the travel agent and ask him or her to help you choose the right place for you. Explain that money is not a problem. Ask the travel agent to tell you as much as possible about places that are worth seeing/visiting.

Are the following sentences true or false? Write T (True) or F (False) next to the sentences.

1. Another name for Shrove Tuesday is Pancake Day.
2. 10 Downing Street is in Washington DC.
3. St Patrick's Day is celebrated on the same day as Bonfire Night.
4. Madison Square Garden is the place in San Francisco where important sports events are held.
5. The Statue of Liberty is a present that France gave to the Americans in 1886.
6. The Civil War was a war between the East and the West.
7. Bonfire Night is celebrated by the British on 5th November.
8. The capital of the USA is Washington DC.

□ □ □ □ □ □ □

D Choose A, B or C to complete the sentences.

1. The American Civil War ended in _____.
A. 1861
B. 1865
C. 1886
2. Guy Fawkes Night is also called _____.
A. Burns Night
B. Burning Night
C. Bonfire Night
3. The name of the street in New York that is closely associated with the theatre is _____.
A. Wall Street
B. Broadway
C. Fifth Avenue
4. The British national flag is called _____.
A. Old Glory
B. the Union Jack
C. the Red Dragon
5. Yellowstone is _____.
A. a big building
B. a festival
C. a national park



E Work with the class divided into two groups. Each student is to think of at least one question on British or American culture. Set a time limit (e.g. 10 minutes) to think of and write down your group's questions. Each group must have 10 questions. Make sure you and your group members can answer those questions yourselves! When both groups are ready, ask the other group your questions, giving a point for each correct answer. Give them the correct answer if necessary. The group with the most points wins!

F Which country are the following associated with? Put the names in the box under the appropriate country.


 Wall Street
 Buckingham Palace
 Madison Square Garden
 Yellowstone


 Big Ben
 Westminster Abbey
 Loch Ness
 Hyde Park


 the Tate Gallery of Modern Art
 the Museum of Modern Art
 the Capitol Building
 Broadway


 Great Salt Lake
 Stonehenge

the UK	the USA







PRE-LISTENING TASK

- Who are your favourite British and American writers? Why do you like them?
- Have you ever been to Scotland? Did you enjoy it? / Would you like to go there?
- What do you know about this country?

A Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



	T	F
1. Agatha Christie was born at the beginning of the 20th century.		
2. She completed part of her education abroad.		
3. She used her experience of working in a pharmacy in her writing.		
4. Hercule Poirot and Miss Jane Marple are very similar characters.		
5. Some of her books were published under a different name.		

B Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- What is Ben Nevis?
 - It is Scotland's deepest valley.
 - It is Scotland's highest mountain.
 - It is Scotland's biggest island.
- How many islands are there in Scotland?
 - 1,343
 - 780
 - 18
- What is Loch Ness?
 - a monster
 - an island
 - a lake
- What is the climate in western Scotland like?
 - wet and mild
 - dry and cold
 - cool and snowy
- Where can you find seals?
 - in the lakes
 - in the north
 - on the coast

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Which English-speaking countries would you like to visit? Why?
- What would you like to see in London / New York? Why?



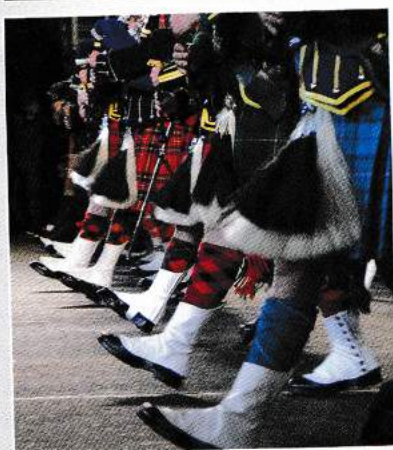
POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- What festivals do you know of? Where are they held?
- Do you like going to museums when you are abroad? Why? / Why not?

A Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

The Edinburgh International Festival

The Edinburgh International Festival (EIF) takes place every year in August and September. It started in 1947, and it soon became one of (1) _____ in the world. It presents theatre, music, dance and opera performed by Scottish and international companies and artists.



The festival seeks to promote (2) _____ in an innovative way. It also presents international culture to Scottish audiences and (3) _____. The Festival Director is responsible for the programme and for inviting the artists who are going to perform.

Five other festivals have developed around the EIF over the years. The most important one is the Edinburgh Festival Fringe, which presents performances of (4) _____ with no selection policy. The other four festivals are the Edinburgh Military Tattoo, the Edinburgh Film Festival, the Edinburgh Jazz Festival and the Edinburgh Book Festival, which is held every two years.

The EIF now takes place in The Hub, (5) _____ and renovated. It opened in its current role in July 1999 and includes a café, a ticket centre, a shop and educational facilities.

The Hub is a permanent focus for the festival, as it houses Festival Insights, a year-round programme of lectures, courses and workshops (6) _____. However, the facilities are used for other purposes, too. The Main Hall can be hired for wedding receptions, fashion shows or choir rehearsals. The Dunard Library is used for lectures, multimedia presentations, seminars and for committee meetings of the Scottish Parliament.

Drawing more than a million people to the city from all over the world, Edinburgh's various festivals are very important to the Scottish economy. They create more than 6,000 jobs and generate over £300 million of spending every year.

- A. arts of a high standard
- B. the most important celebrations of the arts
- C. the other festivals in Edinburgh
- D. featuring Scottish and international artists
- E. Scottish culture to international audiences
- F. a Victorian building which was redesigned
- G. a festival which is organised
- H. theatre, world music, dance and stand-up comedy



B Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

Shop till you drop

Find your way through New York's department stores, shops and markets.



1 Fifth Avenue

If you aren't worried about your credit card bill, Fifth Avenue is the place for you. In the world's most famous shopping district you'll find so many shops—from designer label boutiques to antique shops—that you won't know where to begin. If you like department stores, visit Saks Fifth Avenue at 49th Street. Those who prefer specialised high-fashion boutiques can choose from Prada, Louis Vuitton, Tiffany & Co., and many more, all within just a few blocks.

2 Manhattan Mall

Manhattan Mall (on Sixth Avenue and 33rd Street) is only one block away from the Empire State Building. It has 80 shops on nine floors—including Sterns Department Store—and New York's largest food court. You can also watch performances of music and drama from different parts of the world every day.

3 Green Flea Indoor and Outdoor Markets

The ideal place to spend a Sunday morning. You'll find an unbelievable selection of clothes, jewellery, antiques, CDs, new and second-hand books, as well as flowers, fresh fruit and vegetables.

4 Orchard Street

Thousands of shoppers from all over the world visit the historic Orchard Street Bargain District in Lower Manhattan. Look for the best bargains in clothes, shoes, leather goods, jewellery, furniture and lots more.

5 South Street Seaport

The area's buildings, dating from the 19th and early 20th centuries, have been changed into galleries, boutiques and shops. In the Fulton Market Building you'll find the famous Fulton Fish Market, where selling begins at 5 a.m.! There are also over 100 cafés and restaurants, so your only problem will be deciding where to have lunch.

Which of the places _____?

- A. sells used goods
- B. is an area where you can find cheap things
- C. is particularly suitable for children
- D. is open for business 24/7
- E. is an expensive shopping area
- F. sells only food
- G. is open very early in the morning
- H. is near a famous tourist attraction

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Would you like to attend the Edinburgh International Festival? Why? / Why not?
- When you are learning a foreign language, is it important to know the culture and history of the country/ies where it is spoken? Why? / Why not?

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

May Day in Wales

Wales is famous for many traditions that date back centuries. May Day was once considered to be one of the most important celebrations, as it celebrated the start of summer. In the past, the lighting of fires was associated with May Eve, the day before May Day. The fires would be (1) _____ by nine men chosen from the village. These men would empty their pockets, making sure that there was neither money (2) _____ metal in them. They would then go and collect sticks that had fallen from nine different kinds of tree and bring them back to the village, where one of the nine would light the fire. The ritual was meant to protect the village's animals from disease.

May Day was an opportunity for (3) _____ socialising and having fun after the long, often hard winter. The maypole was an important part of the Welsh May Day tradition. In southern parts of the country, people (4) _____ the pole painted in different colours and then danced around it, covering it in ribbons as they went.

May Day festivities are still popular in Wales, and it's common for (5) _____ of a village's residents to take part in the singing and the dancing.



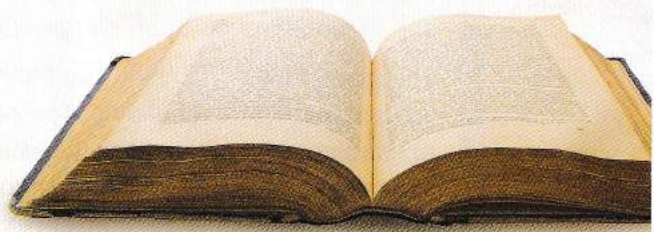
- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. build | B. building | C. built | D. to build |
| 2. A. nor | B. and | C. neither | D. either |
| 3. A. either | B. or | C. and | D. both |
| 4. A. had | B. get | C. be | D. put |
| 5. A. Both | B. Either | C. None | D. All |

The Oxford English Dictionary

We are so (6) _____ looking words up in a dictionary that we rarely ask ourselves how they got there in the first place.

The Oxford English Dictionary (OED) started out in 1857 as a project that aimed to include every single word written in the English language since the 12th century. The project's organisers were interested (7) _____ showing the historical development of each word: when it first appeared and how its meaning had changed over time. Thousands of volunteer readers from all over the English-speaking world got (8) _____ in the project. With their help the dictionary was completed seventy-one years later, in 1928.

Today it includes more than 600,000 words and phrases and continues to grow, with the help of digital technology. Because language changes along with society, people continue to (9) _____ on new words and changes in meaning. The editors of the OED must then (10) _____ which ones to include—but no word is ever taken out.



- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 6. A. famous for | B. accustomed to | C. bored with | D. proud of |
| 7. A. in | B. over | C. about | D. for |
| 8. A. confused | B. connected | C. mixed up | D. involved |
| 9. A. call | B. post | C. report | D. publish |
| 10. A. compare | B. decide | C. believe | D. mark |

POINTS FOR DISCUSSION

- Have you ever been to an English-speaking country? If yes, when and where was it? What sights did you see? Which did you like the most?
- If no, would you like to visit an English-speaking country? Why / Why not?

A Read the emails carefully and circle the correct words in the second email. Then answer the questions.

Hi Anna,

I thought I'd drop you a line since I haven't heard from you in a long time. How are you keeping? The last time we spoke you said that you were going to go to London. Well, did you? And if so, how was it? As for me, I've been really busy studying for my exams. When they are over, I'm going to take a nice long holiday to relax. Hope to hear from you soon.

Regards,

Maria

Hi Maria,

Sorry for not writing earlier but when I got back from London, I had lots of work to catch up on.

Anyway, London was amazing! While there, I got to see most of the famous (1) **capitals / landmarks** I had heard so much about. I visited the Palace of Westminster, the London Eye and the (2) **Pillar / Tower** of London. I also saw Buckingham Palace from (3) **up close / closely** and managed to be there on time for the Changing of the Guard (4) **ceremony / party**.

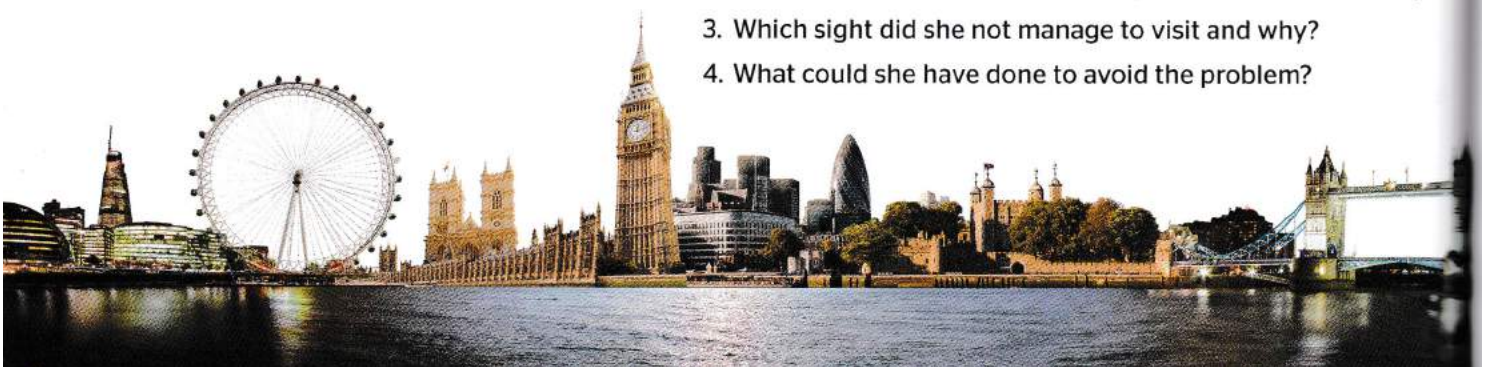
The place I liked the most was the Natural History Museum, which is (5) **housed / kept** in a beautiful Victorian building. You can see all kinds of dinosaurs there! I was really looking forwards to visiting Madame Tussauds, too, but the (6) **bookings / queues** were too long! I found out later that you can get in faster if you book online, and you also get a 25% (7) **discount / sale**.

Anyway, I'll be visiting London again really soon, so I'll do the rest of the (8) **views / sights** then. Maybe we'll even go together next time. What do you say?

Love,

Anna

1. Which landmarks did Anna visit?
2. Which sight made the greatest impression on her and why?
3. Which sight did she not manage to visit and why?
4. What could she have done to avoid the problem?

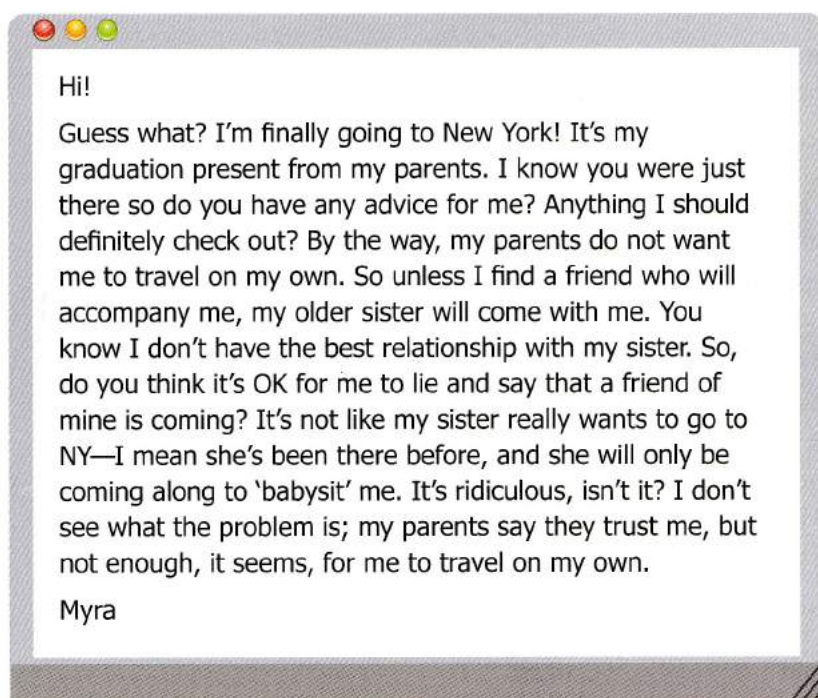


B Complete the sentences with the names of the landmarks given in the box.

Broadway	Empire State Building	Grand Canyon	Loch Ness
Statue of Liberty	Stonehenge	Madame Tussauds	Tate Gallery

- While I was in London, I visited _____, which is a museum filled with wax figures of famous people.
- While we were in London, we took a day trip to _____. It's a really old monument that experts think was used for religious reasons or to estimate time.
- As the four of us were driving through the US, we stopped at the _____—a natural site that takes your breath away with the size and colour of its landscape.
- On our New York trip, Lucy and I booked tickets to watch *Cats* on _____. It turned out to be the best musical we have ever seen!
- We drove from one beautiful Scottish lake to the next and even stopped at _____ to see if the monster was there. Sadly, it wasn't!
- I actually got to see the _____ from up close. Did you know that it was a gift to the United States from the people of France and that it represents the Roman goddess of freedom?
- We spent nearly a day at the London _____. I have to admit I saw some beautiful works of art there.
- On our first day in New York we went up the _____, which is 103 storeys high, to get a view of the whole city before visiting other sights.

C You received the following email from your friend, Myra.



Write a reply to your friend Myra in which you

- suggest sights to see
- say what you think about her lying to her parents
- say what you would do in her situation.

Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

Exam Tip

In the exam:

- read the instructions and the set of points carefully.
- choose the appropriate style and level of formality.
- respond to all the points in the notes.
- use paragraphs to group related pieces of information when writing an email/letter.
- use appropriate expressions to begin and end your email/letter.
- don't just refer to the points; add relevant comments and/or information.
- use appropriate phrases/structures to give information, give advice, ask for advice, recommend a course of action, turn down an invitation, etc.
- use linking words/phrases to achieve cohesion and coherence.

Revision 11–15

A Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- The heavy ____ of rain caught us by surprise and we had no umbrellas to keep us from getting wet.
A. sleet B. drizzle C. downpour
- My car battery is ____; I need to recharge it.
A. dead B. charged C. shut
- Did you read the document that I ____ to the email I sent you?
A. connected B. joined C. attached
- He is famous for his interesting photographs of skyscrapers, traffic and other parts of the ____ landscape.
A. rocky B. rural C. urban
- Didn't you know that it is ____ the law to steal?
A. against B. over C. under
- I really hate getting ____ from advertisers that fill up my mailbox!
A. spam B. instant messages C. updates
- The number of young people who ____ serious crimes has risen.
A. do B. arrest C. commit
- Every year she gets vaccinated ____ the flu.
A. for B. from C. against
- One of the strengths of democracy as a political ____ is that it gives more power to the people.
A. government B. party C. system
- The ____ broke into my house through the window and stole my jewellery.
A. shoplifter B. mugger C. burglar

B Choose the correct answer (A, B or C).

- She wore a jacket ____ the weather was hot.
A. although B. in spite of C. however
- Don't you think it's time you ____ your room?
A. clean B. will clean C. cleaned
- Joanna ____ to work by her boss even though it was her day off.
A. called B. was called C. was calling
- I would definitely buy you a brand new car if I ____ a millionaire.
A. were B. will be C. would be
- Have you seen my keys? They're neither in my bag ____ in my pockets.
A. and B. or C. nor
- When I spoke to Tony yesterday, he said he ____ definitely be here today.
A. will B. would C. must
- They are working hard on a very important project and ____ be disturbed.
A. must B. mustn't C. don't have to
- ____ of the fifteen students in my English class like classical music. We all find it boring!
A. Neither B. All C. None
- I am ____ tired that I am finding it hard to keep my eyes open.
A. such B. so C. very
- ____ delicious this cake is! You are really a wonderful cook.
A. How B. What C. What a

C Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Office workout

If you are one of those people who are tired of sitting in front of a desk all day long but don't have any other option, there is encouraging news for you. A special kind of treadmill has now been designed with a built-in desk that allows you to walk at a slow but comfortable 3.2 km/h. You (1) _____ 150 calories per hour while you are busily typing away on your computer.

The (2) _____ aims to give people who are trapped behind their desks, whether for work or for studies, a chance to have a healthier life. It has been proven that people who rarely exercise (3) _____ weight more easily and are more likely to suffer from a variety of health problems. These include higher blood (4) _____, diabetes, some cancers and depression.

With a treadmill desk, though, you can exercise your muscles and improve the way you stand, all while getting work done. And if that's not enough to convince you, walking is also an effective (5) _____ for stress.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. burn | B. use | C. lose | D. avoid |
| 2. A. invention | B. diet | C. discovery | D. exercise |
| 3. A. put | B. grow | C. gain | D. earn |
| 4. A. condition | B. pressure | C. tension | D. appetite |
| 5. A. effect | B. infection | C. addiction | D. treatment |

Too much Internet harms the environment

Did you know that every time you upload a picture or watch a video online, a small amount of carbon dioxide (6) _____? Carbon dioxide (CO₂) is one of the greenhouse gases that cause global warming. Nowadays, (7) _____ many people use the Internet (and the electricity that powers it) that the greenhouse gas emissions from the use of electronic devices and wireless networks are increasing rapidly.

But we should neither stop using search engines (8) _____ throw away our computers. There are so many things we can do (9) _____ reduce the amount of CO₂ for which we are responsible. For example, we shouldn't leave our devices plugged in when we aren't using them. If we all (10) _____ an effort to become informed and change our habits, then we could help slow down the pace of global warming.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|----------------|
| 6. A. is emitted | B. emits | C. emitted | D. is emitting |
| 7. A. such a | B. so | C. such | D. so that |
| 8. A. or | B. nor | C. neither | D. none |
| 9. A. due to | B. so as | C. so that | D. in order to |
| 10. A. would make | B. had made | C. made | D. have made |

Task 1

Listen to the speakers. For questions (1-6) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



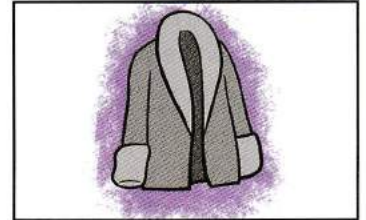
1. Which coat is too small?



A

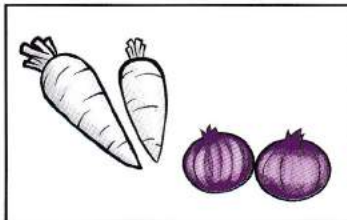


B

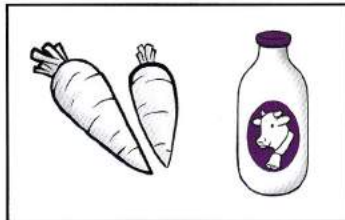


C

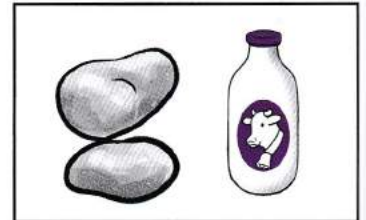
2. What's in the fridge?



A



B



C

3. What's next to the art gallery?



A



B



C

4. When did the woman get her teaching qualification?

- A. on Friday
- B. on Saturday
- C. on Monday

5. What did the woman have to eat?

- A. pasta with chicken
- B. a salad
- C. a pizza

6. Where did the woman go first?

- A. to the train station
- B. to a friend's house
- C. to the shops

Task 2

Listen to the text. For statements (1-5) choose T if the statement is true according to the text and F if it is false.



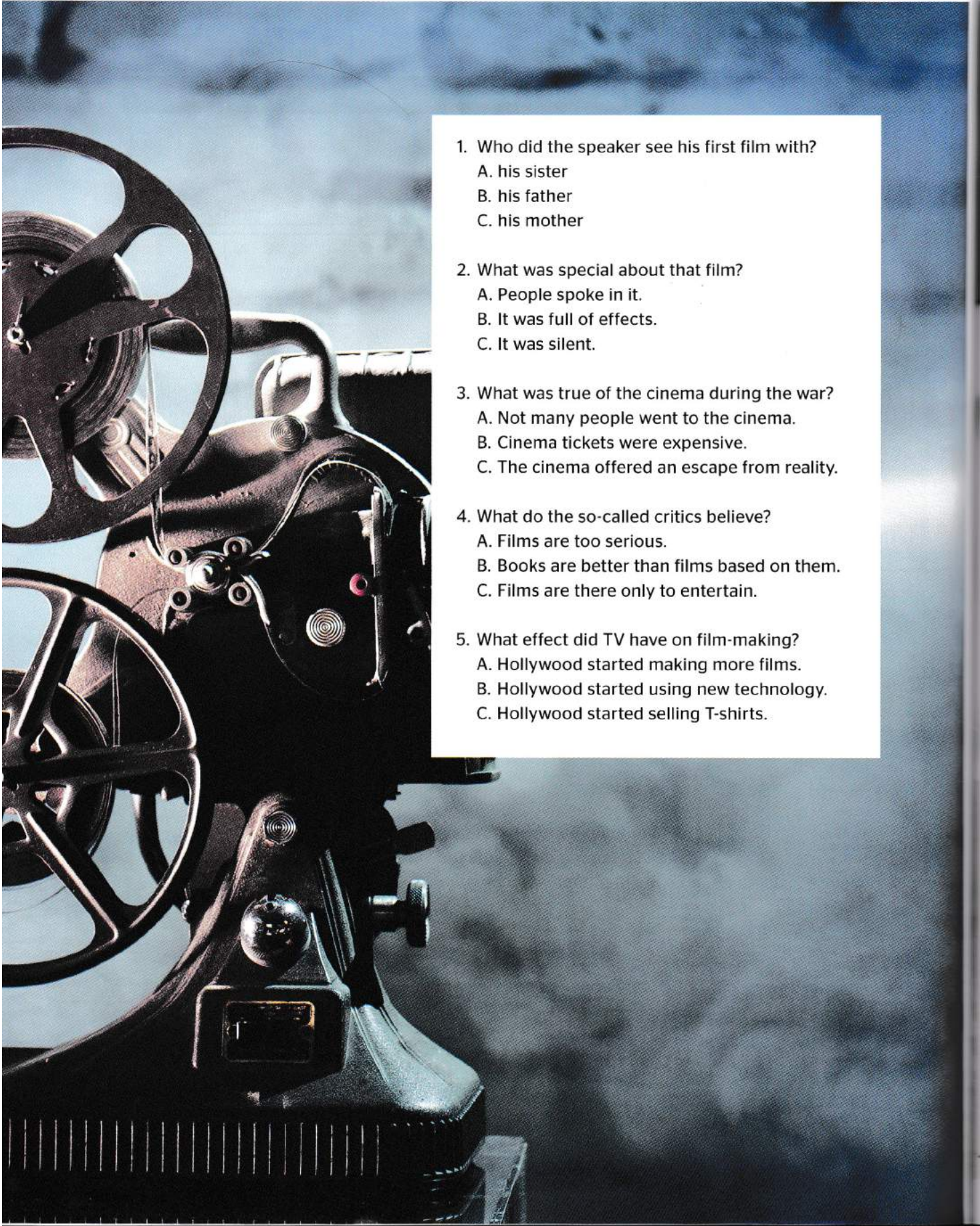
	T	F
1. Dr Stern is happy to help educate the public.		
2. Mountain glaciers are about 75 per cent smaller than they used to be.		
3. The hottest year ever recorded was in the late 20th century.		
4. The UK is well equipped to deal with heat waves.		
5. 600 years ago the global temperature dramatically increased.		



Task 3

Listen to the text. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B or C).



- 
1. Who did the speaker see his first film with?
A. his sister
B. his father
C. his mother
 2. What was special about that film?
A. People spoke in it.
B. It was full of effects.
C. It was silent.
 3. What was true of the cinema during the war?
A. Not many people went to the cinema.
B. Cinema tickets were expensive.
C. The cinema offered an escape from reality.
 4. What do the so-called critics believe?
A. Films are too serious.
B. Books are better than films based on them.
C. Films are there only to entertain.
 5. What effect did TV have on film-making?
A. Hollywood started making more films.
B. Hollywood started using new technology.
C. Hollywood started selling T-shirts.

Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-5). There are three choices you do not need to use.

1

Whether you want to relax, have a workout or get in touch with your spiritual side, there is a yoga class to suit you. You should not worry if you are not in good shape or if you lack flexibility. We'll find the right class for you, whatever your body type or temperament is.

3

Have some free time?
Looking for something to do?
Langdale Youth Centre is offering
free photography classes.
You don't need any experience,
and we have some spare cameras
if you don't have your own.
Classes are on Thursdays at
6 p.m. at the Youth Centre,
37 Langdale Road.
All are welcome!

5

**Tuesdays and Thursdays, 6-7.30 p.m. at
The Dance Studio, 4 Pike Street.**

2

You can choose from over 50 brands, with everything you need from tracksuits and trainers to food supplements and sports equipment. Visit our cafeteria on the second floor to relax and enjoy the view.

4

Anyone interested in acting, come to the after-school drama club. It meets on Wednesdays at 5.30 p.m. in the main hall. We are going to put on a performance of *Romeo and Juliet* at the end of the term. We also need people for stage design and costumes. First meeting is this Wednesday and in 3 weeks, after some workshops, we will audition for the play. Minimal registration fee for full membership.

- A. might interest someone who likes performing on stage
- B. is aimed at people who want to do an activity on Sundays
- C. is aimed at people who want to buy things
- D. offers lessons in Latin dance
- E. promotes an activity which is good for body and mind
- F. promotes an activity for which you don't have to pay
- G. mentions that it's compulsory to buy equipment
- H. is aimed at people who usually don't enjoy exercising

Task 5

Read the text below. For questions (1-5) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



When you hear the word Valentine, thoughts of love and romance probably come to mind. But how did this celebration of love start? There are many theories regarding the origins of Valentine's Day.

A possible origin of Valentine's Day dates back to an ancient Roman festival called Lupercalia. It was, among other things, a young lovers' festival. The names of young girls were written down and placed in a jar on the eve of the festival. Young men would draw a girl's name from the jar and the two would then be partners for the duration of the festival. This custom also continued during the Middle Ages. After young men drew names from a bowl to see who their valentines would be, they would wear these on their sleeves for a week, and that's how the expression 'to wear your heart on your sleeve' was born. It means that you openly show your feelings and emotions rather than keeping them hidden.

Another explanation for the origin of Valentine's Day, which seems to be the most popular one, dates back to third-century Rome.

At that time, Rome was involved in many bloody military campaigns. The Roman emperor Claudius II had great difficulty in getting men to join the army. He assumed the reason was that men did not want to leave their wives and families behind. Claudius, therefore, decided not to allow any more marriages. Some people thought this new law was cruel and refused to obey it, so they went to a man called Valentine, who performed secret marriage ceremonies. When the authorities found out what Valentine had been doing, they arrested him and sentenced him to death.

While he was waiting for his sentence to be carried out, many young people went to the prison. They would throw flowers with notes up to his window telling him that they agreed with him about the importance of love. One of these young people was the daughter of the prison guard.

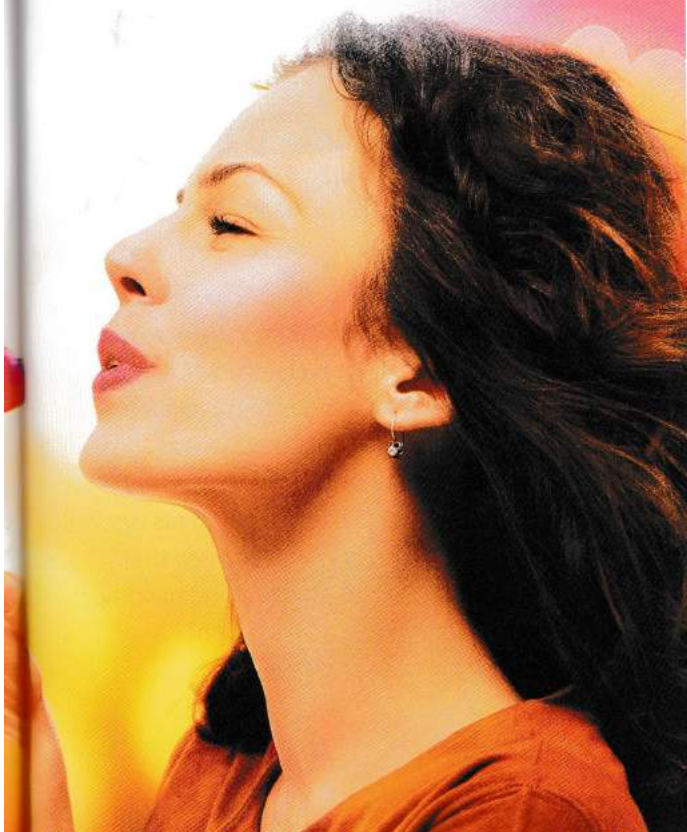


Her father allowed her to visit Valentine in his cell, and they would sit and talk for hours. She kept his spirits up by telling him that he had done the right thing by ignoring the emperor's orders. On the day he died, 14 February 269 AD, he wrote a note to the girl thanking her for her love and support—and signed it 'From your Valentine.' This later gave rise to the custom of exchanging love messages on Valentine's Day.

There are many traditions and stories connected with Valentine's Day. In Wales, for example, spoons were carved and given as gifts on this day. Hearts, keys and keyholes were the most popular decorations on the spoons. The decoration meant, 'You unlock my heart!' Birds play a big part in the folklore of Valentine's Day, too. Doves, for example, are symbols of loyalty and love because they mate for life. It used to be thought that if a woman saw a robin flying on Valentine's Day, she would marry a sailor. If she saw a sparrow, she would marry a poor man but she would be happy. And if she saw a goldfinch, she would marry into a wealthy family.

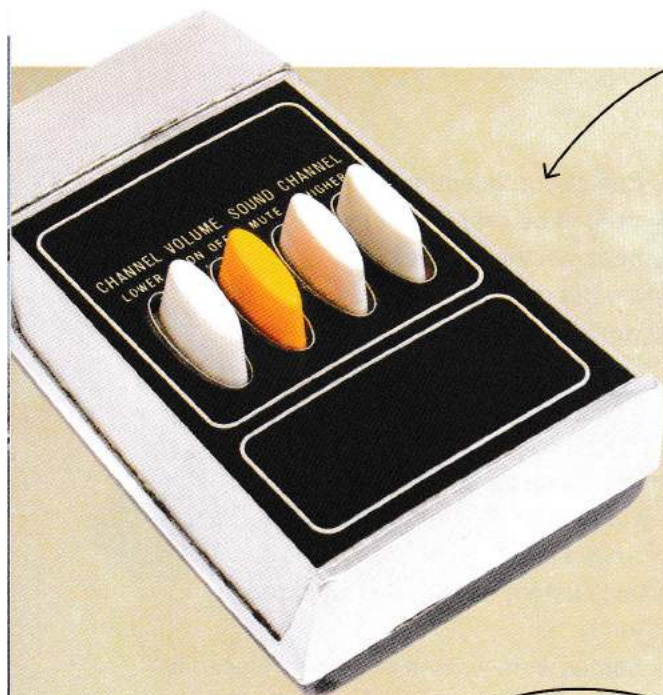
So, next time you girls see a bird fly overhead on Valentine's Day, remember—Prince Charming might be waiting round the corner on his white horse to take you away.

- What is true about Valentine's Day celebrations?
 - They used to be called Lupercalia.
 - They began in the Middle Ages.
 - They are of uncertain origin.
 - They were not allowed in ancient times.
- What is true about the Lupercalia festival according to the text?
 - It was a festival for young lovers only.
 - Men would marry the girl whose name they drew from a jar.
 - A certain custom gave rise to an expression used today.
 - Girls' names were written down and placed in jars on the day of the festival.
- Why did Claudius think that men didn't want to join the army?
 - There were many bloody wars at that time.
 - They didn't want to be separated from their wives.
 - Their wives were against it.
 - They feared they wouldn't be able to find a wife afterwards.
- What happened when Valentine was in prison?
 - He received lots of moral support.
 - He received lots of visitors in his cell.
 - He stopped believing in love.
 - He continued performing wedding ceremonies.
- What do we learn about the woman who visited Valentine in prison?
 - She was a relative of his.
 - She wrote him a love note.
 - She was very encouraging.
 - She ignored the emperor's orders.



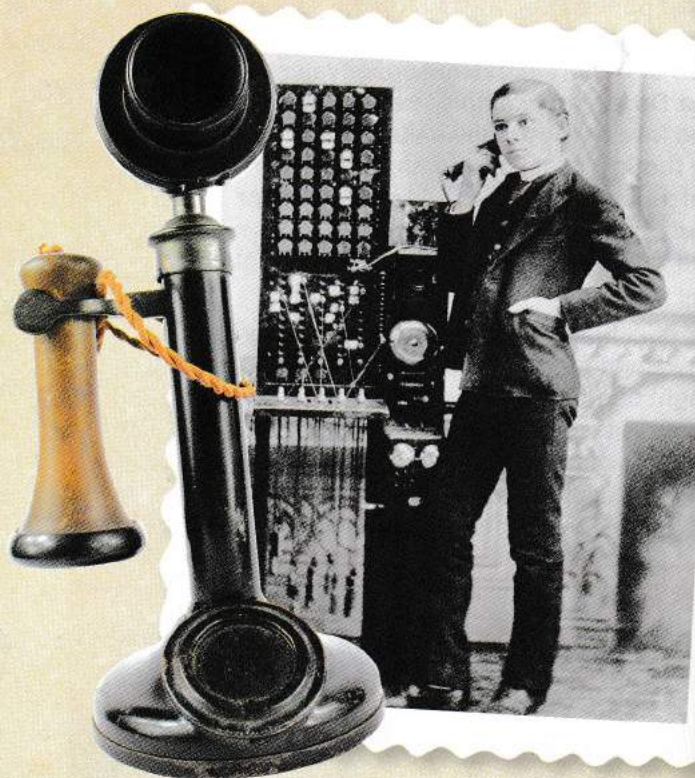
Task 6

Read the texts below. Match choices (A-H) to (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

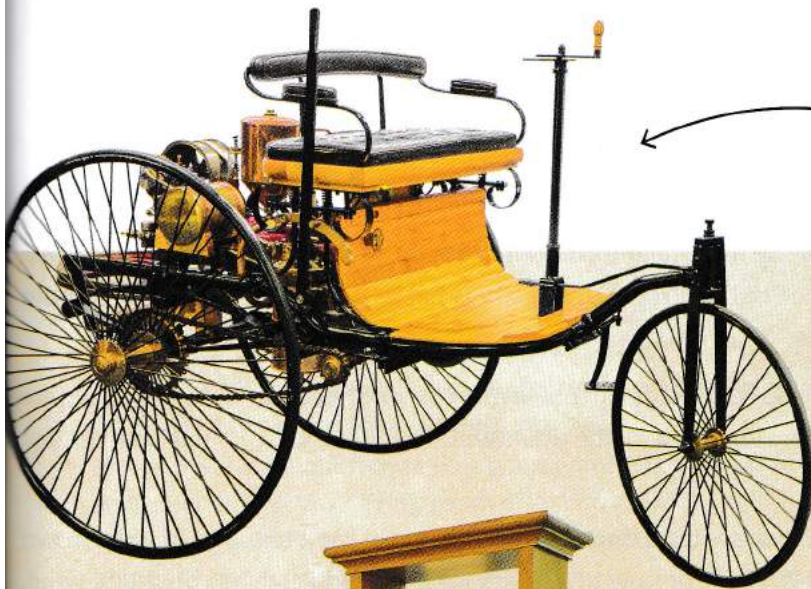


1 The first commercial television remote control was created in 1950. In those days, the remote control was attached to the television by a long cable. This was dangerous, as people kept tripping and falling over it. Five years later, the first wireless TV remote control was created by Eugene Polley and soon became very popular indeed.

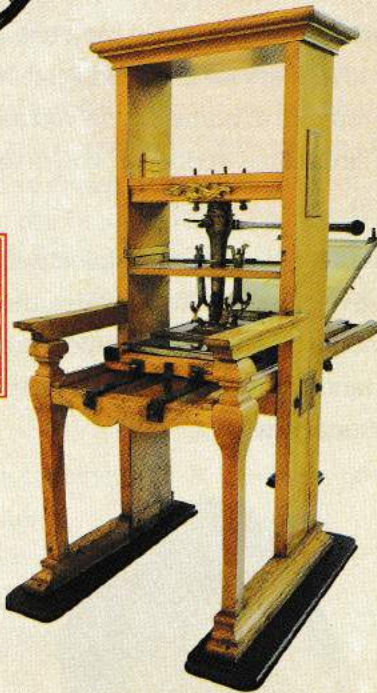
2 The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell in the 1870s. Bell was very talented: a great inventor, an expert in speech and also very musical. On 10 March 1876, he made the first telephone call to his assistant, Mr Watson, who was in the next room. The first words ever spoken over the phone were, 'Mr Watson. Come here. I want to see you.'



3 Dr Percy L. Spencer invented the microwave oven in 1946. He was an electronics expert and worked with machines that produced microwave radiation. One day, he was standing in front of one of these machines and noticed that a chocolate bar in his pocket had melted. His experiments proved that microwaves were able to heat food quickly... and the microwave oven was born!

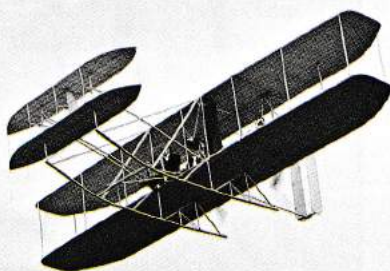


4 Attempts to create self-propelled vehicles had been made as early as the 18th century. However, the fathers of the modern automobile industry are considered to be Carl Benz, who invented the petrol engine in 1885, and Gottlieb Daimler, who built a car with an engine of his own design a year later. The fact that this engine could be produced in large numbers went on to change transport forever.



5 In the 15th century, the German Johannes Gutenberg experimented with printing. He used techniques that had been invented in China, in order to build a machine that could produce books and other texts in large quantities. The invention, known as the printing press, helped people exchange ideas and access information more easily.

6 In 1903, the Wright Brothers were the first to fly a plane that was heavier than air and powered by an engine. Their first flight lasted twelve seconds. In 1919, two British aviators made the first flight across the Atlantic Ocean. Other aviation pioneers, like Charles Lindbergh and Amelia Earhart, courageously experimented with flying and made important contributions to aviation.



Which invention _____?

- A. was created by someone who used knowledge developed in another country ☐
- B. was first thought of while the inventor was working on something else ☐
- C. achieved only brief success the first time it was used ☐
- D. took over three centuries to be completed ☐
- E. was invented by someone who had many different abilities ☐
- F. caused accidents at first, until it was changed ☐
- G. was created by someone who wanted to communicate with his family ☐
- H. had a part that was easy to make in large quantities ☐

Task 7

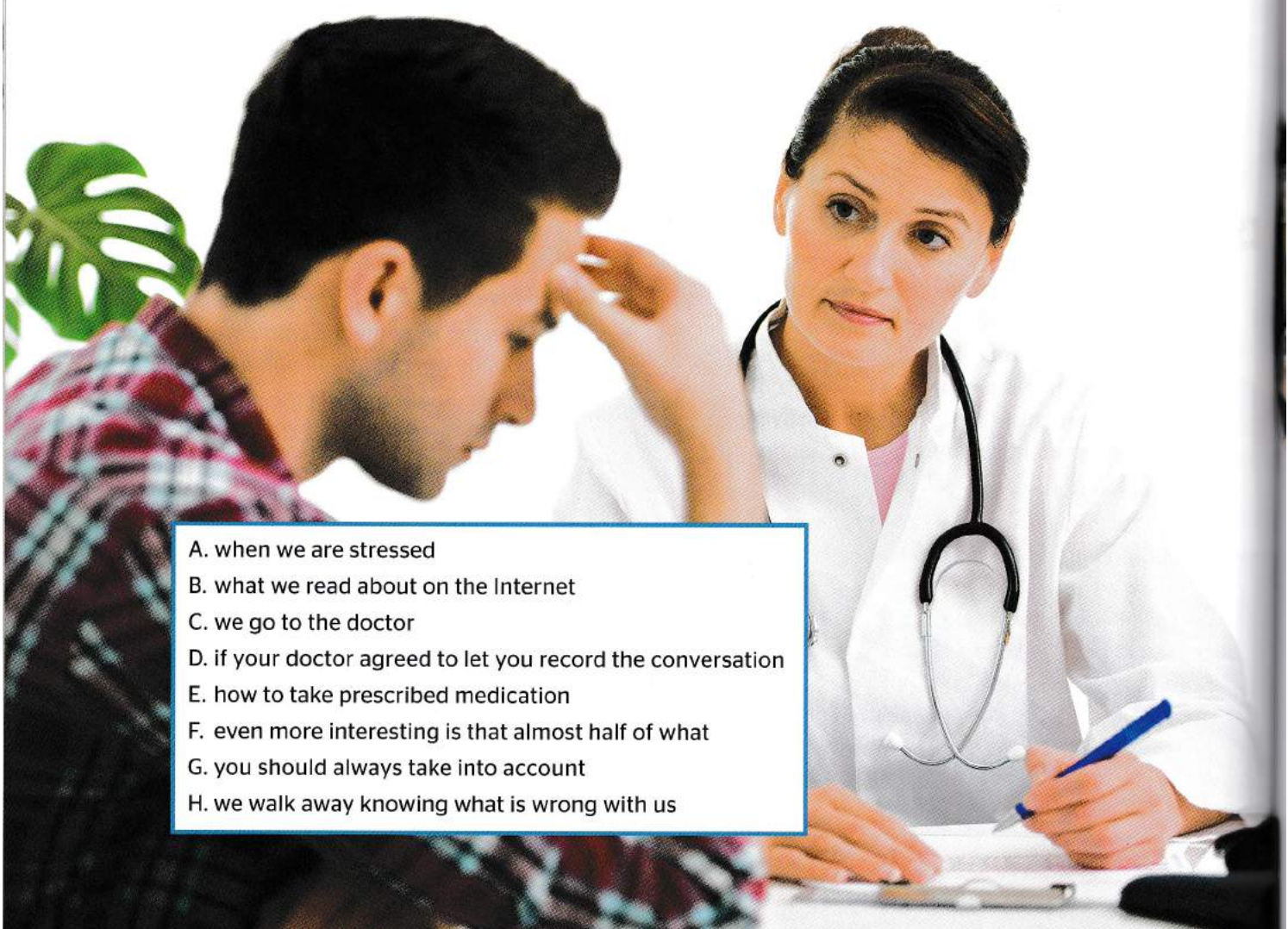
Read the text below. Choose from (A-H) the one which best fits each space (1-6). There are two choices you do not need to use.

Did you know that we forget about 80% of the medical information a doctor might give us? This interesting fact came to light as a result of a study carried out at Utrecht University. What is (1) _____ we think we remember is wrong.

Why do you think this happens? Well, going to the doctor can make most people nervous, and (2) _____ we are more likely to concentrate on the diagnosis rather than on the treatment. Therefore, (3) _____ but with no idea what to do about it.

Here are some good tips to keep in mind when seeing a doctor. Always bring along a notepad to write down important pieces of information, such as (4) _____ or how to prepare for any medical tests you might need. What would be even better is (5) _____. In this way, you can replay it at home, where you are more likely to be able to understand your doctor's advice. If you believe the situation is serious or you're really worried, get a family member or a close friend to come with you to listen in.

Regardless of what you choose to do, there is one golden rule (6) _____ –to communicate effectively you need to ask the right questions. The 'Ask Me 3' program, an initiative of the Institute for Healthcare Improvement, advises patients to ask the following three questions every time they talk to a medical professional: 'What is my main problem, what do I need to do, and why is it important for me to do this?' These will help ensure that you understand the problem and how to deal with it in a rational way.

- 
- A. when we are stressed
 - B. what we read about on the Internet
 - C. we go to the doctor
 - D. if your doctor agreed to let you record the conversation
 - E. how to take prescribed medication
 - F. even more interesting is that almost half of what
 - G. you should always take into account
 - H. we walk away knowing what is wrong with us

Task 8

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).

Paint a mood

Thinking of redoing your walls and can't decide on a colour?
Here are a few ideas to help you out.

Red is a warm colour that makes people excited, so it's perfect for your living room or dining room, (1) _____ you want guests to enjoy each other's company and fall easily into conversation.

Yellow is also a positive colour, as it reminds us of sunshine and happiness. It goes well in kitchens, bathrooms and dining rooms, but it is best if it is not the main colour in the room, because it (2) _____ also cause feelings of anger.

Blue is a very calming, relaxing colour, ideal for (3) _____ bedrooms and bathrooms. Make sure the room has enough natural light coming in, because otherwise the colour might come across as cold instead. **Green** (4) _____ to be the best colour for all rooms because it combines the relaxing qualities of blue with the warmth of yellow. Lastly, **purple** is a rich colour that (5) _____ us of luxury and creativity, perfect for living rooms.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. when | B. where | C. which | D. that |
| 2. A. may | B. would | C. must | D. should |
| 3. A. either | B. neither | C. and | D. both |
| 4. A. actually considers | B. is actually considering | C. is actually considered | D. actually considered |
| 5. A. is reminding | B. reminded | C. reminds | D. is reminded |



Love your clothes!

Millions of tonnes of clothes are thrown away each year. This has a negative impact on the environment, as these clothes (6) _____ or end up in landfills.

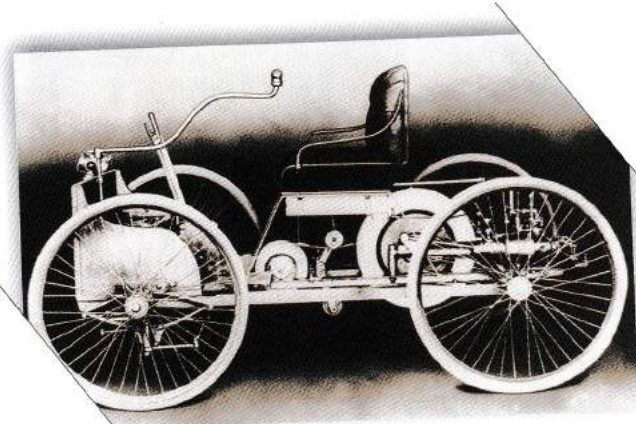
The good news is we can all do something to reduce the impact of clothes on the environment. First of all, we can fix our old clothes or creatively transform them (7) _____ make something new.

We could give them to a friend, consider (8) _____ them online or donate them to charity. There are also recycling banks (9) _____ clothes and shoes can be disposed of. At the same time, we also need to change our consumer behaviour. Many people try to keep up with fast-changing fashions by buying (10) _____ cheap clothes that are usually of low quality. Maybe we need to appreciate the clothes we have and take better care of them.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 6. A. are burning | B. have them burnt | C. burn | D. are burnt |
| 7. A. so that | B. so as | C. in order to | D. that we can |
| 8. A. selling | B. to sell | C. sold | D. sell |
| 9. A. that | B. where | C. which | D. who |
| 10. A. more and more | B. the more | C. as much as | D. much more |

Task 9

Read the texts below. For questions (1-10) choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D).



The History of Cars

How much do you know about the history of cars? One of the most important (1) _____ in the history of the motorcar came in 1908 with the development of the Ford Model T, which was the first car to be produced on a large scale. The (2) _____ of this method of production was Henry Ford, the founder of the Ford Motor Company. The assembly line, as it came to be known, offered (3) _____ to thousands of workers. Thankfully, it cut costs as well, making cars (4) _____ to consumers. In addition, the replacement of old work practices made the

Model T more reliable than other cars, while numerous (5) _____ to the interior made driving a pleasure. So, car owners have Henry Ford to thank for his enormous contributions to the car industry.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. discoveries | B. achievements | C. experiments | D. approaches |
| 2. A. inventor | B. owner | C. researcher | D. engineer |
| 3. A. business | B. occupation | C. promotion | D. employment |
| 4. A. precise | B. affordable | C. profitable | D. satisfying |
| 5. A. conditions | B. bonuses | C. improvements | D. vacancies |

Preparing for the Future

It's the end of the school year and the exam period is on the way. Undoubtedly, exams (6) _____ pressure on both students and parents alike. Most parents would like to see their children succeed academically and end up settled in a rewarding job that leaves them (7) _____ well off. However, child psychologists stress that, while students should aim high, they should also have a(n) (8) _____ of other options so that they have better chances of succeeding.

On the whole, there are many practical things that parents can do that may prove invaluable to their children. Apart from being people their children can turn to, parents can plan a reasonable schedule that both they and their children (9) _____ on. According to psychologists' (10) _____, this schedule should include three proper meals a day, some exercise and no more than eight hours of studying. Finally, before each exam, parents need to reassure their children that everything will be fine, whatever the result.



- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 6. A. force | B. set | C. bring | D. put |
| 7. A. richly | B. professionally | C. financially | D. valuably |
| 8. A. amount | B. sum | C. variety | D. selection |
| 9. A. agree | B. accept | C. approve | D. confirm |
| 10. A. clues | B. advice | C. announcements | D. information |

Write an email to your friend in which you tell her

- Write an email of at least 100 words. Do not write your own name, any dates, addresses or other personal information. Start your email in an appropriate way.

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Grammar Section

Unit 1: Imperative, Present Simple vs Present Progressive, Frequency adverbs, Stative verbs

Imperative

- We form the imperative with the base form of the verb.
We form the negative form with **don't + base form**.
Listen to the CD! Don't speak!
- We use the imperative to ask someone to do something.
We can use 'please' to be more polite.
Open your books, please!

Present Simple vs Present Progressive

We use the Present Simple:	We use the Present Progressive:
• for permanent states. <i>Sam works in a bank.</i> • for habits or actions that happen regularly. <i>I always eat an egg for breakfast.</i> • for general truths. <i>Water boils at 100°C.</i> • for an action that takes place according to a schedule. <i>My plane leaves at 12 o'clock.</i>	• for temporary states. <i>I'm doing a language course this month.</i> • for actions happening at the moment of speaking. <i>The dog is eating now.</i> • for future arrangements. <i>We're visiting Ireland this summer.</i> • with adverbs of frequency (constantly, always etc.) to express annoying habits. <i>He is always leaving his clothes on the floor!</i>

TIME EXPRESSIONS

Present Simple	Present Progressive
usually, always, often, occasionally, hardly ever, etc.	now, at the moment, at present
every day/week, etc.	today, these days
in the morning/spring, etc.	this week/year, etc.
on Mondays/Monday morning, etc.	tonight, tomorrow, etc.
at the weekend, etc.	next week/year, etc.
once/twice/three times, etc.	
a week/day, etc.	

Frequency adverbs

The adverbs of frequency (*always, often, usually, sometimes, rarely, never*) are usually placed before the main verb, but after the verb *be*.
She is never on time.
Do you always buy this brand?
I usually have a nap after lunch.

Stative verbs

The following verbs are **not** normally used in **progressive tenses**. They are called **stative verbs**.

- **Verbs of the senses:** feel, see, hear, smell, taste, notice, seem, look (= seem), etc.
- **Verbs of emotions and preferences:** love, hate, like, dislike, want, need, prefer, mind, etc.
- **Verbs of perception and opinion:** think (= believe), believe, know, understand, remember, forget, hope, mean, imagine, etc.
- **Other verbs:** be, have (= possess), own, belong, cost, etc.

NOTE

Some stative verbs can be used in progressive tenses, but with a different meaning.

- think (= process in one's mind)
I'm thinking about my summer holidays.
- see (= meet, visit)
He's seeing the doctor tonight.
- have (= drink, eat, take)
She's having dinner with a friend.
- taste (= try food)
Mum's tasting the soup to see if it's ready.
- look (= see)
Why are you looking at me?

Grammar Practice

A Complete the blanks with the Present Simple or the Present Continuous of the verbs in brackets.

My best friend, Julie, (1) works (work) at the Playtime toy shop. She (2) _____ (like) working there because she (3) _____ (meet) lots of people every day, especially children. She (4) _____ (love) children and she (5) _____ (enjoy) showing them how the toys work. The shop (6) _____ (open) at 10am and (7) _____ (close) at 6pm. Julie (8) _____ (not mind) working long hours but her workmates (9) _____ (always/complain) because they (10) _____ (think) the job is tiring. This week, Julie (11) _____ (not work) at the shop. She has taken some time off work. However, she (12) _____ (not sit) at home relaxing. She (13) _____ (work) at a friend's restaurant. You see, she (14) _____ (need) the extra money because she (15) _____ (want) to buy a car.



B Complete the e-mail making sentences with the prompts given. Use the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

Dear Maria,
Hello! / I / be / in Hawaii / this week / .
(1) I'm in Hawaii this week.
I / have / a great time / !
(2) _____
I / relax / at last / .
(3) _____
Every morning / I / wake up / eleven o'clock / .
(4) _____
I / usually / have / big breakfast and then
(5) _____
I / go / for a swim / .
(6) _____
In / afternoon / I / always / watch / sunset / . / It / be / beautiful / !
(7) _____
I / get / ready / go out / now / so / I / must / end / here / .
(8) _____
I / have / dinner / restaurant by the sea / tonight / .
(9) _____
I'll see you when I get back.
Love,
Helen

C Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

- Have you got any plans for tonight? **are**
What are you doing / are you / plans for tonight?
- My parents like travelling by train. **usually**
My parents _____ by train.
- Fiona isn't keen on driving. **like**
Fiona _____ driving.
- Brian rarely visits his grandparents. **often**
Brian _____ his grandparents.
- We might go to Venezuela next year. **thinking**
We _____ to Venezuela next year.
- My brother never stops playing computer games. **always**
My brother _____ computer games.
- We've arranged to meet outside the shopping centre. **are**
We _____ outside the shopping centre.

Unit 2: Articles, Plural nouns, This / That / These / Those, Prepositions of time, Prepositions of place, Prepositions of movement, Prepositions of manner, There is / There are, Word order

Articles

A / An

The indefinite article **a / an** is used before singular countable nouns or adjectives + singular countable nouns:

a sweater ~~a~~ *sugar* ~~a~~ *cars*
a lovely sweater **BUT** ~~a~~ *lovely*

- We use **a** before consonant sounds:
a girl
a university (the 'u' here is a consonant sound)
- We use **an** before vowel sounds:
an orange
an umbrella (the 'u' here is a vowel sound)

The indefinite article **a / an** is used:

- when referring to something that is not specific.
I will hire a car.
- before professions or nationalities.
She's a taxi driver.
- before nouns which show quantity, speed or frequency.
Tomatoes cost £3 a kilo in this shop.
He was driving at 80 miles an hour when he crashed.
I go swimming twice a week.

The

The definite article **the** is used before countable and uncountable nouns in the singular and the plural:

the man *the women* *the wine*

The definite article **the** is used:

- before nouns which are specific or have been mentioned before.
I'll buy the yellow jacket.
I'll go to the dentist tonight.
- before nouns which are unique.
the earth, the sky, the Acropolis
- before the superlative degree of adjectives and adverbs.
Who's the oldest in your class?
He runs the fastest of all.
- before names of **seas, rivers, oceans, deserts** and **canals**.
the Mediterranean Sea, the Nile, the Atlantic, the Sahara, the Panama Canal
- before names of **countries** in the plural, **groups of islands** and **mountain ranges**.
the United States, the Bahamas, the Himalayas

- before names of **families** and **nationalities**, when we refer to the whole family or nation.
the Taylors, the Japanese
- before names of **theatres, newspapers, hotels, cinemas, ships, organisations, public services**.
the National Theatre, the Times, the Beach Hotel, the Odeon, the Titanic, the United Nations, the fire brigade
- before **musical instruments** or **inventions**.
She plays the piano.
Who invented the telephone?
- before adjectives which refer to classes of people.
the blind, the rich
- before **noun + of + noun**.
the Tower of London
- before **titles**, when they are not followed by proper names.
the King **BUT** ~~the~~ *King Arthur*
- before the words **north, south, east, west**, when they are used as nouns (not adverbs) or are followed by **of**.
The land to the north is fertile.
I visited the South of France. **BUT** *Let's go east.*

The definite article **the** is not used:

- before names of **people, streets, cities, islands, countries, continents, religious holidays, days, months, and mountains** (singular).
Mary Smith, Broad Street, Paris, Bali, Germany, Asia, Easter, Monday, June, Everest
- before **plural countable nouns** and **uncountable nouns**, when we are talking about something in general.
Whales are mammals.
Experience is important in this job.
- before the words **hospital, church, home, bed, school, university, work, court, prison**, when they are used for the purpose for which they exist.
He broke his leg and was taken to hospital.
BUT *I went to the hospital to visit my uncle.*
- before names of **magazines, sports, games, colours, school subjects** and **languages**.
Seventeen, tennis, chess, red, history
I like English.
BUT *The English language is difficult to learn.*

- before names of **squares, parks, lakes** or **names of pubs, restaurants, airports**, etc. which consist of two nouns.
Trafalgar Square, Hyde Park, Lake Victoria, John F. Kennedy Airport
- before the words **father, mother, mum, dad**, when we refer to our own parents.
Father comes home late from work.
Mum helped me with my homework.
- before the words **breakfast, lunch, dinner** when we refer to them in general.
What did you have for breakfast this morning?
- before means of transport (with **by**)
*I go to school by bus. **BUT** I'm in the car now.*

Plural nouns

Regular plural forms

noun + -s: bird → birds

noun in -ch, -sh, -x, -s, -ss, -o + -es: watch → watches, tomato → tomatoes **BUT** radio → radios

noun in consonant + -y: consonant + -ies:
baby → babies **BUT** boy → boys

noun in -f, -fe: -ves: leaf → leaves, life → lives **BUT**
roof → roofs

Irregular plural forms

child	→	children
man	→	men
woman	→	women
tooth	→	teeth
foot	→	feet
mouse	→	mice
person	→	people
goose	→	geese
ox	→	oxen
louse	→	lice
deer	→	deer
fish	→	fish

sheep	→	sheep
species	→	species
series	→	series
aircraft	→	aircraft
salmon	→	salmon
trout	→	trout

This / That / These / Those

- We use **this** to point out a person, animal or thing that is close to us.
This is a book.
- We use **that** to point out a person, animal or thing that is far from us.
That girl over there is Maria.
- We use **these** to point out people, animals or things that are close to us.
These are my books.
- We use **those** to point out people, animals or things that are far from us.
Those boys over there are my friends.

Prepositions of time

at *at three o'clock*
at noon/night/midnight/midday/dawn
at fifteen, at the age of twenty-one
at the moment, at Christmas, at Easter,
at the weekend / at weekends,
at breakfast/lunch/dinner

on *on Monday*
on 8th January
on Christmas Day, on New Year's Eve,
on a Sunday morning, on a spring day,
on his birthday

in *in April*
in spring
in 2003, in the 18th century
*in the evening **BUT** on Tuesday evening*
in the beginning / in the end

from ... to/till/until *We usually work from nine to five.*

during *They made a lot of noise during the lesson.*

before *We should get together before the summer holidays.*

after *Where did you go after school?*

by *I will have left by eleven o'clock.*

Prepositions of place

on *The books are on the shelf.*

in *The clothes are in the suitcase.*

at *Mary is standing at the bus stop.*

over *The sign over the door read 'Exit'.*

under *The cat is sleeping under the kitchen table.*

in front of	<i>The man standing in front of me was really rude.</i>
behind	<i>Dave was hiding behind the door.</i>
near	<i>Is there a park near your house?</i>
opposite	<i>The library is opposite the school.</i>
next to	<i>The bookshop is next to the bank.</i>
beside	<i>Who's that tall guy standing beside Helen?</i>
between	<i>The post office is located between the public library and the cinema complex.</i>
among	<i>I found this letter among some old photos.</i>
on, in and at	
on	on the left, on the right, on the bus / train / plane
in	in Africa, in Argentina, in Los Angeles, in Wivenhoe
at	at the cinema, at the airport, at the station, etc. at work, at home, at school, at the back, etc. with address: <i>He lives at 58 Park Lane.</i>

Prepositions of movement

to	<i>Are you going to the supermarket?</i>
into	<i>I don't want to go into that room.</i>
off	<i>I fell off my bike and hurt my knee.</i>
out of	<i>As soon as the bell rang, the kids ran out of the classroom.</i>
from	<i>When is Josh coming back from work?</i>
towards	<i>He was coming towards me with an angry look on his face.</i>
over	<i>The dog jumped over the fence.</i>
up	<i>The boys are racing up the hill.</i>
across	<i>They're going to swim across the lake.</i>
along	<i>We walked along the river bank.</i>
through	<i>The road goes through a beautiful forest.</i>
past	<i>He walked past me but he didn't see me.</i>
(a)round	<i>I've run around the block three times so far.</i>

NOTE

- **verb get (in, into, on, off and out of)**
get in / into a car
get out of a car
get on / off a bus / train / horse / bicycle / motorbike / plane

Prepositions of manner

We use the preposition **by** with most means of transport.

by car / train / bus / plane / coach / bicycle / ship / boat

BUT *on foot, on horseback*

We use **with** before a noun to indicate a quality, a feature or the means used.

Sue works with enthusiasm in her new job.

Jack is a tall boy with dark hair.

I always write with a pencil.

There is / There are

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE	
Full Forms	Short Forms	Full Forms	Short Forms
There is	There's	There is not	There isn't
There are	×	There are not	There aren't

QUESTIONS	SHORT ANSWERS	
Is there...?	Yes, there is.	No, there isn't.
Are there...?	Yes, there are.	No, there aren't.

- We use **there is** before singular nouns.
There's a bathroom upstairs.
Is there a swimming pool in the palace?
- We use **there are** before plural nouns.
There are ten bedrooms in the castle.
Are there two bins in the classroom?

Word order

In English, the normal word order in affirmative and negative sentences is:

Subject	Verb	Object
Catherine	plays	the piano
Philip	doesn't play	the guitar

Adverbs and expressions that indicate manner, place and time follow in this order: Manner (How?) - Place (Where?) - Time (When?)

Subject	Verb	Object	Manner
Catherine	played	the piano	beautifully
Place		Time	
at the concert		last night.	

NOTE

- After verbs that indicate movement (go, run, walk, etc.), the order of adverbs/adverbial expressions is: Place - Manner - Time

Subject	Verb	Place	Manner	Time
Mary	came	home	by taxi	last night.

- Expressions that indicate time may be at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

Last night I saw a good film.

I saw a good film last night.

Grammar Practice

A Complete the blanks with *a, an, the* or *-*.

FACTS ABOUT THE BRITISH ISLES

- In 1066 an army from - France invaded - England.
- There are - castles all over - British Isles.
- Kings and queens lived in - Tower of - London for 400 years, but it was also used as - prison.
- Beefeater stands outside - Tower of - London. He wears - special costume.
- There are many historical buildings, - theatres, - shops and - museums.
- busiest city in - Britain is - London.
- Queen Elizabeth has ruled since 1952. - Queen's flag flying above - palace means she is in - Buckingham Palace. - palace has 650 rooms.

B Complete the blanks with the singular or the plural form of the nouns in brackets.

Orang-utans can be found in the (1) forests (forest) of Sumatra and Borneo. These (2) - (animal) live in (3) - (tree). They sleep in nests made of (4) - (branch). They eat (5) - (fruit), (6) - (leaf) and (7) - (insect).

Orang-utans don't do much during the day, they just rest or look for (8) - (food). They are "lazy" (9) - (animal). They hate the (10) - (rain) and try to protect themselves in bad (11) - (weather).

Nowadays, orang-utans are on the list of endangered (12) - (species).

C Expand the notes into sentences, using the prepositions given in the correct order.

- key / be / box / which / be / shelf / my bedroom in in on
The key is in a box on a shelf in my bedroom.
- I / always / go / gym / school / four / six o'clock after from till
I go to the gym after school from four to six o'clock.
- beginning / I / think / book / be / boring / but / end / I / like / it in in
I like the book from beginning to end, but I think it is boring.
- postman / jump / his van / when / dogs / run / him towards into
The postman jumps into his van when the dogs run towards him.
- Mark / move / Los Angeles / April / and / be / really happy / there in to
Mark moved to Los Angeles in April and he is really happy there.
- wait / for me / bus stop / my house at in front of
I wait for him at the bus stop in front of my house.

D Put the words in the correct order and write sentences.

1. to Spain / often / go / they / in summer
They often go to Spain in summer.
2. hard / in the garden / my grandfather / all afternoon / worked
3. don't / I / coffee / at night / usually / drink
4. had / at the party / a lot of fun / we / last night
5. quickly / after his French lesson / home / walked / John
6. in the snow / the children / during their holidays / happily / played
7. spoke / yesterday / angrily / Fay / to her sister
8. sometimes / in winter / freeze / rivers

Unit 3: Personal pronouns/ Possessive adjectives/ Possessive pronouns, Possessive case, Reflexive pronouns, Reciprocal pronouns, Other / Another

Personal Pronouns

- Subject Personal Pronouns are used as **subjects** of verbs. They replace nouns.
Mr Roberts is a surgeon. He is American.
Where's Sue? She must have left by now.
- Object Personal Pronouns are used as **direct** or **indirect** objects of verbs. They replace nouns.
Tom and Ann are outside. Could you call them?
Can you lend me five pounds?

He / Him (masculine) are used for people and animals (if we know their gender).
This is Roger! He's my favourite dog.

She / Her (feminine) are used for people, animals (if we know their gender) and ships.
The St Helena is a great ship. She has been repainted recently.

It is used:

- for things, animals and babies (if we are not sure of their gender).
It's a really cute baby.
- in expressions of time, distance, weather, etc.
It's six o'clock.
It's 400 kilometres to London.
It's windy today.

- to ask or say who a person is.
'Who is it?' 'It's me.'
- before *to be* + adjective, instead of a full infinitive or a *that*-clause.
It is difficult to learn Chinese. (To learn Chinese is difficult.)
It is obvious that he is selfish. (That he is selfish is obvious.)
- as the subject of the verbs *seem*, *appear*, *look*, *depend*, *occur*, *happen*.
It looks as if it's going to rain.
It depends on what you want.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Subject	Object
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
you	you
they	them

NOTE

Sometimes the pronoun **you** refers to anyone or everyone. That is, **you** has got the same meaning as **people**.

People *mustn't* talk on their mobile phones when they drive.

You *mustn't* talk on your mobile phone when you drive.

Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns

Possessive Adjectives are used **before nouns**. They have the same gender as the owner and don't take an article.

my parents her brother his clothes

Possessive Pronouns replace possessive adjective + noun.

This is my book. → This book is mine. / This is mine.

NOTE

- We can use **own** after possessive adjectives for emphasis.
I have my own flat now.
- **On my / your**, etc. **own** means 'alone, without help'.
She does her homework on her own.
- **a / an + noun + of mine / yours**, etc. = one of my / your, etc. + noun
a friend of mine = one of my friends

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

my
your
his
her
its
our
your
their

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

mine
yours
his
hers
-
ours
yours
theirs

Possessive Case

The Possessive Case shows who something belongs to and answers questions beginning with **whose**. It is usually used with nouns which refer to people and animals.

Whose car is this? It's Mr Brown's.

Formation of the Possessive Case

- **Singular nouns** and the words *someone, somebody, nobody*, etc. take **'s**:
John's computer a woman's life
the cat's milk someone's job
everybody's problem
- **Regular plural nouns** take **'**:
the boys' bedroom the students' books
my parents' car
- **Irregular plural nouns** take **'s**:
the men's clothes the children's toys
- **Proper nouns** ending in **-s** can take **'s** or **'**:
Chris's shirt Chris' shirt

- We use **'s** after **compound nouns**, **time expressions** and **idioms**:

my father-in-law's car today's weather
a week's delay tomorrow's newspapers
for heaven's sake.

NOTE

- When two or more people own the **same** thing, we add **'s** to the **last owner**:
Susan and Ian's daughter
- When two or more people own **different** things, we add **'s** to **each owner**:
George's and Andrew's desks
- We can **omit** the noun which follows the possessive case if it is easy to understand or refers to a place:
My bedroom is next to my brother's (bedroom).
Don't forget to go to the baker's (shop).
- When referring to things we use **of + noun** instead of the possessive case:
the name of the city
the legs of the table

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are used as objects of verbs when the action of the verb returns to the person who does it. Reflexive pronouns are used:

- after the verbs **enjoy, behave, help, educate, teach, hurt, kill, cut**, etc.:
Did you enjoy yourself at the party last night?
- after verbs with prepositions, such as **talk to, say to, take care of**, etc.:
Let her take care of herself.
- after the preposition **by**, meaning 'alone, without help'.
I can do my homework by myself.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

myself
yourself
himself
herself
itself
ourselves
yourselves
themselves

Reciprocal Pronouns

Reciprocal pronouns **each other** and **one another** are used when two or more people, things or groups are involved and they perform the same action to each other.

*At Christmas we all buy presents for each other.
When they heard the good news they all started hugging one another.*

NOTE

Reciprocal pronouns also have possessive forms.
Mary and Anna are best friends. They share everything and they even wear each other's clothes.

Other / Another

Other means *more or different*.

- the others(s) = the rest
- others = more, apart from those already mentioned
- every other day/ week, etc. = every second day/ week etc.
- the other day = a few days ago

Another = one more. It can also go with expressions of time, distance or money.

I'd like another glass of orange juice.

We must drive for another ten miles.

Grammar Practice

A Choose a, b or c.

The headteacher took (1) _____ class on a day trip to the airport last week. A flight attendant was showing (2) _____ the cockpit of a plane when (3) _____ stumbled, fell on the controls, accidentally pressed some buttons and (4) _____ adventure began.

The plane started moving and soon (5) _____ were flying. The flight attendant couldn't believe (6) _____ eyes! She kept screaming that (7) _____ was responsible for the plane. Finally, after she had calmed down, she managed to land the plane by (8) _____, with the help of the air traffic controller. She's a pilot now.

The headteacher (9) _____ was so scared that (10) _____ couldn't speak until after (11) _____ had landed. Of course, he blamed (12) _____ for everything. I told (13) _____ that it wasn't all (14) _____ fault. After all, it was an accident.

Anyway, the other students enjoyed (15) _____ very much on our great adventure. They thanked (16) _____ for entertaining (17) _____.

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. a. me | b. my | c. mine | 10. a. he | b. he's | c. his |
| 2. a. our | b. each other | c. us | 11. a. we're | b. we | c. us |
| 3. a. myself | b. I | c. another | 12. a. I | b. myself | c. me |
| 4. a. ours | b. our | c. ourselves | 13. a. him | b. his | c. he |
| 5. a. we | b. us | c. our | 14. a. one another | b. me | c. my |
| 6. a. she | b. her | c. hers | 15. a. their | b. themselves | c. them |
| 7. a. herself | b. she's | c. she | 16. a. mine | b. I | c. me |
| 8. a. her | b. she | c. herself | 17. a. themselves | b. other | c. them |
| 9. a. he | b. him | c. himself | | | |

B Complete the text using the appropriate word(s).

other the other the others the other day another

As I was walking down the street (1) the other day, I bumped into my old schoolmate Sally. I asked her if she keeps in touch with (2) _____ children from school. She told me she often meets Tom and Susan but (3) _____ have moved to (4) _____ cities abroad to study. We went on talking for (5) _____ ten minutes and promised to meet again soon.

C Complete the blanks with reflexive pronouns. Use prepositions where necessary.

1. Paul fell and hurt himself while he was trying to fix the TV aerial.
2. Don't give the babysitter a hard time, children! Behave _____.
3. Kelly and Alice have learnt to be very independent. They are able to take care _____.
4. Gary looked _____ in the mirror, combed his hair and left.
5. Most of you don't know my name, so I would like to introduce _____.
6. I think you should stop blaming _____ for the accident. It really wasn't your fault.
7. Judy was singing _____ while she was decorating the Christmas tree.

D Complete the blanks with the words in brackets and the Possessive Case or of + noun.

1. (the people / Hill Valley) (1) The people of Hill Valley claim to have seen a UFO landing on (the farm / Mr Blake) (2) Mr Blake's farm. In fact, Mr Blake says he was interviewed by aliens. Scientists are looking into the matter. And now, on to (the weather / tomorrow) (3) _____.
2. (the families / Ray and Michael) (1) _____ are worried about them. The men have gone on an expedition in (the jungles / South America) (2) _____. (the expedition / the men) (3) _____ has been the longest and most dangerous so far. (the findings / the expedition) (4) _____ will be shown on (the show / next week) (5) _____.
3. **Mr Crew** It's (the business / no one) (1) _____ what I do on my farm!
Reporter But, isn't it (the farm / your father-in-law) (2) _____? And isn't it true, sir, that you've been trapping foxes and selling (the fur / the foxes) (3) _____?
Mr Crew Oh, for (the sake / heaven) (4) _____ leave me alone. I'm only here for (a holiday / week) (5) _____.
3. **Ron** Whose coat is this?
Pam It's (the coat / Mr Jones) (1) _____. He left it here by mistake. He's interested in buying (the car / Sue and Chris) (2) _____.
Ron (the car / the girls) (3) _____? But the girls love that car!
Pam I know, but their mother is in hospital and they can't afford to keep it.
Ron Darling, we must help them!

Unit 4: must / have to / should / ought to / had better / would rather / can / could / may / be able to / would

must / have to

Expressing obligation and prohibition

- **must + base form** expresses personal obligation in the present or future.
I must finish this by tonight. (= I say so.)
- **have to + base form** expresses external obligation in the present or future.
You have to drive on the left when you're in England. (= It's the law)
- **mustn't + base form** expresses prohibition in the present or future.
You mustn't park here. (= You aren't allowed to.)
- **had to + base form** expresses obligation in the past.
When I was at school, I had to wake up at 7 o'clock every morning.

Expressing necessity and absence of necessity

- **don't have to + base form** expresses absence of necessity in the present or future.
You don't have to call us again. (= It isn't necessary.)

should / ought to

We use **should + base form**:

- to ask for or give **advice**.
Should I stay or should I go?
- to express an **opinion** that we consider correct.
I think he should study harder.
- to make a **suggestion**.
Should we phone Peter? It is his birthday today.
- to express **mild obligation**.
You should keep your desk tidy.
- to express **probability in the present/future**.
Why don't you call Tom? He should be at home now.

Ought to is similar to *should*, but it is less common.

had better

Had better + base form is used to give strong advice. It often expresses a threat or warning. It refers to the present or future, not the past. Its negative form is **had better not**.
In spoken English the short form is commonly used (*I'd better, you'd better, etc.*).
You'd better ask a doctor about it.

would rather

Would rather + base form expresses preference.
I'd rather travel by train.

NOTE

Would rather is often followed by **than**.
I'd rather read a book than watch TV.

can / could / may / be able to / would

Can, Could, May, Would are modal verbs and:

- do not form all tenses.
- have the same form in all persons.
- form the interrogative and negative without auxiliary verbs (do / did).
- are followed by the base form of a verb.

Modal verbs perform various linguistic functions, such as expressing **ability, possibility**, etc.

Ability

- **Can** expresses ability in the present.
Vanessa can play the violin very well.
- **Could** expresses general ability in the past.
Vanessa could play the violin when she was ten.
- **Was/were able to** expresses ability in a specific situation in the past.
The questions were difficult but Philip was able to answer them.
- **Couldn't** and **wasn't/weren't able to** express a lack of ability in the past.
I couldn't run so I wasn't able to catch the bus.

NOTE

Can is used only for the present. In order to express ability in tenses that are not formed by **can**, we use **be able to**.
I haven't been able to contact Harry yet.

Possibility

- **May / Could + infinitive** express possibility in the present/future.
John could / may be at work right now.
- **May not + infinitive** expresses lack of possibility in the present/future.
Henry may not be able to join us.

Permission

- We use **can, could, may** to ask for permission. **May** is more polite than **can** and **could**.
 - We use **cannot (can't)** and **may not** to refuse permission.
- May I borrow your pen? Yes, you may. / No, you may not.*

Requests

To make requests we use **can**, **could**, and **would**.
Could and **would** are more polite/formal than **can**.
Can you give me that dictionary?
Could/Would you hold my umbrella for a minute, please?

Suggestions and Offers

To make suggestions and offer to do something, we use **can** and **could**.

We can watch a film on TV tonight.

I'm going out. Can I get you anything?

We could spend a few days on an island.

Could I get you some coffee?

Grammar Practice

A Choose a, b or c.

- June _____ put her coat on because it was very cold outside.
a. had to b. must c. ought to
- I _____ be on time for my appointment in order to make a good impression.
a. have b. mustn't c. must
- It's raining again. You _____ put on your raincoat.
a. 'd better b. shouldn't c. don't have to
- You _____ worry about money. I have enough.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must
- You _____ smoke in here, or you'll set off the fire alarm and get into serious trouble.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. would rather
- If Sam is going to be late, she _____ to tell her parents.
a. should b. had better c. ought
- If you need more information, you _____ call Janet. She's the expert.
a. mustn't b. had better c. must
- You _____ bring me the books today; I don't need them right away!
a. mustn't b. have to c. don't have to

B Complete the text by choosing a, b or c.

So ... you want to be a runner

What does it take to become a top-class runner? Our reporter, Vernon Phua, interviewed marathon runner Michael Chiang, and asked him to tell our readers what they (1) _____ to do in order to follow in his footsteps. First of all, you (2) _____ bear in mind that success doesn't come easily and you (3) _____ train hard. 'When I was still at school, I (4) _____ wake up early in the morning to train and then I rushed off to school. After school I trained some more,' says Michael.



At the same time, however, you (5) _____ neglect your studies. Michael regrets not studying more at school. 'I didn't try hard enough to get into university,' he says. But, you (6) _____ allow failure to discourage you. As the Chinese say, 'Failure is the mother of success'. It is part of learning how to be successful: you (7) _____ know what it is like to lose and learn from your mistakes. You also (8) _____ to learn how to deal with stress so that you don't crumble under pressure. And always remember: success doesn't come overnight.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. a. ought | b. must | c. should |
| 2. a. should | b. ought | c. had to |
| 3. a. will have to | b. shouldn't | c. ought |
| 4. a. must have | b. should have | c. had to |
| 5. a. don't have to | b. shouldn't | c. must |
| 6. a. ought to | b. shouldn't | c. don't have |
| 7. a. have to | b. mustn't | c. ought |
| 8. a. have | b. must | c. should |

C Rewrite the sentences using the words given.

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1. There's a possibility that Mike will meet the manager after his meeting.
<i>Mike may meet the manager after his meeting.</i> | MAY |
| 2. It's a good idea to tell your parents what happened. | BETTER |
| 3. I prefer spaghetti to pizza. | RATHER |
| 4. You are not allowed to chew gum in class. | MUST |
| 5. Is it necessary for me to come to the wedding? | HAVE |
| 6. Would you like another glass of milk? | CAN |
| 7. Why don't we go for a walk in the park? | COULD |
| 8. Helen can be so rude to me sometimes. | OUGHT |

Unit 5: Past Simple, Past Continuous, Time clauses, Used to

Past Simple

We use the **Past Simple**:

- for actions that started and were completed at a specific time in the past.
I went out with Jim yesterday.
- for habitual or repeated actions in the past.
Mary often went fishing with her dad when she was a child.
- for completed actions that happened one after the other in the past.
He opened the door, walked in quietly and turned on the lights.
- for permanent situations in the past.
I lived in London for 20 years.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

yesterday, in 1980, etc.
two hours ago, five years ago, etc.
last night/week/Sunday/March, etc.
then, the day before yesterday

Past Continuous

We use the **Past Continuous**:

- for actions that were happening at a specific point of time in the past.
Karen was cooking dinner at 6 o'clock yesterday evening.

- to describe background scenes to a story.
It was early in the evening and it was raining heavily.
- for actions that were happening at the same time in the past. In this case we usually use **while**.
While I was doing the washing up, my brother was vacuuming.

Time clauses

- We use the **Past Continuous** and the **Past Simple** in the same sentence when one action interrupted another in the past. We use the **Past Continuous** for the longer action and the **Past Simple** for the shorter action. In this case we usually use **while**, **when** or **as**.
As/While/When they were walking in the forest, they saw a bear.
I was having a bath when the lights went out.

NOTE

We use **as soon as** with the Past Simple.
As soon as we arrived on the island, we ran to the beach.

Used to

We use **used to** to talk about something that happened regularly in the past, but no longer does.
We used to go rollerblading every afternoon when we were young.

Grammar Practice

A Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

1. I got (get) on the train, _____ (sit) down and then the ticket inspector _____ (come) and _____ (check) my ticket.
2. Suzy _____ (walk) towards her car when she _____ (remember) that she had left some important documents at home.
3. Mark _____ (phone) Julie at 10.00 pm last night, but she _____ (not can) speak to him because she _____ (have) a bath at the time.
4. Last year, I _____ (join) the Local Lifeguard Association in order to become a lifeguard.
5. I _____ (have) breakfast while my flatmate _____ (read) the morning paper.

6. Mr Johnson _____ (fire) the new employee the day before yesterday because he _____ (always / arrive) half an hour late.
7. As Lucy _____ (wait) in the queue to buy a ticket for the concert, she _____ (realise) that she _____ (not have) enough money with her.

B Complete the text with the Past Simple or the Past Continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Last Saturday we (1) decided (decide) to eat out at a new Chinese restaurant that (2) _____ (open) in our neighbourhood. While my parents and I (3) _____ (enjoy) our exotic meal, my two younger brothers (4) _____ (begin) to complain about the food. They (5) _____ (not / like) it at all, so they soon (6) _____ (get) bored. While we (7) _____ (eat), they (8) _____ (start) to chase each other around the restaurant. As they (9) _____ (run) in between the tables, they (10) _____ (push) a waiter who (11) _____ (fall) on one of the tables. Unfortunately, the waiter (12) _____ (hold) a bottle of Coke, which (13) _____ (fly) into the air and (14) _____ (land) on an old lady. We (15) _____ (not / can) believe what (16) _____ (happen). The old lady's husband (17) _____ (shout) at my brothers while she (18) _____ (complain) that her dress was ruined. It (19) _____ (take) my father half an hour to calm them down! What a mess!



C Choose the correct answer, a, b, c or d.

- Tom _____ when the postman rang his doorbell.
a. slept b. is sleeping c. sleeps **d. was sleeping**
- _____ Mary got to school, she went straight to her classroom.
a. As b. When c. As soon d. While
- _____ you know what time it is?
a. Are b. Did c. Were d. Do
- When I _____ Ken at the railway station yesterday, he was talking to his cousin, Al.
a. see b. was seeing c. saw d. 'm seeing
- When we were children, my brother _____ me what to do and I hated it.
a. has always told b. is always telling c. always used to tell d. always tells
- Ron _____ his first car in 2008.
a. bought b. was buying c. buys d. is buying
- I didn't _____ to my brother last night, because when I got home, he was sleeping.
a. spoke b. speaking c. spoken d. speak
- I met Carl last year, while we _____ abroad.
a. study b. studied c. were studying d. are studying

Unit 6: Countable and uncountable nouns / Nouns without singular or plural, Some/any/no and their compounds, How much...?/How many...?/much/many/a lot of / lots of / a little / little / a few / few, Comparatives

Countable nouns

Countable nouns can be counted and have singular and plural forms. We can use **a/an, one** in the singular form and **numbers, some, any, (a) few**, etc. in the plural.

Certain nouns are always in the plural form.

- **people, clothes, goods**

His clothes are always clean.

- All nouns that consist of two parts: **glasses, trousers, jeans, sunglasses, scissors**, etc. We use the expression **a pair of** to express quantity with these words.

Angie wears glasses.

George has bought two new pairs of jeans.

- Words such as **family, team, group, audience, class, government, crew** are **collective nouns** and may take either a singular or a plural verb depending on their meaning.

Tina's family is rich. Tina's family are on holiday.

- The word **police** always takes a plural verb.

Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns are only used with a singular form verb and we can't use **a/an** or **numbers** with them. To express quantity we use **some, any, much, (a) little, a lot of**, etc.

Uncountable nouns usually describe:

food	meat, sugar, cheese, butter, etc.
liquids	milk, water, coffee, etc.
materials	wool, gold, paper, glass, etc.
ideas/situations	love, help, freedom
natural phenomena	rain, snow, etc.
some concrete nouns	furniture, money, luggage, traffic, etc.

- With uncountable nouns which state **food** or **liquid**, we can use the following expressions to show quantity: **a bottle / cup / glass / can / slice / piece / loaf / carton / box / packet / kilo / litre / bar / bowl**, etc. + **of**

a loaf of bread four cartons of milk

- The words **hair, light, glass, wood, rain, experience** can also be used as countable nouns in the plural form, with a difference in meaning.

<i>Steve's hair is dark.</i>	<i>There are dog hairs on the sofa.</i>
<i>My room doesn't get much light.</i>	<i>The lights are on, but there's nobody home.</i>
<i>This isn't a diamond ring, it's just glass.</i>	<i>Have you seen my glasses anywhere?</i>
<i>This table is made of wood.</i>	<i>Would you like to go for a walk in the woods?</i>
<i>My sister likes walking in the rain.</i>	<i>How often do the rains come in Thailand?</i>
<i>Have you got any previous job experience?</i>	<i>We had some fascinating experiences when we visited China.</i>

Some/Any/No and their compounds

- We use **some + uncountable / plural countable nouns** in affirmative sentences and in questions when we offer something or ask for something politely.

There is some orange juice in the fridge.

Would you like some chips?

Could I have some coffee?

- We use **any + uncountable / plural countable nouns** in questions and negative sentences.

Is there any orange juice in the fridge?

There aren't any chips on the table.

- We use **no (= not any) + uncountable / plural countable nouns** in affirmative sentences to give a negative meaning.

There is no cheese in the fridge. = There isn't any cheese in the fridge.

	some	any	no
People	someone somebody	anyone anybody	no one nobody
Things	something	anything	nothing
Place	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere

- These compounds are used in the same way as **some, any, no** but they are not followed by a noun. They always go with singular verbs.

Everybody here works very hard.

I can't find my glasses anywhere.

How much...? / How many...? / much / many / a lot of / lots of / (a) little / (a) few

- We use **How much...?** with uncountable nouns to ask about the quantity of something.
How much milk is there?

NOTE

We also use **How much...?** to ask about the cost or price of something.

How much are these shoes? €100?

- We use **How many...?** with plural countable nouns to ask about the number of something.
How many cans of lemonade do we need?
- We use **much** with uncountable nouns, in questions and in negative sentences.
We haven't got much money.
- We use **many** with plural countable nouns, usually in questions and in negative sentences.
There aren't many books in the bookcase.
- We use **a lot of / lots of** with uncountable and plural countable nouns, usually in affirmative sentences.
There is a lot of coffee in my cup.
There are lots of apples in the fridge.
- We use **a little** with uncountable nouns, in affirmative sentences.
There is a little cheese on the table.
- We use **a few** with plural countable nouns, in affirmative sentences.
There are a few magazines on the table.
- We use **little** with uncountable nouns, when there's not enough of something.
We've got very little money, so we can't go shopping.
- We use **few** with plural countable nouns when there are not enough of them.
There are very few chairs in the room.

Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives and adverbs

- We use the **comparative** of adjectives and adverbs when we compare two people, animals or things. Adjectives and adverbs are usually followed by **than**.
- We use the **superlative** of adjectives and adverbs when we compare one person, animal or thing with several of the same kind. Adjectives and adverbs always take the definite article **the** and are usually followed by the prepositions **of** or **in**.

All one-syllable and most two-syllable adjectives take -er/-est	short - shorter - shortest happy - happier - happiest big - bigger - biggest
Adjectives with three or more syllables and some two-syllable adjectives take: more + adjective / most + adjective	interesting - more interesting - most interesting
All one-syllable adverbs and early take -er/-est	fast - faster - fastest early - earlier - earliest
Adverbs with two or more syllables take: more + adverb / most + adverb	carefully - more carefully - most carefully

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS

Positive form	Comparative form	Superlative form
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
little	less	least
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
many/much	more	most

Grammar Practice

A There is a mistake in each sentence. Find it and correct it.

1. They're happy because their business ^{is} ~~are~~ doing well.
2. The goods that you have ordered is already in the warehouse.
3. His luggage were so heavy that we had to drag it along the platform.
4. Most people doesn't like working at the weekend.
5. My jeans was in the wash, so I had to wear something else.
6. The police has arrived! Now you're in trouble.
7. Always remember that money aren't everything.
8. The scissors is in my drawer.

B Complete with the words in the box.

no some anything no one somewhere something anyone

1. A: I can't find anything to wear. All my clothes are out of fashion.
B: Have a look in my wardrobe. You'll find _____ for sure.
2. _____ wants to eat my cake. It's not tasty at all.
3. Martha didn't get the job because she had _____ previous experience.
4. Help me find my concert ticket. I'm sure it's here _____.
5. _____ students in my classroom love football. They're even in the school football team.
6. Look at your room! It's a mess in here. I haven't met _____ so untidy!

C Circle the correct words.

1. Not **many** / **much** people showed up at the concert.
2. **Few** / **Little** people go mountaineering during the winter.
3. There's very **little** / **a little** time left to get ready for the dance.
4. You needn't apply any more suntan lotion; you've got **lots of** / **lots** on.
5. There is **a lot of** / **a lot** traffic on the motorway.
6. You haven't made **much** / **many** serious mistakes in the test, but you should be more careful with your spelling.
7. We've only got **a little** / **a few** petrol left. We'd better stop at the next petrol station.
8. We need to get **a few** / **few** stamps from the post office. I want to send off my Christmas cards.
9. I couldn't find **many** / **much** information on ancient Greek art.
10. How **much** / **many** bread do you want me to buy?

D Cross out the wrong word.

Everyone knows how good milk and oranges are for you.
But have you tried Orange Choc Milk?
Here is what some people think of it:

It's (1) **much / more** than just a drink. It's a mouthful of flavour!

I'm sick of drinks with very (2) **much / more** flavour. It's (3) **better / best** than anything I've ever tasted.

It's the drink with the (4) **little / least** fat and the (5) **most / more** vitamins.

It's not only refreshing, it's also (6) **more cheap / cheaper** than orange juice or milk.

Try it for yourself!

E Complete the sentences with the comparative or the superlative form of the words in brackets.

- That's the silliest (silly) excuse I've ever heard.
- We prefer to stay in a hotel when we go on holiday. It's _____ (comfortable) than camping!
- My wife recently gave birth to twins, so now we need a _____ (big) car.
- Ms Barlow says she is 40 years old, but I think she looks _____ (old) than that, don't you?
- In my opinion, Prague is _____ (beautiful) city in Europe.
- Latisha was feeling sick this morning, but she is much _____ (well) now.
- The solution to this problem is _____ (complicated) than you may think.
- This handbag is probably _____ (expensive) accessory I've ever bought!
- The _____ (little) you can say about Emma is that she works _____ (hard) than anybody else!
- Brian got the job because he was _____ (experienced) than Martin.

Unit 7: Future will / shall, Future Continuous, Future going to

Future will/shall

We use the **Future will** for:

- predictions, usually with *perhaps* or after the verbs *believe, think, hope, expect, be sure*, etc.
I'm sure she'll pass the exam.
- promises
I'll never do that again.
- offers and requests
I'll drive you to the station.
Will you help me clean the kitchen?
- threats or warnings
Don't say that again or I'll punish you.
- on-the-spot decisions
I won't buy it; it's too expensive.

NOTE

For offers and suggestions we use **shall** instead of **will** in the first person singular and plural.

Shall I help you with the housework?

Shall we go to the cinema tonight?

Future Continuous

We use the **Future Continuous** for:

- an action that will be in progress at a specific time in the future:
At 6.30 pm tomorrow, I'll be travelling to Spain.
- a future action which has already been planned or is part of a routine:
We'll be working in the evenings next week.
- a polite request about someone's plans:
Will you be cleaning the house tomorrow morning?

Future going to

We use the **Future going to** for:

- future plans
Ron is going to study astronomy.
- predictions based on evidence
Look at that runner; he's going to win the race.

FUTURE TIME EXPRESSIONS

tomorrow, tonight

next month/year/week/Tuesday, etc.

this month/year/week/Tuesday, etc.

in an hour/year, etc. soon

Grammar Practice

A Put the verbs in brackets into the Future *will* or the Future *going to*.

1. 'Do all the guests want dessert?'

'I don't know. I will (ask) them.'

2. '_____ you _____ (come) over for dinner tonight?'

'OK. I _____ (come) at 8.30 pm.'

3. 'Why is Peter buying ski equipment? _____ he _____ (learn) how to ski?'

'Yes. He _____ (take) skiing lessons at the Winter Club.'

4. 'The weather has changed. It's very cold today.'

'Really? I _____ (take) a jumper with me then.'

5. 'Oh, no! Look at the fuel. We _____ (run) out of petrol soon.'

6. _____ you _____ (have) time to show me the sights if I come to Rome next weekend?

7. The police officer is stopping that car. He _____ (give) the driver a ticket for speeding.

B Put the verbs in brackets into the Future *will* or the Future Continuous.

1. It is almost certain that NASA will (send) man to Mars in the next two or three decades.
2. Kathy can't come shopping with us on Saturday morning. She (have) a French lesson.
3. Jenny, Ms Kingsley (contact) you as soon as the documents are ready.
 you (let) me know when she does?
4. At lunchtime tomorrow you (entertain) your friends from Mexico, so I
(ring) you later on in the evening.
5. you (go) to the concert by car? I'd really appreciate a lift.
6. Christine (work) overtime for a few days because of the Christmas rush.
7. Please, Mum, let me go to the dance. I (not come) home late, I promise.
8. In one year from now we (live) in our new house in Venice.

C Put the verbs in brackets into the Future *will*, the Future Progressive or the Future *going to*.

1. Don't call me after 10.00 tonight. I will be studying (study).
2. OK! You've convinced me! I (come) to the dance with you.
3. Look at how fast these two cars go! They (crash).
4. Don't worry, Dad. I (be) back in two hours.
5. Martha (work) as a lifeguard this summer?
6. This time tomorrow I (fly) to Rome.
7. you (use) your computer at the weekend?
If not, I'd really need to borrow it.
8. you (help) me with my Maths exercises?

Unit 8: Present Perfect Simple, Present Simple vs Past Simple, Present Perfect Continuous, since / for / how long

Present Perfect Simple

We use the **Present Perfect Simple**:

- for actions which happened in the past, but we don't mention when exactly.
I've lost my sunglasses.
- for actions that happened in the past and their results are obvious in the present.
Derek has washed his car.
- for actions which were completed a short time ago (usually with *just*).
I've just bought this CD. Do you like it?

TIME EXPRESSIONS

always, ever, never, before, so far, yet, already, just, once, twice, for, since, how long, recently, etc.

NOTE

- **have/has gone** means that someone has gone somewhere and is still there.
Joan has gone to the gym. (She's still there).
- **have/has been** means that someone has visited a place but has come back.
Joan has been to China. (Now she's back).

Present Perfect Simple vs Past Simple

WE USE THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE:	WE USE THE PAST SIMPLE:
- for actions that happened in the past, but we don't say when exactly. <i>I have eaten Mexican food.</i> - for actions that started in the past and are still happening in the present. <i>Ted has worked as a waiter for two years. (=he is still working).</i>	- for actions that happened at a definite time in the past. We say when. <i>I ate Mexican food last night.</i> - for actions that started and were completed in the past. <i>Ted worked as a waiter when he was a student.</i>

Present Perfect Continuous

WE USE THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS:

- for actions which started in the past and continue up to the present.
The children have been watching TV for four hours.
- for actions which were happening for a period of time in the past and may have finished, but their results are obvious in the present.
He's exhausted. He's been cleaning the house all day.

Since/for

- We use the **Present Perfect** with **for** and **since** for actions that started in the past and continue up to the present.

since + a point in time

It refers to the time when the action started.

I've had this car since 2001.

(How long have you had this car?)

for + a period of time

It refers to the duration of the action.

I've had this car for five years.

(How long have you had this car?)

Present Perfect Simple + since + Past Simple

Julia has changed jobs three times since she came to Luton.

Grammar Practice

A Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Continuous.

1. **Kelly:** Look at Dennis! He's so dirty! Has he been playing (he / play) in the mud?

Brian: No, he _____ (not play) in the mud. He _____ (play) football.

2. **Tom:** Hi, Sally! Where's Belinda? I _____ (wait) for her since 4 o'clock.
_____ she _____ (forget) about our date?

Sally: No, she _____ (not forget) about your date. She _____ (go) to the dentist and is going to be late.

3. **Lisa:** I _____ (work) hard all week and I _____ (not see) Jill.
_____ you _____ (see) her? Is she still on holiday?

Debbie: No, she isn't. _____ you _____ (not hear)? She came back on Wednesday but she's in hospital now. She _____ (break) both her legs.

B Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple, the Present Perfect Continuous or the Past Simple.

Dear Mario,

Hello! I hope everything is going well at home. I (1) 've been enjoying (enjoy) myself a lot here at Snowy Mountain. We (2) _____ (be) up here for five days. We (3) _____ (arrive) here on Wednesday and soon (4) _____ (settle) into our beautiful cabin, in the middle of the forest. The weather (5) _____ (be) nice so far. It (6) _____ (snow) a couple of times but we (7) _____ (not have) any snowstorms, so we (8) _____ (be) able to go out a lot.

It's 10.00 pm now, and I'm lying in my bed feeling exhausted. We (9) _____ (explore) three caves today. We (10) _____ (also / climb) lots of nearby slopes. Don't worry. We (11) _____ (not have) any accidents yet.

On Friday, we (12) _____ (go) to Bear Slope. Our guide (13) _____ (tell) us to be careful because the area is full of wild animals. I (14) _____ (not see) any, but Tony says that he (15) _____ (see) a bear. Can you believe it? Everyone knows that bears hibernate during winter!

Since we (16) _____ (arrive), we (17) _____ (also / learn) how to survive in extreme weather conditions. We (18) _____ (learn) how to build a shelter out in the snow. Isn't that great? I wish you were here with us!

I'm looking forward to seeing you soon.

Love,

Jerry

C Look at the prompts and write sentences. Use the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Continuous and *for* or *since*.

1. I / know / Sarah / she was ten
I have known Sarah since she was ten.

2. Enrique / learn / English / two years

3. we / have / this car / 1995

4. Amy and Ian / be / married / twenty years

5. I / want / to fly to the moon / I was a child

6. Ryan / be / unemployed / last year

7. my father / work / in this company / ten years

8. Heather / have / a bad cold / the past week

9. we / wait / for you / six o'clock this morning

10. it / rain / continuously / past two days

Unit 9: Relative clauses, Infinitive, -ing form

Relative clauses

Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns (*who*, *which*, *that*, *whose*) or the relative adverb *where*.

Pronouns

PEOPLE	who/that
THINGS ANIMALS IDEAS	which/that
POSSESSION	whose

Adverb

PLACE	where
-------	-------

Defining relative clauses give information which is needed to understand the meaning of the sentence. They are not separated from the main clause by commas.

She's the girl who/that lives next door.

The book (which/that) you bought is on the desk.

NOTE

- **Who, which** and **that** can be omitted if they refer to the object of the sentence. **Whose** and **where** cannot be omitted.
- In **formal language** prepositions appear at the beginning of the relative clause.
In **informal language** they appear at the end of the relative clause.
*The chair **on** which I'm sitting isn't very comfortable. (formal)*
*The chair (which/that) I am sitting **on** isn't very comfortable. (informal)*

Non-defining relative clauses give extra information about the person, thing or idea they refer to. They are always separated from the main clause by commas.

Mr Brown, who is our Geography teacher, is quite old.
Our car, which cost us a lot, keeps breaking down.

NOTE

- **Relative pronouns/adverbs** cannot be omitted in non-defining relative clauses; neither can we use **that** instead of them.
- Prepositions usually appear at the beginning of non-defining relative clauses.
This cupboard, in which I keep my old toys, hasn't been cleaned for ages.
- **Which** may also refer to a whole sentence.
He offered to give me a lift, which was very kind of him.

Infinitive

We use the **full infinitive** (to + base form of the verb):

- to express **purpose**.
He called to wish me happy birthday!
- after certain verbs: **want, would like, would love, decide, forget, learn, teach, need, plan, seem, tend, remind, promise, try, hope, manage, arrange, choose, offer, refuse, expect**.
Laura needs to buy a new car.

- with **too** and **enough**.

The soup is too hot to eat.

- After the structure **it + be + adjective**.

It's difficult to read his handwriting.

- After certain adjectives: **afraid, surprised, free, happy, ready, sorry**.

At last he was free to do what he wanted.

- After verbs followed by a question word (**who, what, which, where, how**, but not **why**)

Have you decided where to go for your holidays?

We use the **bare infinitive** (base form of the verb without **to**):

- after modal verbs (**can, could, will, would, should, may, might, must**).

Can you tell me what's wrong?

We may go to the cinema tonight.

- after the verbs **let** and **make**.

Fay always makes me laugh.

My brother doesn't let me drive his car.

NOTE

We can use the verb **help** with the bare or the full infinitive.

*I always help my mother **clean** the house.*

*I always help my mother **to clean** the house.*

- ing form

We use the **-ing form** (base form of the verb + -ing) as a noun. We use -ing forms:

- as **subjects**.

Fishing can be very relaxing.

- after certain verbs: **like, love, hate, enjoy, prefer, continue, stop, finish, start, keep, avoid, begin, imagine, practise, suggest, risk, spend (time)**.

Ken's just finished washing the dishes.

- after certain expressions: **don't mind, can't stand, be interested in, it's worth, how about, can't help, feel like, there's no point in**.

Louis is interested in taking up a language course.

- after **prepositions**.

Helen is thinking of buying a new car.

That knife is for cutting meat, not cheese.

- after the verb **go** to indicate activities.

We go skiing every year.

NOTE

- The verbs **like, dislike, love, hate, start, begin**, are followed by a **full infinitive** or an **-ing** form without any significant difference in meaning.
I like playing/to play the guitar in the evening.
- The verbs **stop, forget, regret, try** and **remember** are followed either by a **full infinitive** or an **-ing form**, but with a different meaning:
- We use **remember / forget / regret + ing** when we refer to something that has already happened.
I remember returning the book.
I'll never forget meeting them.
I regret shouting at her.

- We use **remember / forget / regret + full infinitive** when we remember/forget/regret something before doing it.
I'll remember to go to the supermarket.
Don't forget to lock the door.
I regret to say that I can't make it tonight.
- We use **try + ing** when we want to express that we will experiment on something and **try + full infinitive** to say that we'll make an effort to do something.
Try drinking some tea. It'll make you feel better.
I'll try to finish this project today.
- We use **stop + ing** when the action was stopped and not repeated and **stop + full infinitive** when the action was interrupted, but probably continued afterwards.
Ken stopped watching the news.
Ken stopped to watch the news.

Grammar Practice**A** Circle the correct words.**Dancing lions from China**

Even the hardest-to-please art critic would have been thrilled to see a live performance by the Chinese Acrobatic Theatre. The performance (1) **that / who** was given at the Coliseum last week certainly lived up to everyone's expectations. The opening number, (2) **which / that** was received with great enthusiasm by the audience, was performed by two giant red dancing lions. The dancers, (3) **whose / who** dancing was in perfect harmony with the music, impressed the audience with their talent. The lion dance was followed by a group of acrobats (4) **who / whose** balancing skills were really amazing. The stage, (5) **where / which** was decorated to look like the Chinese countryside, added to the whole atmosphere. The Chinese Acrobatic Theatre, (6) **which / who** is currently touring the world, is certainly something you shouldn't miss!

B Join the sentences using *who, which, whose, where* or *that*, as in the example.

1. Last week I read a book. It was written by Charles Dickens.

Last week I read a book which / that was written by Charles Dickens.

2. The Odeon cinema has closed down. My sister used to work there.

3. James was talking to his friend, Julie. Julie's mother is the headteacher of my school.

4. I met a boy at school. He has three pet cats

5. People say that the old mansion is haunted. The old mansion is on Pine Street.

6. The actress left. The reporter was interviewing her a minute ago.

7. We visited the museum. A famous coin collection is being exhibited there.

8. There was a snowstorm. This made driving conditions dangerous.

C Complete the blanks with the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

Director Oh, hello. You're right on time. I arranged (1) _____ *to see* _____ (see) you now because I must (2) _____ (leave) soon.

Bill Sorry?

Director Never mind. Tell me something. When did you start (3) _____ (sing)?

Bill Actually, I've come here (4) _____ (check)...

Director It doesn't matter. I hope you love (5) _____ (dance). It's no good (6) _____ (be) an actor without (7) _____ (know) how to dance. I want someone new (8) _____ (act) in my next play. I've decided (9) _____ (put) on a musical.

Bill A musical?

Director Yes, how about (10) _____ (dance) a little for me?

Bill But, I'm your new technician!

Director Technician? Who let you (11) _____ (come) on stage?

Bill I've come here (12) _____ (check) the lights but you didn't give me a chance (13) _____ (explain). You kept (14) _____ (talk) about (15) _____ (dance)!

D Choose a, b or c.

1. She stopped _____ a break before she started on the last exercise.

- a. take **b. to take** c. taking

2. If you have trouble sleeping, try _____ a cup of warm milk before going to bed.

- a. drink b. to drink c. drinking

3. I can't stand people _____ me what to do all the time.

- a. tell b. to tell c. telling

4. I hope _____ you again soon.

- a. see b. to see c. seeing

5. We can't go _____ today. It's Sunday and the shops are closed.

- a. shop b. to shop c. shopping

6. Our English teacher makes us _____ only English in the classroom.

- a. speak b. to speak c. speaking

7. There's no point in _____ to make him change his mind.

- a. try b. to try c. trying

8. This dish is very easy _____.

- a. prepare b. to prepare c. preparing

9. Fiona might still _____ at home. Why don't you give her a call?

- a. be b. to be c. being

10. I was surprised _____ that Jackie and Jill were sisters.

- a. find out b. to find out c. finding out

Unit 10: Question Words (Who...?, What...?, Where...?, How...?), Question tags, Indirect questions, Verbs with two objects

Question Words (Who...?, What...?, Where...?, How...?)

- **Who...?:** We ask questions about people.
'Who's that?' 'My friend Kim.'
- **What...?:** We ask questions about things, animals and actions.
'What's your favourite sport?' 'Basketball.'
- **Where...?:** We ask questions about places.
'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Madrid.'
- **How are you?:** We ask about someone's health or to find out someone's news.
'How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- **How old...?:** We ask about someone's age.
'How old are you?' 'I'm thirteen years old.'
- **How much...? How many...?:** We ask about quantity.
'How many oranges do we need?'
- **Why...?:** We ask about the reason.
'Why are you crying?'

Question Tags

Question Tags are short questions which are placed at the end of a statement. They are formed with the auxiliary verb and a personal pronoun in the same person as the subject of the verb.

- You are a teacher, aren't you?*
John can use a computer, can't he?
- When the statement is affirmative, the Question Tag is negative.
You are Bob's wife, aren't you?
- When the statement includes a negative word (no, not, never, hardly, nothing etc.), the Question Tag is positive.
You didn't forget to invite her, did you?
She hardly noticed anything, did she?
- When we are not sure about some information and want to confirm it, the tone of our voice rises in the Question Tag.
You passed your test, didn't you? → Yes, I did.
- When we are sure about some information and expect the listener to agree, the tone of our voice falls in the Question Tag.
It's dark in here, isn't it? → Yes, it is.

NOTE

I am your best friend, **aren't I?**
Let's sit over there, **shall we?**
Give me that parcel, **will / can / would / could you?**
Don't forget to call me, **will you?**
This / That is a nice shirt, **isn't it?**
Nothing is right, **is it?**
She can't dance very well, **can she?**
There's no reason for us to fight, **is there?**
She has breakfast at 9.00 am, **doesn't she?**
Everyone must come, **mustn't they?**
Somebody told you about the accident, **didn't they?**
No one will come, **will they?**

Indirect questions

- When you ask for information in a formal letter, you should start your question with expressions such as ***I would like to know ...*** or ***I would be interested in knowing***

When you begin your sentence like this, you should remember that your question loses the normal question word order.

Compare the following sentences:

Could you send me a brochure?
*I would appreciate it if **you could** send me a brochure.*
How much does a trip to Greece cost?
Do you work at the weekend?
Is your office open on Saturdays?

BUT

*I would like to know **how much a trip to Greece costs.***
*Could you tell me **if you work at the weekend?***
*I would be interested in knowing **if your office is open on Saturdays.***

Verbs with two objects

Certain verbs (**give, offer, lend, teach, sell, send, show, tell, make, buy**, etc.) take two objects. The **direct object** usually indicates a thing and the **indirect object** usually indicates a person.

- The normal word order in sentences with verbs that take two objects is:

SUBJECT	VERB	INDIRECT OBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
Mary	gave	the children	some books.

- We can use *to* and *for* before the indirect object. In this case, the word order is:

SUBJECT	VERB	INDIRECT OBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT
Mary	gave	a present	to her daughter.
Mary	bought	a present	for her daughter.

Grammar Practice

A Write questions. The words in bold type are the answers.

- Who did Brian meet yesterday?
Brian met **Kate** yesterday. She's from America.
- _____
There are **twenty-five** students in her classroom.
- _____
Sally visits her aunt **on Sundays**.
- _____
The boys are upset **because they failed the test**.
- _____
Chemistry is Jack's favourite school subject.

B Complete the blanks with Question Tags.

- She can't sing very well, can she? I wonder how she got a job as a singer.
- You have never been abroad, _____? You should travel and learn more about other cultures.
- Jane works for a law firm, _____? She must work long hours.
- Stop arguing with him, _____? It won't get you anywhere.
- No one has arrived yet, _____? I suppose it's still early.
- Some students will volunteer to plant trees, _____?
- Greg hardly practises on his guitar these days, _____? I wonder why.
- Mary should go to the doctor, _____? She doesn't feel well.
- Mr Rogers hasn't got any experience in this job, _____?
- Let's organise a picnic one day, _____? It'll be nice to eat outside.

C Change the questions below into indirect questions.

1. Do you have students from other countries?

I would like to know _____

2. How much will the course cost?

Could you inform me _____

3. Where can I find more information about your school?

I would be grateful if you could inform me _____

4. Are there any entrance exams?

I would be interested in knowing _____

5. How long was the preparatory course last year?

I would like to know _____

6. Have you received my documents yet?

Could you inform me _____

7. What kind of financial help do you offer your students?

I would appreciate it if you could tell me _____

D Put the words in the correct order and write sentences.

1. spoke / yesterday / angrily / Fay / to her sister

2. offered / to Mike / Anna / coffee / hasn't

3. French / my mother / to young children / teaches

4. me / present / Steve / give / didn't / a

5. sent / you / an invitation / to Peter / have / ?

Unit 11: Zero Conditional, Conditional Sentences Type 1, Conditional Sentences Type 2, Wish / It's time

Zero Conditional

Zero Conditionals express general truths.

IF - CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
If + Present Simple	Present Simple
<i>If you turn this switch,</i>	<i>the lights go out.</i>

NOTE

- In Zero conditionals we can use *when* instead of *if*.
When you turn this switch the lights go out.

Conditional Sentences Type 1

We use **Conditional Sentences Type 1** for something which is possible to happen in the present or future.

IF - CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
If + Present Simple	Future <i>will</i>
	Modal Verbs (<i>can, may, might, must, should</i>) + base form
	Imperative

If I see James, I'll give him his book back.
If you want a dog, you must promise to take care of it.
If you go to the supermarket, buy some milk.

Conditional Sentences Type 2

We use **Conditional Sentences Type 2** for unreal or imaginary situations which are unlikely to happen in the present or future.

IF - CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
If + Present Simple	would/could/might + base form

If I won the lottery, I would buy a farm in the country.
You could lose some weight if you went on a diet.

NOTE

- In Conditional Sentences Type 2 **were** is often used instead of **was** in the if-clause.
If I were rich, I would live in a luxurious house.
- We use **If I were you** to express an opinion or to give advice.
If I were you, I wouldn't buy it.
- **Unless** can be used instead of **if... not...** in conditional sentences.
I won't buy this car unless you agree. (= if you don't agree).

Wish / It's time

With the verb **wish** and the expression **It's time** we use the Past Simple, although we refer to the present / future. This use of the Past Simple is called Unreal Past.

We use:

- **wish + Past Simple:** to make a wish about a present situation which we would like to be different.
I wish I didn't have to take any more exams.
- **wish + could + infinitive:** to express regret about something we cannot do at present.
I wish I could help you.
- **It's time + Past Simple:** to express an unreal situation in the present.
It's time we did something about the situation.

NOTE

We usually use **were** after all persons with **wish** and **It's time**.
I wish this course were easier.
It's time you were more careful when driving.

Grammar Practice

A Expand the prompts into sentences. Use *Zero Conditional* and *Conditional Sentences Type 1 or 2*.

1. If / you / not finish / homework / you / not be allowed / go out / tonight
If you don't finish your homework, you won't be allowed to go out tonight.
2. If / I / have / enough money / I / buy / new / sports car

3. If / you / eat / a lot of chocolate / you / get / sick

4. If / I / be / you / I / buy / blue shirt

5. If / he / not / hurry / he / miss / bus / and / be / late / school

6. If / he / can / do / that / alone / he / not ask / your help

7. We / not go swimming / tomorrow / unless / weather / be / good

B Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

1. If you drop ice in water, it _____.
 a. floats b. will have floated c. floated
2. If I knew what to do, I _____ for your advice.
 a. asked b. wouldn't ask c. don't ask
3. Unless you _____, we'll miss our flight.
 a. will hurry b. didn't hurry c. hurry
4. If we don't protect dolphins, they _____ extinct.
 a. are b. won't be c. will become
5. You'll pay higher insurance if you _____ a sports car.
 a. buy b. will buy c. bought
6. If I _____ you, I would complain to the hotel manager.
 a. will be b. would be c. were
7. I _____ camping at the weekend if I weren't ill.
 a. will go b. would go c. went
8. They would join us for dinner if they _____ more free time.
 a. had b. would have c. will have

C Rewrite the sentences to form Conditional Sentences Type 1 or 2.

1. I'm ill, so I can't go to work today.

If I wasn't ill, I would go to work today.

2. I must take a painkiller. I don't want my headache to get worse.

If _____

3. I've got a flat tyre, but I don't know how to change it, so I have to wait for help.

If _____

4. I hope the mushroom soup is hot. I won't eat it if it isn't.

If _____

5. I work long hours so it's impossible for me to take up a sport.

If _____

D Read the situations below and make sentences using *wish*.

1. I want to go on holiday with my friends but my parents say that I'm not old enough.

I wish I were old enough to go on holiday with my friends

2. I am very busy and I don't have much free time.

3. I'm not very good at Science.

4. It takes me a long time to get to work every morning. It's so tiring.

5. My neighbours are noisy and I don't get enough sleep.

6. I haven't got any money on me so I can't buy this jumper.

7. It's very hot today! I can't stand it.

E Look at the pictures and write sentences using *it's time*, as in the example.

1. Sue / buy / new / car

It's time Sue bought a new
car.

2. Jimmy / go / bed



3. Jack / do / washing-up



4. we / mow / lawn



Unit 12: Passive Voice (Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Perfect, Future *will*, Modal Verbs)

Use

We use the **Passive Voice** to emphasise the action rather than who or what is responsible for it.

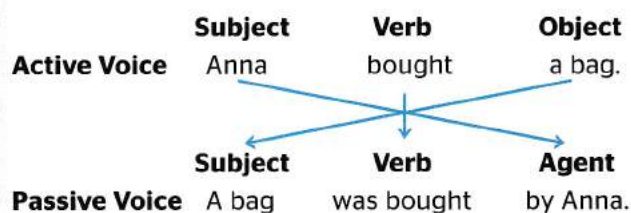
Formation

The Passive Voice is formed with the verb **be** in the appropriate form and the **past participle** of the verb of the sentence. The person who causes or carries out the action is called an **agent** and is preceded by the preposition **by**.

NOTE

We usually **omit** the agent:

- when the action interests us more than the agent.
- when we don't know the agent.
- when it is easy to figure out who the agent is.
The bank was robbed! (by someone who we do not know)
English is spoken in Australia. (by people)



PRESENT SIMPLE

I am called.
Are you called...?
They aren't called.

PAST SIMPLE

I was called.
Were you called?
They weren't called.

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

I've been called.
Have you been called?
You haven't been called.

FUTURE *will*

I'll be called.
Will you be called?
They won't be called.

MODAL VERBS

I can be called.
Should you be called?
They mustn't be called.

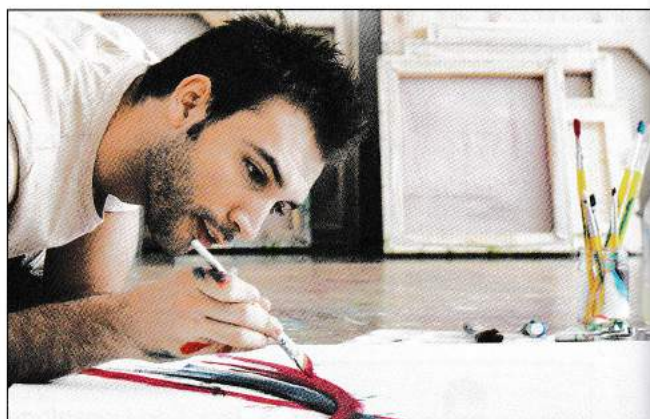
Grammar Practice

A Complete the sentences with the verbs given in the correct form of the Active and the Passive Voice.



give

- The soldier was given a medal by the mayor yesterday.
The mayor gave a medal to the soldier yesterday.



finish

- The painting _____ by the artist next Tuesday.
The artist _____ the painting next Tuesday.



save



see

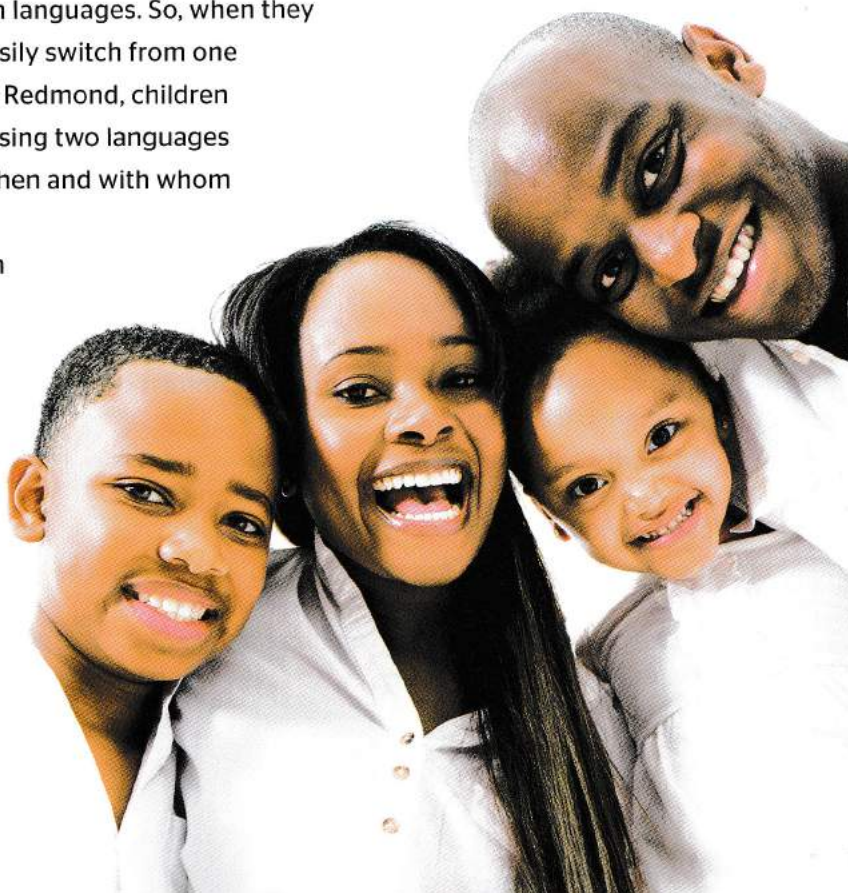


invent

3. The rescue team _____ sixteen people since this morning.
Sixteen people _____ by the rescue team since this morning.
4. People _____ thousands of UFOs every year.
Thousands of UFOs _____ every year.
5. Paper _____ by the Chinese.
The Chinese _____ paper.

B Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets in the Active or the Passive Voice.

Nowadays, more and more children (1) grow up (grow up) in homes where two languages (2) _____ (speak). In such cases, children need to (3) _____ (encourage) to feel comfortable with both the languages they (4) _____ (expose) to. Language experts (5) _____ (find) that children can learn two languages at the same time and that they can't really tell the difference between them. Young children (6) _____ (pick up) words very easily. The two languages (7) _____ (store) in the same part of the brain, and as children (8) _____ (get) older, they (9) _____ (think) and (10) _____ (dream) in both languages. So, when they (11) _____ (speak), they can easily switch from one language to the other. According to Dr Emma Redmond, children (12) _____ (not / confuse) by using two languages once they (13) _____ (learn) when and with whom they should use each language. However, the most important thing is to let children learn in an environment free from pressure, where they don't have to worry about grammatical rules. Making them fluent in both languages can be really frustrating unless parents (14) _____ (motivate) their children to communicate in both languages as often as possible. So, if they (15) _____ (love) the Power Rangers, then they should feel free to talk about their favourite heroes in either of the two languages!



C Rewrite the following sentences using the Passive Voice.

1. Felix has fixed the phone.

The phone has been fixed by Felix.

2. Father placed the presents under the tree while the children were asleep.

3. We'll inform you tomorrow.

4. The children broke the vase while they were playing.

5. The architect has already drawn up the plans for the new offices.

6. Three masked men robbed the bank yesterday.

7. You must send all the documents by tonight.

8. The company will pay for the damage.

9. Brenda will give Barbara the report tonight.

10. They brought him everything he had asked for.

Unit 13: Subordinate clauses, Clauses of purpose, Clauses of reason, Clauses of result, Exclamatory sentences**Subordinate clauses**

We use Clauses of Concession to express contrast or opposition to the main clause.

- **although + subject + verb**

Although he was starving, he didn't want any of the food they offered him.

- **in spite of / despite + noun / -ing form**

Despite the heavy rain, it was very hot.

In spite of feeling afraid, Jim went on the roller coaster.

- **in spite of/despite + the fact + that + clause**

He went to work in spite of/despite the fact that he had a terrible headache.

Clauses of Purpose

We use **Clauses of Purpose** to show the purpose of an action.

She spoke quietly (in order) not to wake the baby.

Henry took the car to the mechanic (in order) to fix it.

Clauses of Reason

Clauses of Reason express the **reason** for something. They are introduced by **because** and **as**. When the **clause of reason** comes before the **main clause**, they are separated by a comma.

*I didn't call you yesterday because I was very busy.
As I didn't have a map with me, I got lost.*

Clauses of Result

We use **Clauses of Result** to express the result of an action or a conclusion.

• so + adjective/adverb + (that)

He was so bored (that) he left before the end of the film.

• such + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun + (that)

It was such a hot day that we all went swimming.

NOTE

- We say **so much / many**, but **such a lot of**.
- *That* can be omitted, especially in spoken English.

Exclamatory sentences

We use **exclamatory sentences** to give emphasis to the meaning of the adjective/adverb or noun.

• how + adjective / adverb

How wonderful! How beautifully she sings!

• what + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun

What a beautiful day!

• so + adjective/adverb

It was so funny!

He plays the piano so well!

• such + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun

He's such an unusual man!

Grammar Practice

A Rewrite the sentences using the words given.

- Dean has a university degree, but he can't find a job. **although**
Although Dean has a university degree, he can't find a job.
- Even though it was raining, we went jogging. **despite**

- Although Danny loves horses, he has never tried horse riding. **fact**

- It was getting dark, but they went for a swim. **although**

- In spite of the fact that I was wearing a seatbelt, I got injured. **despite**

- He works long hours, but he doesn't earn a lot of money. **spite**

B Circle the correct word(s).

Paul and Sandra organised a 'Save Nature' group (1) **in order** / **to** plant some trees in their city. They went to the city council to ask for permission (2) **in order not** / **in order not to** get into trouble. The council liked their plan (3) **so** / **such** much that they gave the group some money (4) **as** / **to** buy some trees.

Then, Sandra and another member of the group went to an expert (5) **because** / **so** they wanted to know which trees would survive best in the environment of their city. The trees they chose would have to be strong in case the weather got very cold or very dry.

(6) **In order** / **As** more people would stop to ask what was going on during the weekend, the group decided to plant the trees on a Saturday. Paul and Sandra were sure that people would offer them their help

(7) **not in order to** / **in order not to** miss an opportunity (8) **as** / **to** do something good for the city.

C Look at the pictures and write two exclamatory sentences for each situation. Use *How* / *What* and the adjectives in the box.

pretty awful expensive long difficult



1. How expensive these shoes are!
What expensive shoes!

2. _____



3. _____

4. _____



5. _____

Unit 14: Past Perfect Simple, 1. Reported Speech (Statements) / 2. Reported Speech (Commands and Requests) / 3. Reported Speech (Questions)

Past Perfect Simple

We use the **Past Perfect Simple**:

- for an action which was completed before a specific time in the past.
They had had dinner by 8 o'clock.
- for an action which was completed before another action in the past. We use the Past Perfect Simple for the action that happened first and the Past Simple for the action which followed.
John had done all his shopping by the time we met.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

- before + point in time
- by + point in time
- before, after, when, by the time

1. Reported Speech (Statements)

In **Direct Speech**, we repeat the exact words that someone said. We usually use the verb **say** and the words of the speaker are put in quotation marks.
Irina said, 'Tina is on the phone.'

In **Reported Speech**, we report the meaning of what someone said, without using their exact words. We use a reporting verb, usually **say** or **tell**, followed by **that** (which can be omitted) and the reported statement.

Irina said that Tina was on the phone.

NOTE

- We use **say** when there is no indirect object.
'I can't fix the car,' he said.
He said that he couldn't fix the car.
- We use **tell** when there is an indirect object.
'I'll be late, Tom,' she said.
She told Tom she would be late.

- When we change a sentence from Direct to Reported Speech, pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to the meaning of the sentence. Also, the verb **come** changes to **go**.
*'I like **your** new bike,' said Ian.*
*Ian said that **he** liked **my** new bike.*
*Kelly said, 'I'll **come** to the cinema with you.'*
*Kelly said she would **go** to the cinema with me.*

- When the reporting verb (**say** or **tell**) is in the Past Tense, we usually make the following changes:

Present Simple → Past Simple

Karen said, 'I want to buy a new car.'
Karen said (that) she wanted to buy a new car.

Present Continuous → Past Continuous

Alan said, 'I'm having a shower.'
Alan said he was having a shower.

Past Simple → Past Perfect Simple

Lars said, 'I saw a bear behind the tree.'
Lars said he had seen a bear behind the tree.

Present Perfect Simple → Past Perfect Simple

Tim said, 'I've seen the Loch Ness monster.'
Tim said he had seen the Loch Ness monster.

Present Perfect Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous

Andy said, 'I've been waiting for an hour.'
Andy said he had been waiting for an hour.

will → would

Dan said, 'I'll call you later.'
Dan said he would call me later.

can → could

Mina said, 'I can show you the way.'
Mina said she could show me the way.

must → had to

Jim said, 'You must work hard.'
Jim said I had to work hard.

may → might

Paula said, 'I may go to Brazil.'
Paula said she might go to Brazil.

Conditional Type 1 → Conditional Type 2

Diane said, 'If we take a taxi, we'll get there quicker.'
Diane said if they took a taxi, they would get there quicker.

now → then

Mandy said, 'I'll talk to him now!'
Mandy said she would talk to him then.

today → that day

Tom said, 'We're meeting Tim today.'
Tom said they were meeting Tim that day.

yesterday → the previous day / the day before

Danny said, 'I visited my lawyer yesterday.'
Danny said he had visited his lawyer the previous day.

this morning / year, etc. → that morning / year, etc.

Mark said, 'I haven't eaten anything since this morning'.

Mark said he hadn't eaten anything since that morning.

here → there

Eric said, 'I saw it here'.

Eric said he had seen it there.

tomorrow → the next day / the following day

Sally said, 'I'm flying to Paris tomorrow'.

Sally said she was flying to Paris the following day.

ago → before

Ben said, 'I bought this car two days ago'.

Ben said he had bought that car two days before.

last week / month, etc. → the previous week / month, etc. the week/month, etc. before

Dave said, 'I called Mandy last week'.

Dave said that he had called Mandy the previous week.

next week / month, etc. → the following week / month, etc.

Gary said, 'I'll return the book next week'.

Gary said he would return the book the following week.

NOTE

- These changes cannot be made when the sentence expresses a **general truth** or the reporting verb is in the **Present, Future** or **Present Perfect Simple**.

'I enjoy cooking,' Simon said.

Simon said (that) he enjoys cooking.

'I will move to Dublin next year,' Eric says.

Eric says he will move to Dublin next year.

- The **Past Perfect** and the verbs **could, might, should, would** and **used to** do not change in Reported Speech.
- The **Past Continuous** usually doesn't change but when it does, it changes to **Past Perfect Continuous**.

2. Reported Speech (Commands and Requests)

- We commonly use **tell** or **beg, command, advise, warn** or **order** when we report commands and **ask** or **beg** when we report requests.
- The Imperative changes to **full infinitive** or **not + full infinitive**.
'Sit down, Rex,' said Dan.
Dan told Rex to sit down.
'Don't tell anyone, please,' Laura said.
Laura asked me not to tell anyone.

NOTE

- When the request is in question form, in Reported Speech it changes to **full infinitive**.
'Will you open the door, please?' Vicky said.
Vicky asked me to open the door.

3. Reported Speech (Questions)

- We usually introduce reported questions with the reporting verbs **ask, wonder** and the expression **want to know**.
- Reported questions follow the word order of affirmative sentences.
'Why did you go to the doctor?' he asked.
He asked me why I had gone to the doctor.
- If the direct question begins with a question word, the reported question also begins with the same question word.
'Where are you going?' she asked.
She asked me **where** I was going.
- If the direct question does not begin with a question word, the reported question begins with **if** or **whether**.
BUT
'Did you enjoy the concert?' he asked.
He asked me if/whether I had enjoyed the concert.
- When we change questions from Direct to Reported Speech, pronouns, tenses, adverbs, etc. change in the same way as when we report statements.

Grammar Practice

A Join the sentences. Use the time words given and the Past Perfect Simple.

1. The play started. Then Mr Brown arrived at the theatre. **by the time**
The play had started by the time Mr Brown arrived at the theatre.
2. Philip washed his car. A while later it started to rain. **before**
3. We went to bed. A while later, Dad arrived home. **by the time**
4. Joanne learnt to drive. Then she bought a car. **after**
5. Daniel read the books. Then he returned them to the library. **when**
6. Diane visited the art gallery. Then she met her friends. **after**

B Turn the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. 'You can leave earlier today, Nick,' said the teacher.
 The teacher told Nick *that he could leave earlier that day.*
2. 'I bought a beautiful ring last year but I lost it,' Kate said.
 Kate said _____
3. The dentist says, 'If you eat a lot of sweets, you'll have problems with your teeth'.
 The dentist says _____
4. Jeremy said, 'We should organise a dance competition next year, Terry'.
 Jeremy told Terry _____
5. 'Ted had fallen asleep by 10.00 p.m. yesterday,' Christine said.
 Christine said _____
6. 'I'm flying to New York today but I don't know when I'm coming back, Karen,' Mrs Phillips said.
 Mrs Phillips told Karen _____
7. The man said, 'Chickens don't fly, Mark'.
 The man told Mark _____
8. Uncle Rox said, 'If Helen wasn't afraid of dogs, I would buy her one'.
 Uncle Rox said _____
9. 'Carol, this is the best concert I've ever been to,' Tony said.
 Tony told Carol _____
10. My sister said 'I wish I were an astronaut'.
 My sister said _____

C Rewrite the sentences using the verbs given and Reported Speech.

1. Dennis asked Emily: 'Are you going to the cinema tonight?' want to know
Dennis wanted to know if/whether Emily was going to the cinema that night.
2. The woman said to the waiter: 'Bring me some more orange juice, please.' ask

3. Tom thought: 'What day is it today?' wonder

4. My father asked me: 'Have you finished your homework?' want to know

5. The passenger said to the taxi driver: 'Stop the car!' order

6. Jane asked herself: 'Where did I put my wallet?' wonder

7. Billy said to me: 'Don't worry!' tell

8. The woman said to the man: 'Please, please, help me!' beg

Unit 15: Causative form, All-Both-Neither-None-Either, Double conjunctions

Causative form

The **causative form** is used when we do not do something ourselves, but we arrange for somebody else to do it for us.

We painted the house last month.

(We did it ourselves.)

We had/got the house painted last month.

(A painter did it.)

The **causative form** is formed as follows:

subject + have / get + object + past participle

Present Simple: *I have my car fixed.*

Present Continuous: *I'm having my car fixed.*

Past Simple: *I had my car fixed.*

Past Continuous: *I was having my car fixed.*

Future will: *I'll have my car fixed.*

Present Perfect Simple: *I've had my car fixed.*

Past Perfect Simple: *I had had my car fixed.*

Modal Verbs: *I must have my car fixed.*

NOTE

- The interrogative and negative forms of the Present Simple and the Past Simple are formed with the auxiliaries **do / does** and **did**.

How often do you have your hair cut?

Sue didn't have her hair cut yesterday.

- In informal language we can use **get** instead of **have**.

I must get the washing machine repaired.

- If we want to mention who performs the action, we can add **by + agent** at the end of the sentence.

She always has her hair dyed by a hairdresser.

All-Both-Neither-None-Either

- All** is used for more than two people or things. It is used in affirmative sentences and takes a plural verb.

Anna, Mary and Chris are going to a concert. They are all very excited. / All of them are very excited.

B Rewrite the following sentences using the Causative Form.

1. My father always prepares my lunch.
I always have my lunch prepared by my father.
2. David called a technician to repair his new computer.

3. A private security company guards our neighbours' house.

4. I must ask the cleaners to clean the windows at the office.

5. Some technicians are installing a new security system in my office.

6. You should get somebody to fix the broken window.

7. Ray's first book was published last month.

C Complete the blanks with *all, both, either, neither, none*.

1. **Mike:** Do you want to travel by boat or by plane, Sharon?
Sharon: I don't mind at all. *Either* _____ is fine just as long as we get to the island!
2. Lucy and Ron are very good at chemistry. They _____ took part in an international chemistry competition and won prizes.
3. _____ of my friends have a car, so they _____ use the underground quite often.
4. _____ Robert and I want to go out but _____ of us have money, so we're staying at home.
5. _____ Robin nor Kelly wanted to work on Saturday.
6. **Ken:** Why did Martin and Paul have a fight?
Sean: I don't know. I haven't spoken to _____ of them since Tuesday.
7. Kim has three older brothers and _____ of them are doctors, like their father.
8. **Chris:** How are we going to get there?
Josh: We can _____ walk or take a taxi.
9. We've got two TVs, but _____ works properly. We'll have to buy a new one.
10. **Jean:** Which of the two dresses would you choose?
Josh: _____. They're _____ terrible.

D Join the sentences using *either ... or...*, *neither ... nor* or *both ... and...*

1. Jane is an optician. Michael is an optician too.

Both Jane and Michael are opticians.

2. Ken will complete his studies this year or next year.
-

3. I can't concentrate with the radio on and I can't concentrate with you talking to me all the time.
-

4. Sally hasn't bought tickets to the opera. Tom hasn't bought tickets to the opera either.
-

5. Craig has completed his project and handed it in.
-

6. I haven't read the book. I haven't seen the film either.
-

7. My new car is fast. It's economical too.
-

8. We can go skiing or skating.
-

Irregular Verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was (were)	been
bear	bore	born(e)
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lead	led	led
learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
leave	left	left

Base form	Past Simple	Past Participle
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proved / proven
put	put	put
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
smell	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt / spilled	spilt / spilled
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swear	swore	sworn
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
undergo	underwent	undergone
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Pronunciation

1

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. France b. British c. Chinese

B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	teacher	surname	pencil	English	nationality	French	class	Irish
France /s/								
British /ʃ/								
Chinese /tʃ/								

2

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. belts b. jeans c. dresses

B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	caps	bikes	chairs	watches	trainers	waitresses	boots
belts /s/							
jeans /z/							
dresses /ɪz/							

3

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. gets b. plays c. brushes

B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	paints	does	dances	has	goes	watches	visits	makes
gets /s/								
plays /z/								
brushes /ɪz/								

4

A Listen and repeat. Which letters are silent?



mustn't climb

B Read the words below and underline the silent letters. Then listen and check your answers.



know castle tonight talk listen eight design knee

5
A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. yoghurt b. orange


B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.


	hungry	burger	sausages	egg	vegetables	strange	go	dangerous
yoghurt /g/								
orange /dʒ/								

6
A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. rain b. raining


B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.


	snowing	fun	spring	woman	kitchen	young
rain /n/						
raining /ŋ/						

7
A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. watched b. played c. wanted


B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.


	started	happened	asked	listened	stayed	visited	liked	hated	helped
watched /t/									
played /d/									
wanted /ɪd/									

8
A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. south b. weather


B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.


	thousand	together	thirsty	toothbrush	father	another	birthday
south /θ/							
weather /ð/							

9
A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. lunch b. lab c. place


B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.


	Maths	same	fun	information	subject	practise	study
lunch /ʌ/							
lab /æ/							
place /eɪ/							

10

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. crisp b. wheel c. ride



B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	slide	cream	prize	each	hill	milkshake	why
crisp /ɪ/							
wheel /i:/							
ride /aɪ/							

11

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. café b. cinema



B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	medicine	welcome	card	centre	facilities	haircut	perfect	voice
café /k/								
cinema /s/								

12

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. hospital b. home



B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	doctor	road	moment	colleague	job	mobile	phone	officer	suppose
hospital /ɒ/									
home /əʊ/									

13

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. good b. group



B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	rule	put	wolf	soon	lose	pollution	bush	football
good /ʊ/								
group /u:/								

14

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.

a. French b. fridge



B Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	jeans	age	checked	teenager	match	century	imagine
French /tʃ/							
fridge /dʒ/							

15

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. **symbol** b. **easy** c. **wish**

D Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	reason	exhibition	design	receive	traditional	sure	mess	realise
symbol /s/								
easy /z/								
wish /ʃ/								

16

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. know b. now

D Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	doubt	home	over	crowded	council	show	totally	allow
know /əʊ/								
now /aʊ/								

17

A Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. **w**eb site b. **d**estroy

D Listen and tick (✓) the sound you hear.



	erupt	protect	decade	reduce	behave	metal	receive	regularly
website /e/								
destroy /ɪ/								

18

A Listen. Which syllable is stressed in each word?



a. organise b. organisation

D Read the following words and underline the stressed syllable. Then listen and check.



universe telescope disadvantage disappear temperature
information competition astronomer discover

19

Listen and repeat. Notice the difference in pronunciation.



a. **tough** b. **through**

D Listen and underline the words where *gh* is pronounced [f].



right enough daughter weight laugh cough bought
neighbour straight

Appendices

Appendix 1 Numerals

Ordinal numbers	Cardinal numbers
0 zero	
1 one	first (1st)
2 two	second (2nd)
3 three	third (3rd)
4 four	fourth (4th)
5 five	fifth (5th)
6 six	sixth (6th)
7 seven	seventh (7th)
8 eight	eighth (8th)
9 nine	ninth (9th)
10 ten	tenth (10th)
11 eleven	eleventh (11th)
12 twelve	twelfth (12th)
13 thirteen	thirteenth (13th)
14 fourteen	fourteenth (14th)
15 fifteen	fifteenth (15th)
16 sixteen	sixteenth (16th)
17 seventeen	seventeenth (17th)
18 eighteen	eighteenth (18th)
19 nineteen	nineteenth (19th)
20 twenty	twentieth (20th)
21 twenty-one	twenty-first (21st)
22 twenty-two	twenty-second (22nd)
23 twenty-three	twenty-third (23rd)
24 twenty-four	twenty-fourth (24th)
25 twenty-five	twenty-fifth (25th)
26 twenty-six	twenty-sixth (26th)
27 twenty-seven	twenty-seventh (27th)
28 twenty-eight	twenty-eighth (28th)
29 twenty-nine	twenty-ninth (29th)
30 thirty	thirtieth (30th)
31 thirty-one	thirty-first (31st)
...	...

Ordinal numbers	Cardinal numbers
40 forty	fortieth (40th)
...	...
50 fifty	fiftieth (50th)
...	...
60 sixty	sixtieth (60th)
...	...
70 seventy	seventieth (70th)
...	...
80 eighty	eightieth (80th)
...	...
90 ninety	ninetieth (90th)
...	...
100 a/one hundred	hundredth (100th)
101 one hundred and one	hundred and first (101st)
...	...
200 two hundred	two hundredth (200th)
...	...
300 three hundred	three hundredth (300th)
...	...
1000 a/one thousand	thousandth (1000th)
1001 one thousand and one	thousand and first (1001st)
...	...
1256 one thousand two hundred and fifty-six	thousand two hundred and fifty-sixth (1256th)
...	...
2000 two thousand	two thousandth (2000th)
...	...
10,000 ten thousand	ten thousandth (10,000th)
...	...
100,000 one hundred thousand	hundred thousandth (100,000th)
...	...
1,000,000 a/one million	millionth (1,000,000th)

Appendix 2 Prepositional phrases

AT

at + address	at heart	at random	at the crossroads	at the moment
at a glance	at ... km/miles per hour	at school	at the door	at the sight of
at a loss	at last	at short notice	at the end (of)	at the top/bottom of
at all costs	at least	at the age of	at the expense of	at the weekend
at ease	at night	at the back of	at the front	at university
at first	at noon	at the beginning (of)	at the hospital	at work
at first sight	at once	at the corner	at the latest	

BY

by accident	by chance	by force	by mistake	by phone/post/airmail
by all accounts	by cheque/credit card	by hand	by now	by profession
by all means	by day/night	by heart	by oneself	(take) by surprise
by bus/car/plane	by far	by means of	by one's side	

FOR

for a change	for certain/sure	for granted	for life	for sale
for a while	for example	for hire/rent	for one's sake	
for ages	for fear of	for instance	for the sake of	

IN

in a bad/good mood	in connection with	in/out of action	in pain	in support of
in a mess	in contact with	in/out of business	in pairs	in the beginning
in a queue	in court	in/out of control	in particular	in the city/country
in a row/rows	in debt	in/out of danger	in person	in the end
in a state	in detail	in/out of fashion	in practice	in the first place
in a while	in difficulty	in/out of hand	in prison	in the future
in addition (to)	in exchange for	in/out of order	in private	in the meantime
in advance	in fact	in/out of place	in progress	in the middle (of)
in answer to	in favour of	in/out of season	in public	in the mood for
in any case	in full	in/out of shape	in reality	in the mountains
in case of	in general	in/out of sight	in relation to	in the North/South
in cash	in half	in/out of stock	in reply to	in the streets
in charge of	in honour of	in/out of touch	in return	in the suburbs
in comfort	in hospital	in/out of use	in secret	in touch with
in common	in memory	in one's opinion	in shock	in town
in conclusion	in need of	in other words	in short	in trouble (with)

ON

on a diet	on average	on one's birthday	on time	on the one/other hand
on a farm	on board	on one's own	on top of	on the outskirts
on a journey/trip/tour	on business	on purpose	on the back of	on the phone
on an excursion	on display	on sale	on the contrary	on the radio
on an island	on duty	on schedule	on the corner	on the road
on arrival	on fire	on strike	on the floor	
	on holiday	on television	on the left/right	

OUT

out of breath	out of the ordinary	out of the question	out of work
out of date	out of practice	out of reach	

TO

to one's amazement	to one's astonishment	to one's surprise	to some extent	to this day
--------------------	-----------------------	-------------------	----------------	-------------

UNDER

under age	under control	under pressure	under the circumstances
under arrest	under the impression	under repair	under the weather

WITH

with regard to	with respect to	with a view to	with the exception of
----------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------------

WITHOUT

without (a) doubt	without delay	without fail	without warning
-------------------	---------------	--------------	-----------------

Appendix 3 Verbs, adjectives and nouns with prepositions

A

Verbs

accuse sb of
advise sb on/about sth
(dis)agree with sb about/on sth
aim at
apologise to sb for sth
apply to sb/sth for sth
(dis)approve of
argue with/sb about/for sth
arrest sb for sth
arrive at a building
arrive in a city/town/country
ask for

Adjectives

accustomed to
addicted to
afraid of
amazed at/by
amused at/with
angry at sth
angry with sb
annoyed about sth
annoyed with sb
anxious about
ashamed of
astonished at/by
(un)aware of

Nouns

(dis)advantage of
(give) advice on
an answer to

B

Verbs

beg for
believe in

belong to
benefit from
beware of
blame sb for sth
blame sth on sb
boast about/of
borrow from

Adjectives

bad at sth
bored with sth
busy with

C

Verbs

care about sb/sth
care for sb/sth
choose from/between
collaborate with
combine with
comment on
communicate with
compare with/to
compete with sb for sth
complain to sb about/of sth
concentrate on sth
confess sth to sb
congratulate sb on sth
connect to/with
consist of
contrast with
contribute to
cooperate with sb
cope with
cover sb/sth in/with sth
criticise sb/sth for

Adjectives

(in)capable of
careful of/about
careless about/of

certain about/of
close to
concerned about/for
confident of/about
conscious of
crazy about
crowded with
cruel to
curious about

Nouns

a comparison between
a complaint about
a connection between/with

D

Verbs

deal with
decide on
depart from
depend on
describe sth to sb
differ from
discourage from
distinguish between
divide sth between/among
divide sth into
divide by (Maths)
dream about/of

Adjectives

delighted with
dependent on
different from/to
disgusted by/at

Nouns

damage to
a decrease in
a delay in
a demand for

a description of
a difference between/in/of

E

Verbs

escape from
exchange sth for sth else
excuse sb for/from
explain sth to sb

Adjectives

engaged to sb
enthusiastic about
envious of
equal to
excellent at
excited about
experienced in

Nouns

an example of
an exception to
an expert at/in/on sth

F

Verbs

fight with
fill sth with sth else
forget about

Adjectives

faithful to
familiar to sb
familiar with sb/sth
famous for
fed up with
fond of
free from/of sth
friendly with/to
frightened of
full of

Nouns

a failure in

G

Verbs

glance at

Adjectives

generous to sb
good at sth
good for sb/sth
good to sb
grateful to sb for sth
guilty of/about

H

Verbs

head for/towards
hear about/of sb/sth
hope for

Adjectives

happy about/with sth/sb
happy for sb
harmful to

Nouns

hope for

I

Verbs

include in
insist on
introduce sb to sb/sth
invite to
involve in

Adjectives

identical to
impressed by/with
independent of
interested in

Nouns

an increase in
influence on
an/no intention of (doing sth)

J

Verbs

join in

Adjectives

jealous of

K

Verbs

know about sth

Adjectives

keen on (doing) sth
known as

Nouns

knowledge of

L

Verbs

lean on/against

lie to sb about sth

listen to

Adjectives

late for

Nouns

a lack of

M

Verbs

(be) made of/from
mean by
mention to
mistake sb/sth for sb/sth else

Adjectives

mad about sb/sth
mad at/with sb
married to
mean to sb

N

Verbs

nervous about

Nouns

a need for

O

Verbs

object to sb/sth
occur to

Nouns

an opinion of/about
an opportunity for
the opposite of

P

Verbs

pay for
point at/to
praise sb for sth
pray for sb/sth
prefer to
prepare for
prevent from
protect sb from/against sth
protest about/against/at
provide sb with sth
provide sth for sb
punish sb for
put the blame for sth on sb

Adjectives

patient with
pleased with
polite to
popular with
proud of

Nouns

protection from
(take) pride in

Q

Verbs

quarrel with sb about sth

Nouns

a question about

R

Verbs

receive sth from sb
recover from
refer to
relate to
rely on
remind sb about sth
remind sb of sb/sth
replace sth with sth else
rescue sb from
result from
result in
retire from

Adjectives

ready for
relevant to
respected for
responsible for
rude to

Nouns

a reaction to
a reason for
a reduction in
a relationship between
a relationship with sb
a reply to
a report on
a reputation for
the result of
a rise in

S

Verbs

save sb from
sentence sb to
shout at
smile at/to
speak to/with sb
specialise in
spend money on sth
stare at
steal sth from sb
succeed in
suffer from
supply sb with sth
suspect sb of sth

Adjectives

safe from
(dis)satisfied with
separate from
serious about
shocked by/at
short of

similar to
sorry for sb
sorry for/about sth
suitable for
superior to
sure of/about sth
surprised at/by
suspicious of

Nouns

a search for
shame on sb
(take) shelter from
a solution to
a specialist in
(feel) sympathy for

T

Verbs

take care of sb/sth
talk to/with sb about sth
thank for
think of/about
translate from/into

Adjectives

terrible at
terrified of
tired of
typical of

Nouns

a talent for
a taste of
a taste for
a threat to

U

Adjectives

upset about
useful for sth
useful to sb

Nouns

an understanding of

V

Verbs

vote for/against

W

Verbs

wait for
warn sb about/against/of
waste money on sth
wonder about
worry about

Adjectives

weak at sth
worried about
wrong about

Unit 1.

A.

It was a beautiful summer day. The sun was shining brightly and a light breeze filled the studio with the sweet smell of flowers. A painting stood on an easel in the middle of the room. It was a life-sized portrait of an extraordinarily handsome young man. The artist, Basil Hallward, was sitting in front of the portrait, and Lord Henry Wotton was relaxing on the sofa, smoking a pipe. 'It is your best work yet, Basil,' said Lord Henry, as he removed the pipe from his lips. 'You must exhibit it at a gallery.' Basil shook his head. 'I don't think I'm going to exhibit it anywhere,' he said. Lord Henry raised an eyebrow in surprise. 'My dear friend, why not? The portrait is magnificent! It will make you the most famous young artist in England.' 'This might sound foolish to you, Henry,' said Basil, 'but the reason I don't want to exhibit it is because I've put too much of myself in it.' Lord Henry laughed. 'Too much of yourself? I hate to say this Basil, but you don't look anything like the young man in the portrait. He is very handsome. You are not.' Basil stirred his paints. 'I am aware of that, Henry. What I mean is I painted this portrait with real feeling. It is an expression of my deepest emotions. I'm afraid that if people see it, they will see the secret of my soul.' Lord Henry stretched lazily and laughed. 'The secret of your soul? And what is that?' Basil sighed. 'Very well, Henry, I will tell you the story, but I don't think you'll understand. Two months ago, I went to a dinner party at Lady Brandon's house. I was talking to a group of very boring people, when I noticed a young man on the other side of the room. That was the first time I ever saw Dorian Gray, the man in the painting.' 'Dorian Gray. So that's his name,' said Lord Henry. 'I can't explain to you what our first meeting was like, Henry,' Basil continued. 'I had a strong feeling that Dorian would change my life forever. And he has. I see things differently now; Dorian's beauty and sweet nature have given me a new vision of art. He has become my best friend and my inspiration. But he doesn't know how much he has affected me. And if I show this picture to the world, everyone will know, including Dorian.' Lord Henry stared at Basil through the smoke that rose from his pipe. 'That is the most extraordinary thing I've ever heard! I'm really looking forward to meeting this Dorian Gray,' he said. Basil stopped stirring his paints and turned to look at Lord Henry. 'Dorian Gray is a good person. You are a bad influence on young people and I know you enjoy this, but please, Henry, don't spoil Dorian, and don't take him away from me. My success as an artist depends on him.' Lord Henry smiled. 'I promise I'll behave, Basil.'

B.

1.

Woman What's up? You don't look very happy.

Man I've been thinking about my relationship with Lucy.

Woman What's wrong?

Man Well, Lucy is into art so we have been going to museums and art galleries this whole month. I don't mind going to these places. In fact, I've even started to appreciate some of this art stuff. It's just that when I ask Lucy to do something I want, it's always no, no, no.

Woman Sounds like bad news to me. You should tell her that in a healthy relationship there has to be some give-and-take. In other words, both of you have to be satisfied.

2.

Maria I'm never speaking to him again!

Andy (sighs) What has he done this time?

Maria You mean apart from forgetting my birthday?

Andy Don't take it so hard. John has been very busy lately and he has had a lot on his mind.

Maria But he is always putting his work first. I just wish he would take my feelings into consideration too.

3.

Liz I've been looking at these pictures of your parents for some time now, and I can't really tell which of the two you look like.

Bill Neither. But take a look at this picture of my mother's brother and tell me what you think.

Liz My God! You're exactly the same!

Bill But my dad insists that I take after his side of the family.

4.

Woman 1 Jonathan has been working on that stupid car engine all day!

Woman 2 Why doesn't he just take the car to the garage?

Woman 1 What? And admit that he can't fix something?

Woman 2 My husband's the same. Once he gets an idea into his head there's no changing his mind. I can't complain, though. He's been like that since the day we met.

5.

Man I'm a better swimmer than you, Kelly!

Woman I don't think so, Frank. I have been swimming since the age of five.

Man I'm definitely faster than you, Kelly. I have been competing in swimming competitions for many years now.

Woman Have you ever beaten Mark in a race?

Man No, he is the fastest swimmer in our school.

Woman Well, guess what, Frank, I beat Mark last week. So, what does that make me?

6.

Man Rita is really good at singing, acting and dancing.

Woman Well, that's because she's been practising all her life. The question is, can she come up with anything original?

Man What do you mean?

Woman Take Joan, for example. Although she doesn't work as hard as Rita, she's a much better performer because of her natural talent and creativity.

Unit 2.

A.

Man I've been invited here today to talk to you a little bit about high-rise buildings. Did you know that skyscrapers were first built by American businessmen because they wanted to show everyone how successful their businesses were? I can give you the example of the Woolworth Building, which impressed everyone enormously back in 1913. It had sixty floors and that was a long time ago. It is a beautifully-decorated building with spires and ornaments actually similar to those found on Gothic cathedrals, those beautiful churches in Europe.

Now, you can just imagine how difficult it would be to get to your office on the twenty-fifth or... fifty-seventh floor without the help of a lift. Well, common sense will tell you that the lift and, for that matter, the steel skeleton frame, had already been invented before skyscrapers. (pause)

The lift was actually invented by a man called Elisha Graves Otis in 1851, and the very first skeleton frame building was designed by a major. He was Major William LeBaron Jenney, and this first building was completed in 1883. His initial aim was to build a fireproof building specifically for offices, giving them maximum space and light.

The most interesting aspect of this steel frame construction was that the walls didn't have to begin at the bottom anymore. In addition, architects had a lot more freedom when they were designing new buildings. They could now leave the walls free for big windows, for instance. One of the world's most famous constructions up to this day is the Empire State Building. In

this case, a floor a day was built, which was no mean feat back in 1931. The Empire State Building has a hundred and two floors which required ten million bricks, and it's actually got 6,400 windows. When it was built, it could be seen from eighty kilometres out at sea.

B.

1.

Woman Come on, we're late! The reservation is at seven!

Man I know, but I can't find the keys. They're not in the kitchen, where I always leave them.

Woman Did you leave them in the car again?

Man No and they're not in the bedroom, either. Oh! I found them, they were in my jacket.

2.

Woman So, where should we put these new chairs? On the balcony, maybe?

Man Yeah, why not? Um, wait. How about over there by the window? Or here, in the living room?

Woman Hmm... I'm not sure. Maybe they'd look good over there, next to the stairs.

Man I don't think so. I think your first idea is the best.

3.

Man I'm interested in renting the third-floor flat on Wool Street. Is it still available?

Woman That one has just been taken, I'm afraid, but there's one on the same street which is free. Ah, there's also a similar flat on Duke Street.

Man What floors are they on? I don't want a ground-floor flat.

Woman The one on Wool Street is no good then, but the flat on Duke Street is on the second floor.

4.

Man Is there anything for rent in your block? I'm looking for a new flat.

Woman But why? Your flat is so convenient.

Man It's not, actually. It's close to the college, but it's far away from just about everything else. Plus, if you remember, it could really use some renovation. The bathroom is in bad shape and the cooker hasn't been fixed for months now.

Woman Did you tell the landlord about it?

Man I did but he just doesn't care, I could probably do a lot of the work myself. But you see, on top of everything else, the flat just got more expensive, by about 40 pounds a month! I can't afford it.

5.

When I was little, I used to go to my grandparents' old farm house, a couple of hours away from Kyiv, every summer break. Some of the farms were abandoned, but in the summer months many of them came to life. We had to dust and clean the house for a whole day before we could move in. I remember what a good time we children had, cutting the wild grass in the garden and taking care of the fruit trees. And of course playing for hours and hours. The children's room was upstairs and had a window with beautiful green shutters. I will never forget the view of the river, and the birds flying over the fields in the evening. My clearest memories are of the main hall downstairs. It served as both sitting room and dining room. That's where we spent most of our time—when we were not outside playing in the garden, that is.

6.

Man Hi. I'm calling about the flat.

Woman Right. Well it's a three-bedroom flat in a very peaceful area, as you may have seen in the ad.

Man I'd like some more information. The apartment block seems pretty old from the pictures. Has any work been done on it recently?

Woman Yes. The central heating was changed and the bathrooms were renovated five years ago.

Man Hmm. What about the kitchen? Does the flat come with the fridge, the cooker and so on?

Woman It does indeed. And there is a lovely counter between the kitchen and the dining room.

Man That sounds nice! One last question. How far is the nearest primary school?

Woman That would be over a mile, on McDougal Street.

Man That's a bit far, but I suppose it could work. Well... thanks for your help. I'll get back to you if I have any more questions!

Unit 3.

A.

Nancy Can you believe it? It seems like only yesterday we were in our first year and now this is our final year at secondary school.

Sean Yeah, it's amazing how fast time goes by. My sister has another 4 years to go, but I keep telling her that it will be over before she knows it.

Nancy Anyway, have you decided what you are going to study at university?

Sean Well, my dad wants me to study business administration so that one day I can take over the family business.

Nancy You're so lucky you have a job waiting for you once you finish university. I'm going to study Law, but with all the competition and unemployment in this town, who knows if I'll ever get a job as a lawyer? I'll probably just end up serving people in restaurants.

Sean Come on. It isn't that bad. My problem is that I can't imagine myself in a suit with a bunch of middle-aged men discussing money all the time. Ever since I was a child I've dreamt of becoming a singer and being followed by my fans everywhere I go.

Nancy Have you talked this over with your dad?

Sean Yes. He thinks I'll only be wasting my time if I don't go to university.

Nancy I know! Why don't you do a part-time degree in Business Administration at university and work as a singer at weekends too?

Sean That's exactly what I was thinking myself. By the way, when is enrolment?

Nancy Let's see. It's 20th April today, and enrolment is not until the second week of next month. It's on the 14th, to be exact.

Sean Hopefully, we will get accepted at one of the local universities.

Nancy Yeah, they are all centrally located and it takes only 30 minutes to reach any one of the universities.

Sean Actually, with the new motorway that they are building, it will be 10 minutes faster.

Nancy That will be great, but building a road is a big project and by the time they finish, we will have graduated from university.

Sean Speaking of finishing projects on time, have you started working on your Arts and Crafts project?

Nancy Well, I still need to buy some things like glue, coloured paper, and some markers.

Sean I can give you some coloured paper and markers if you like.

Nancy Great! Do you also have a pair of scissors?

Sean Yes, I do.
Nancy Brilliant! That means I only have to buy one thing.
Sean Hey, I almost forgot. Do you want to come to my show on Saturday night?
Nancy I'd love to! Where are you performing?
Sean At the Molson Centre.
Nancy Oh, no! Don't tell me I have to take a taxi there!
Sean No, you can take the bus or the underground, but if you call Sammy, he should be able to give you a lift in his car.
Nancy Alright, I'll give him a call.
Sean Great! I'll see you on Saturday.
Nancy OK. Bye.

B.

Teacher It's funny how some people seem to have a knack for learning a second language, while others find it quite difficult. Generally speaking, though, many hours of hard work and study are involved. That's why many students go to language schools, which make language learning quicker and easier.

In countries like the United Kingdom, for example, special language schools have been established for those who are interested in visiting the country and learning the language at the same time. These schools do not run all year round, but only for a few weeks during the summer.

Many would think that these schools are only for the young, but in fact just the opposite is true. People of all ages are welcome and attend them for a number of reasons. Some find it necessary to learn English for job purposes, while others have to sit special exams to enter a university or just want to improve their English. But for whatever reason they learn English, the good thing is that different age groups are not put together. In actual fact, people of similar ages are put in the same class; that way, they're more likely to have things in common. The classes are small and this gives students the chance to make new friends quickly.

The programmes these language schools offer are quite full and very interesting. Forget about traditional teaching methods. In fact, only one third of the lessons take place in classrooms. Most of the learning is done outside the classroom, where you not only practise the language, but also experience English culture firsthand, although you don't really get to meet as many English people as you'd expect. Probably because you're not there very long. As for the teachers... they're not only from the United Kingdom, but from other English-speaking countries as well.

A typical day would involve a couple of hours of lessons before lunch and some art, like painting or pottery in the early part of the afternoon. Or, if the students enjoy physical activities more, they can play a game of tennis or do some other sport. After dinner, there's a variety of things to do, like going to the theatre or a club, just to name a few. There's always something to please everyone.

Unit 4.

A.

1.

Woman I've got a problem with my motorbike. When I'm riding, it suddenly stops.
Man Bring it in and I'll have a look.
Woman Do you have time this afternoon?
Man I'm free after 5 o'clock, but bring it in anytime you like. If you have trouble getting it here, just give me a call.
Woman That's great. Thanks!

2.

Man Are you not working today?
Woman I am, I'm working after 3 o'clock. Patty is in this morning.
Man What time do you finish tonight?
Woman About eleven thirty, but if we have a lot of customers the kitchen stays open longer. It was really busy last night because it was the end of the student year.

3.

Woman We start work at about 6 o'clock so that we have sandwiches ready at 8 o'clock when we open. Many people come in before they go to work so they have something to take to work for lunch. Our other busy time is between 12.30 and 2. By 3 o'clock we have cleaned up and closed the shop. I get back home at 3.30.

4.

Man Well, now we move on with what is today's most interesting news. A young unemployed Irishman, who remained jobless for several months despite having sent tons of applications to different companies, came up with a brilliant idea of how to advertise himself in order to find a job.

What the young job hunter did was to post an advertisement with a clever slogan on a billboard on one of Dublin's most central roads. The slogan read 'Save me from Emigration' and it showed him holding a suitcase and staring across the sea. At the bottom of the billboard the viewer could find the young man's contact details and a short CV. So, what do you think was the outcome of this inventive young man's self-advertising? Well, only two days after posting the advertisement he was contacted by many interested employers. There you go, then. If you're in a similar position, don't just sit there waiting for things to happen. Rather choose, like this young lad did, to make things happen!

5.

Woman What's up? What's put that big smile on your face?
Man Remember I had an important meeting with my boss today and I was worrying about what would come out of it?
Woman Of course. And?
Man Well, I got a promotion which also means a significant pay rise, my own office and five additional days off per year. I really can't believe my luck!
Woman That's great news! Congratulations! It's not luck, though, but your qualifications and experience that paid off. I only hope that all this doesn't mean you have to work long hours as we barely see you anyway as it is.
Man I'm not sure, but I guess that working overtime comes with the position!

6.

Woman Hello, everyone. Let me start off by welcoming you to our company! My name is Anne Reckings and I am the personal assistant to the manager of the department you are going to be working for. The manager, Mr Paul Jacobs, has asked me to give you a quick introduction to our working environment. Your job responsibilities will be provided to you by the manager, and at the end of the day the CEO of the company, Mr Paul Hill, whom you have not had the pleasure of meeting, will welcome you himself. After that, you will be given a schedule for the training sessions you need to attend before you start working.

B.

Presenter And with us today on Teenage Watch we have Reg Nicholson, a careers guidance counsellor with the Welton City Council. He's here to give advice to all you school leavers out there.
Reg Well, actually to anyone who might be looking for a

job at the moment. But, as you said, school leavers will be particularly interested as it is that time of the year when exams are over and many young people just out of school will be looking for their first job.

Presenter Won't many of them be applying for places at university too?

Reg Yes, of course, and my first point will be of particular interest to them. When filling in their application form, they have to make sure they print all their details firmly and clearly, or better still, type it. That way, whoever has to read it won't have any problems. However, printing with clear capitals will do just as well.

Presenter Well, that's good to know. Now, I suppose the next obvious thing to talk about is CVs, but surely school leavers don't need to worry too much about that.

Reg On the contrary, school leavers have a lot more than they think to put in their CVs. For example, potential employers will want to know about their schooling and any after-school activities they were involved in.

Presenter What exactly do you mean?

Reg Oh, you know, if they were in the drama club, if they played for the school football team or worked on the school newspaper and so forth. It's a good idea to put all that in their CV.

Presenter Why is that, Reg?

Reg Well, it gives would-be employers a better idea of what their personality is like, and what skills they have.

Presenter Oh, come on, Reg! What would be the advantage of being good at football in the work place?

Reg Well, if someone is good at football, it means they like being in a team. Many employers expect their workers to cooperate with their fellow workers, in other words be part of a team.

Presenter Yes, I suppose you are right. In fact, it's a little bit like that here in the studio. Without careful teamwork, it would be chaos.

Reg That's right! And I guess most of the people here in the studio came here highly recommended by their previous employers.

Presenter You're talking about references now, of course.

Reg That's right. Though it's not absolutely necessary to provide a potential employer with references from a previous position, it is a very good idea to do so.

Presenter And, I suppose school leavers can ask their former teachers for a reference.

Reg That's right. You see it's all quite straightforward and... (fade out)

Unit 5.

A.

1.

Man I know you want to go to the wedding, but we have to go to my mother's birthday party... Yes, I know Jane is a close friend, but my mother will be upset if we don't go. The whole family will be there, even David. I'm picking him up from the airport on Saturday morning. Anyway, did you order the flowers?... Good. Now, about Jane, let's meet later and get the wedding gift, we'll buy them something nice to make up for not going, OK? I've got to go now... I'm on my way to a seminar... Right, the one I was telling you about the other day...

2.

Man Roger it's me, Glen! Are we still on for meeting later?... Good! Just didn't want to make it all the way to the West End and then find out you're not there... Now look, I need your advice about what to get for Camilla's birthday on Saturday... No, not for her stupid! I've got her present. It's for me!... I'm not sure what to wear. There's a sale on at Topshop in Oxford Street. A pair of designer jeans and a Gaultier T-shirt perhaps? Or is that too casual?

3.

Jane So, where are we going tonight?

Paul I'm not sure. There's a concert at the town hall.

Jane No, we're too late. We'll never get tickets for that.

Paul You're right. OK, let's go to Club 77, then.

Jane Again? It's getting a bit boring there. Isn't anyone having a party tonight?

Paul No, Kevin's having one tomorrow, remember? Listen, let's go to Club 77 until we get bored, then we can go home.

Jane OK, I suppose it's not so bad on Friday nights.

4.

Henry Hey Emma, you look down. What's up?

Emma I've got friend problems.

Henry What? But you've got loads of friends.

Emma No, it's not that. It's Jenny.

Henry Is that the girl from your Spanish class?

Emma Yeah, that's right.

Henry What's wrong? She seemed really nice.

Emma You think? I'm not so sure. She was all right in the beginning but now...

Henry She's starting to get on your nerves.

Emma Yeah, and she keeps ringing me up. I don't want to hurt her feelings but I don't think I want to hang out with her any more.

Henry That's a tough one.

5.

Woman James and I were travelling on board a superjumbo A380 from London to Hong Kong. We both have business interests in both parts of the world and we have to do a lot of travelling back and forth, but we had never, shall I say, bumped into each other before. I had just started dinner when the captain announced that we should fasten our seat belts due to some air turbulence. Well, at that moment, James was passing in the aisle and the plane jumped ever so slightly but enough to send him crashing into me and my dinner! He was terribly apologetic, poor thing. Anyway, when we were disembarking, he came over to apologise again and, well, that was five years ago and we are still together. A match made 'near' heaven I suppose you could say!

6.

Man It looks delicious, Aunt Mary. You really shouldn't have gone to all this trouble.

Woman That's all right, dear. It gives me something to do. Since I stopped working, I'm so lonely and bored. I spend most of my time watching TV or peering out the window at the neighbours.

Man Why don't you do a course? Is there anything you're interested in?

Woman I don't know...

Man You like art so why not do an Art History course?

Woman I don't know... what would that involve?

Man Tell you what, I'll find out.

Woman All right...

B.

- Man** With us this afternoon is Dr Hilary Jolly, who is the Senior Consultant Psychologist at the Grand Russell Street children's hospital. Thanks for coming on the show, Dr Jolly.
- Woman** Thank you for having me.
- Man** Dr Jolly, we would like you to give us some information on what to say or not say to young children starting their school careers.
- Woman** You mean what would be encouraging and what could be discouraging?
- Man** Exactly!
- Woman** 'You should be able to do that because it's easy.'
- Man** Sorry! What do you mean?
- Woman** Ha, ha that's just an example of what you shouldn't say to your five-year-old if he or she is finding it difficult to add 3 and 4 to get 7. No, it's better to say something like 'I'm pleased that you tried so hard'. You see, recognising a child's effort to complete a task makes that child feel valued.
- Man** So, we shouldn't say things like 'You just need to try harder'.
- Woman** That's right! Better to say something like 'I can see this is difficult for you'. Your child will understand that it is normal to sometimes need help.
- Man** My mother was always telling me that there were times when she found school work very dull.
- Woman** Your mother was very smart. You see, by pointing out to children that we ourselves had difficult periods, we reassure them and they don't feel like there is something wrong with them.
- Man** And then, of course, my dad was telling me all the time how proud he was of me.
- Woman** Very positive! My father was always telling me that I disappointed him by not coming first in the class. This makes a child feel like a failure, and they may just give up on school altogether.
- Man** You obviously didn't, but perhaps that's why you became a psychologist.
- Woman** Yes, that had occurred to me, ha, ha... and do you know I have to be careful with my own kids. For example, I loved reading when I was at school, but my daughter can't stand it, so I must take care not to say something like, 'I don't know why you don't like it, I loved it when I was at school.' We are all individuals, after all, with our personal likes and dislikes.
- Man** So, what would be a better option?
- Woman** Well, one could always help one's child look for ways that would make the learning process more interesting.
- Man** We are going to take a break now and when we come back we will be taking your calls. So, if you... (fade out)

Unit 6.

A.

- Man** You know, I left school at fifteen and the first job I applied for was a kitchen porter in the Continental Hotel in London. However, the first place I actually worked at was at the Ney Flower Restaurant. I was offered the position of trainee chef and I worked there for five years. Then I went to Ireland, where I opened a restaurant in the small town where I was born. You see, my parents came to London when I was eighteen months old and I spent many years there. That's why most people think I was born in England. Within two years, the restaurant had become so successful that I decided to open one in Dublin as a

stepping stone to eventually opening one in London. However, it was not as successful as I hoped it would be but, as the saying goes, every cloud has a silver lining, and that is when I first caught the attention of the television people. Perry Ashton, the producer, was in Dublin for a friend's party. He came into the restaurant the next afternoon with some other people and had the set menu. He was so impressed he asked me to make a guest appearance on a weekend variety show he was producing. I went on the show and, as the saying goes, the rest is history. I recorded 1200 shows of *Cooking Up A Storm*. These days I am semi-retired except for making special guest appearances now and then. I do most of my cooking at home, but I'm afraid my kids would rather go to the local burger bar than experience Thai or French cooking.

B.

- Trevor** Hi, everybody! This is Trevor Boyd on WBNA. Today we are at the Palm County Health and Fitness Conference and with us, to give us some information on the subject, is dietician and personal trainer Samantha Stuart. Hello, Samantha, it's a real pleasure to be here in Palm County.
- Samantha** It's our pleasure to have you here, Trevor. You know we always welcome any opportunity to publicise the conference.
- Trevor** Samantha, you are a gym instructor and are well-known for your fitness DVDs but what you also do for a living is advise people on their weight. Isn't that right?
- Samantha** That's correct, Trev. I've actually got a degree in dietetics and run a clinic which deals with eating disorders.
- Trevor** So, Samantha can you tell us a little about what's wrong with the way we eat?
- Samantha** It's more a case of what's right, Trev, and that's very little! Most people today don't eat properly at all. I really hope that people will think about what I am going to say as most people who are overweight are so for the most simple of reasons. They are eating the wrong food or having the wrong number of calories per meal or they could even be eating meals at the wrong time of day. I mean it's really important not to go to sleep at night on a full stomach.
- Trevor** I have heard that there is medication available to help you lose weight but many people have doubts about this.
- Samantha** And rightly so. It is something I totally disapprove of. Food itself is more powerful than any so called diet pills. Diet pills may help you lose weight in that they decrease your appetite. Some even go so far as to boost your metabolism, which helps you burn stored fat. But the results don't last because when you stop taking them you just end up putting the weight back on again. Only by changing bad eating habits can you achieve long-term results. You see, the food you eat can either make you thin or fat.
- Trevor** And what role does lack of exercising play? Does it not contribute to weight gain?
- Samantha** Actually, lack of exercising does not make you fat. That's a myth. It may cause various other health problems but it's not directly responsible for weight gain. You get fat because you don't eat the right foods at the right intervals each day. You see, your body is like an engine and it only needs certain foods at certain intervals each day. If you don't eat the right foods at the right times, then the body

Trevor won't burn those calories. You will end up storing them away and they will become fat tissue.
So, there you have it folks. That's definitely food for thought for those of you who wish to lose weight!

Unit 7.

A.

Woman Good morning. Computer Systems, Chris Sanders speaking.

Man Good morning. I've been looking through your catalogue and I would like to ask you some questions.

Woman Certainly, sir. How may I be of assistance?

Man Well, I'm interested in buying a new monitor, so could you tell me how much the Suzi 550 17-inch costs? In your catalogue here, it says that it's 150 pounds. Is it still the same price?

Woman I'm sorry, sir. You must have one of our older catalogues. That price has gone up... now it's 170 pounds.

Man Oh, really? What a shame... Well, there's one more thing I would like to ask. I've been having some problems with my printer and I was wondering if you also do repairs.

Woman Well, actually no. We only help our customers to set up their computers. However, we do have some new laser printers on sale if you are interested. They wouldn't be in the catalogue you have.

Man Laser printers? I wasn't actually planning on buying a laser printer. But, did you say they're on sale?

Woman Yes. Their prices range from 350 pounds to 1,000 pounds...

Man Wow! I knew they weren't cheap, but I never thought they'd be that expensive! I suppose it's logical... it is advanced technology.

Woman They are a good bargain.

Man I guess you're right but I'm not prepared to spend that much money. How about a cheaper Deskjet, in particular the model... um... here it is... the model 600 that you have in your catalogue?

Woman Yes, we have a special on that model too. It's 180 pounds.

Man That sounds reasonable. I mean, I know the quality won't be as good as the laser printer but I just want it for personal use... I'll take that then.

Woman OK, I'll note that down.

Man I'm also interested in buying a new mouse. The one I have doesn't seem to be rolling smoothly and sometimes it gets stuck.

Woman I see... How about the Infologic serial mouse or the Ultralogic mouse?

Man What's the difference between them?

Woman Nothing really. They're just different brands. The Ultralogic is a couple of pounds more expensive. It's 14 pounds.

Man Since there's no difference in quality, I'll take the cheaper one.

Woman Right... Are you interested in any software, sir? We stock a wide range of software.

Man Yes, I am interested in getting some new software, but it would be better if you sent me a new catalogue first so that I can have a look through it before I decide.

Woman Of course, sir... Now, will you be paying by credit card or cash on delivery?

Man Cash on delivery please... Um... how much do you charge to deliver it?

Woman Well, there is usually a small charge for delivery, but you won't be charged because your purchases are over 150 pounds... Now, let me take down some details. Your name, sir?

Man My name is Ryan Bedford...

B.

1.

Man I'm going to the shopping mall with Andy. He wants to buy a new fridge, so we're going to have a look at the electrical shop. Do you want to come with us?

Woman Well, I'd like to visit the stationer's at the mall, but I'm too busy now.

Man Do you want me to get you anything?

Woman I'd rather go to the stationer's myself. You know, I can spend hours browsing there. Oh, I just remembered. I've left my sunglasses at the optician's to get them fixed. Could you pick them up?

Man Sure, no problem.

2.

Woman Excuse me, could I see that scarf over there?

Man Sure. It's 100% pure silk.

Woman It's really nice. Is that the price on the label? I saw that you have a 50% discount on certain items.

Man Well, let me check... Yes, it's on discount, so you can get it for £30.

Woman Great. I'd like these gloves, too.

Man Excellent choice. Is that all?

Woman Yes.

Man It's £45 in total.

Woman Here you are.

Man Thank you. Your receipt is in the bag. Have a nice day!

3.

Man Hey, sis! I'm back from the grocer's. Here are the things you asked for.

Woman Thanks! Did you find everything you needed?

Man Actually, I didn't. They'd run out of olive oil. It was on special offer yesterday, that's probably why there wasn't any left.

Woman What about pasta?

Man That wasn't on the shopping list you gave me. Erm... have a look.

Woman Oh, sorry... It's OK. We've still got some pasta left. I'll be visiting the farmer's market tomorrow to get some fresh fruit, so I can get some olive oil, too.

4.

Man What are you doing?

Woman I'm browsing an online store. I'm thinking of buying a camera.

Man Didn't your friend Lucy lend you her camera?

Woman She did, but I'm going to return it to her soon. I've kept it for two months and I'm worried she might need it.

Man I see. Oh, Dan's father is a photographer and he sells cameras too. His shop is five minutes from here. Do you want me to ask Dan about it?

Woman Well, thanks, but I'd rather order it from this store. It has some amazing offers.

5.

Woman I keep hearing a radio commercial about a new restaurant in town, Pizza Square. I'd love to try it. Have you heard this commercial? It features a young actor, Larry Greggs...

Man Larry Greggs... is he in the soap opera that's on Channel 4 every night?

- Woman** That's the one!
- Man** Well, I haven't heard the commercial, but I saw a billboard the other day while I was driving down Maddox Avenue. It convinced me to stop at Pizza Square and get a takeaway.
- Woman** Really? Was it good?
- Man** I wouldn't say so...
- 6.
- Woman** Last Saturday was my graduation day and I got lots of gifts from my family and friends. My friend Zoe gave me a jacket, but it was too small, so on Monday I went to the shop to get a larger one. While I was waiting in the queue, I heard a man shouting at the cashier. He was returning something his wife had bought, but she'd forgotten to give him the receipt, so they couldn't give him a refund. The cashier was trying to explain it to him, but he kept shouting... I felt so sorry for her...

Unit 8.

A.

1.

- Man** I've got some bad news for you. I checked their website, and there were no rooms available at the hotel your sister suggested.
- Woman** That's alright. I don't mind staying in the same place as last year. It was a bit out of the way, but the view was lovely.
- Man** You're right. Still, I had been looking forward to a place with a pool.
- Woman** We should try to book earlier next year; the area is becoming very popular!
- Man** Hmm. We might even think about a camping trip.
- Woman** Listen, I want to relax and be comfortable when I'm on holiday. If you're looking for an adventure holiday, you can always take one without me.

2.

- Traveller** Good afternoon, I was wondering if you could help me. I'm going to Gatwick North Terminal, and I have a five o'clock departure—what's the best way to get there by train?
- Agent at information desk** Well, you need to be there for check-in 90 minutes before that. You could take the 13.36 and arrive at Gatwick at 3.30.
- Traveller** Oh no, I'd rather be there at least half an hour earlier than that. You never know these days... I don't want to miss my flight.
- Agent** Right then. You should plan on taking the 13.05 and get to Gatwick at 3.00. Mind you, it's not a direct train; you will need to change at King's Cross.
- Traveller** Oh dear! That will only stress me out more. I'll take the 13.36.

3.

- Woman** How was your hiking holiday in Slovenia?
- Man** Well, the weather was lovely so we didn't have any trouble camping. Still, we stayed a couple of nights at a hostel for hikers on Lake Bohinj. I have never seen anything like the lakes in that valley! They were unforgettable. The mountains were wonderful, too. I'll tell you all about it when you come over on Friday. I brought back some local herbs and spices, and my plan is to make a traditional Slovenian stew for you.

Woman I can't wait! See you on Friday!

Man Bye!

4.

- Caller** Good morning, I'm afraid I'm calling to cancel my reservation.

- Agent** I'm sorry to hear that! Have you booked accommodation with us as well, or just your flight?
- Caller** It was just the flight. Your package offer was much too expensive for me. Anyway, I was going to Ibiza for my niece's wedding and now it has been postponed because she broke her leg!
- Agent** I see. Would you be interested in changing your travel dates, then?
- Caller** That's just it, they decided to have their wedding in London instead. Unfortunately, it may be several months before my niece is able to travel abroad.

5.

Woman Last year we spent our summer holiday in Ireland. Everyone had warned us about the weather, and for good reason. It rained nearly every single day! But we stuck to our program anyway, like the experienced travellers that we are. The only serious issue we faced was how narrow the country roads were, and the fact that we had to drive on the opposite side of the road from what we are used to. We almost had a head-on collision with an ancient-looking farm vehicle once. I was so glad we didn't have to worry about insurance. It was included with the car rental.

6.

- Guest** Good afternoon. Does the hotel organise day trips to Bath?
- Receptionist** Yes, we work with a travel agency that collects you in a van at 9 a.m. and takes you on a tour of Bath, Stonehenge and Windsor Castle all in one day. It's 115 pounds per person.
- Guest** That sounds expensive... and very tiring as well!
- Receptionist** Another option is for you to get to Bath by rail, on your own. From there you can catch a local walking tour or a sightseeing coach. I have to tell you though, just the round-trip rail ticket could cost more than 90 pounds this time of year.
- Guest** I see. Then your tour certainly is good value for money! Hmm. There will be two of us for tomorrow.

B.

Man I'm Roland McKinney and I'm here today to tell you about an adventure I had when I was on holiday recently. I had thought about going to Greece, but as it was my winter break and I wanted to be sure of sunshine, I decided to go to the Caribbean. I love lazing around on the beach, going in and out of the water whenever I feel too hot. However, as I was on my own, after a few days I got bored and decided to do something a bit more energetic. I had always wanted to try windsurfing and the hotel where I was staying had a windsurfing school so I decided to have some lessons. I must say I enjoyed my first lesson and became a really enthusiastic student. I was spending hours every day on the water. My teacher told me I was doing really well, so I started to gain a bit of confidence. In fact, as it turned out, I got somewhat overconfident. Late one afternoon, when I had just woken up from an afternoon nap, I wandered down to the beach. It was a beautiful evening just about an hour or two before sunset. There was no one at the school, but for some reason, I suddenly decided that I would like to windsurf. That is when I made my big mistake. There were a number of boards on the beach outside the school so I decided to take one out. I had never been out on my own before, but I thought I was good enough. I pulled the board into the sea and took off with the wind behind me. It felt wonderful! The sun had begun to sink into the sea and it was a beautiful sight. After a while I decided to turn back. That's when my problems began. For some reason, I couldn't turn myself around. At first, I didn't panic and tried to turn the board around; however, I just couldn't manage it. In the meantime, I was getting further and further away from land.

That's when I started taking deep breaths to calm myself down. When I could think straight again, I realised that there were a couple of things I could do. I could wait until someone found me or I could just keep going and hope for the best, which is what I did in the end because I was afraid of being eaten by a shark. Soon, it started to get dark and I began to feel tired from hanging on to the sail. Just as it became completely dark and I could barely stand on my feet, I saw something in the distance that looked like trees. I thought my eyes were playing tricks on me. But, then, I felt the board hit something. That's when I realised I had reached the shore. I can't tell you how grateful I was to feel the sand beneath my feet. It turned out I had been blown to a neighbouring island. I was very lucky the wind was blowing in the right direction, otherwise I could have just disappeared. Needless to say, I didn't do any more windsurfing that holiday.

Unit 9.

A.

- Timothy** Where were you last night? I must have called you at least three times.
- Kimberly** I had a rehearsal with my theatre group. We're putting on a play next month.
- Timothy** Hold on a minute. I didn't know you were in a theatre group.
- Kimberly** Yes, I joined one a couple of weeks ago.
- Timothy** Really? How did you become interested in acting?
- Kimberly** Well, I had gone to see a play a few weeks before and I got hooked.
- Timothy** What do you mean?
- Kimberly** Well, believe it or not, I had never been to a theatrical performance before, but from the moment the curtain rose I knew that acting on stage was what I wanted to do or, at least, try.
- Timothy** So you joined a theatre group?
- Kimberly** Yes, and apart from being great fun, it has also helped me a lot. It has made me more self-confident. You know, it's open to everyone and it would not be such a bad idea if you joined too. It could do wonders for you.
- Timothy** How?
- Kimberly** We all know how shy you are, but by taking a drama class it can actually help you get over your shyness.
- Timothy** I don't know anything about acting.
- Kimberly** That's all right. We are all amateurs in my class.
- Timothy** I might come and check it out one day. And do you see this acting of yours just as a hobby or as something more than that?
- Kimberly** I know this sounds a bit too much, but I hope to become a famous actress one day.
- Timothy** I was afraid you'd say something like that. Come on, Kimberly! You can't be serious!
- Kimberly** Why not? Everyone in my theatre group thinks I am very talented.
- Timothy** OK, but do me a favour. Don't leave university.
- Kimberly** Of course not! I know how difficult it is to get into show business so I want to have something to fall back on.
- Timothy** Good, I'm glad we got that straight. Now one more thing, can I have your autograph, Miss Big Shot?
- Kimberly** Go ahead and make fun of me. Have your fun now but don't come to me when I am rich and famous. I'll be too busy posing for pictures.

B.

- Man** ... and now with us on Rockarama we have the person responsible for staging the spectacular Meathead concert that thousands of us had the opportunity to enjoy in Liverpool last night. Welcome to the studio, Jane Baker.
- Woman** Hi, Stewart. It's nice to be here.
- Man** Well Jane, I've read some excellent reviews this morning. Everyone's raving about the Meathead concert. What's the secret behind the concert's success?
- Woman** I guess it was a combination of things... their music, the laser show, the fireworks... just to name a few.
- Man** Speaking of fireworks, don't they usually go off at the beginning of an open-air concert?
- Woman** Yes, they usually do, but we had some technical problems and couldn't do it at that time, that's why they went off at the end. Everyone was surprised, but to be honest, I think I prefer it that way. It's a big bang at the end of a great show.
- Man** That's true. Now Jane, a Meathead concert is always full of surprises. For instance, I've never heard of 500 T-shirts being thrown to a crowd before. That was a great idea! People love T-shirts that feature their favourite bands.
- Woman** Yeah, I just knew it would make the crowd go crazy and create a wild atmosphere. That also helps the band, you know. They get a real thrill from all the screaming and shouting...
- Man** Is that why you turned the lights off after you threw the T-shirts to the crowd... or was that a technical problem, too?
- Woman** No, no... it was part of the act. Once we knew the fireworks were out for the start of the show, we decided to move the laser show there. Lights out, lasers on! After that, the band came on and the rest is history.
- Man** It was definitely a night to remember. And judging from how things turned out last night, not only did you put a lot of thought into the organisation, but you did a lot of quick thinking, too! Now to the future. Do you know if the band are planning to release a new album any time soon?
- Woman** Well, I'm not supposed to discuss this...
- Man** Oh, come on!
- Woman** All I can say is they are definitely working on some fantastic new songs right now.
- Man** Great! Now, I know the band is headed overseas for the next stop on their tour...
- Woman** That's right. In fact, the concert in Boston will be Meathead's first live appearance in the USA.
- Man** Well, we certainly wish them luck over there, but I have to say we've had a number of callers from Manchester who are sad they won't be seeing Meathead this time round.
- Woman** We've got some amazing fans in Manchester, and all I can say to them right now is that we have some big plans for next year... and their patience will definitely be rewarded.
- Man** Now, there's one more thing I'd like to ask you... (fadeout)

Unit 10.

A.

- Man** Our guest tonight is Dawn Smythe. Good evening, Dawn. It's a pleasure to have you with us.
- Woman** I'm really happy to be here.
- Man** So, Dawn, you've successfully crossed the English Channel... how many times?
- Woman** This was my seventh and I made it in 12 hours and 10 minutes.
- Man** That's quite an achievement for a twenty-two-year-old! You must be pretty strong! When did you first try it?
- Woman** Well, I've been swimming since I was five years old, but only made my first attempt four years ago, when I was eighteen. I remember it took me 13 hours and 48 minutes to get to France. Actually, it's funny you should mention that I'm strong for a girl. You know we're supposed to be weaker than males and all that...
- Man** So, you're saying that neither men nor women have any special advantage when it comes to crossing the Channel?
- Woman** Well, in fact, when it comes to crossing the English Channel, women are more fortunate. You see we have a higher percentage of body fat. Sure, men are stronger, but that's no help against the cold, not in water that can be only 11°C.
- Man** Well, that's very interesting. You mentioned that your last swim was the fastest so far...
- Woman** Yes, but how fast you swim does not only depend on your physical condition, but also on the direction and speed of the winds and currents in the Straits of Dover that particular day. All these things affect your route. It's 21.4 miles from Dover to Calais, but you never get to swim straight across; your actual route ends up being an S-curve, which makes the distance longer. Captain Matthew Weib, for instance, who was the first person ever to cross the English Channel in August 1875, covered 39.5 miles in 21 hours and 45 minutes.
- Man** So, we're talking about great distances and an incredible amount of time in the water... I suppose you're not alone out there...
- Woman** No, never. A million things can go wrong, so you'd better have someone to keep an eye on you all the time. My trainer is always on the boat that guides me across.
- Man** Speaking of what can go wrong, could you give us a general idea of what it's like to swim across the Channel?
- Woman** Well, it's definitely not something easy or boring. To begin with, the Straits of Dover is not the cleanest or the quietest sea you can swim in. We face sewage, oil slicks, seaweed, stinging jellyfish and around 400 ships a day. Secondly, the weather changes unpredictably, and nothing can guarantee an easy swim, even if the weather is fine when you set out. Then there are the tides which change every six hours. I know people who have got within a few miles off the French coast but were then overpowered by the tide and had to stop their attempt. However, I suppose the cold is the worst thing.
- Man** I'm sure what you've described sounds like torture to our listeners out there, so why do you do it?
- Woman** Actually, it's these difficulties that attract us to the Channel. Sure, there's the prize money and, of course, after you've done it everyone looks up to you, but for us Channel swimmers, it's the challenge that matters most.
- Man** Thank you for the interview.
- Woman** Thank you too.

B.

1.

- Woman** Do you do any sport?
- Man** Yes, I play ice hockey.
- Woman** Really? Isn't that a very tough game?
- Man** I suppose so. I love it, though. I've been playing for years. How about you? Do you still go swimming?
- Woman** I used to but I've recently taken up archery. It's great!
- #### 2.
- Woman** I've just joined a gym.
- Man** Which one?
- Woman** It's the one at the end of my street. It's the only way I'll go regularly and it's got good facilities. It even has a swimming pool.
- Man** What do you do there?
- Woman** I haven't done anything yet! I've just put my name down for an aerobics class. I'm starting next week.

3.

- Man** Hi Steven! I'm calling to tell you that we can't play football next Saturday. Jack and Louie are both ill and they are not coming so it won't be easy to make up two teams to play a football match. So we thought it would be a nice idea to go to a tennis court and play tennis. Don't bring your football boots with you. All you need is your tennis racket. See you then!

4.

- Woman** What are you doing tomorrow?
- Man** I don't know. Why?
- Woman** Do you want to go ice skating?
- Man** Mmmm... I'm not sure. I've only skated once and that was about six years ago! I'd rather play tennis.
- Woman** Come on! Skating will be fun. We'll go slowly.
- Man** How about bowling? We can see if Meryl and John want to come.
- Woman** OK, but on the condition that we go ice skating next weekend.
- #### 5.
- Man** Oh, no. It's raining again!
- Woman** It shouldn't last all day.
- Man** Yes, but the team was going to meet this morning for a football match against the Dales.
- Woman** Maybe you can play tomorrow.
- Man** It's not that easy to change days.
- Woman** Don't worry. I think it's clearing up.

6.

- Woman** John, would you like to play tennis with me later?
- Man** I'd like to, but I can't. I'm playing basketball with some friends. Do you want to play with us?
- Woman** No, thanks. I think I'll go swimming. Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?
- Man** Sure.

Unit 11.

A.

- Peggy** Hi, Jeremy! How are you? I must say I'm surprised to see you here.
- Jeremy** Doctor's orders!
- Peggy** Really? I didn't know you had health problems.
- Jeremy** I don't, not yet, that is! But if I don't do something, I'll be looking at cholesterol and stomach problems sooner than I thought. It's stress, you know!
- Peggy** Tell me about it! My GP told me that the little bit of cholesterol I have probably comes from stress.

Jeremy You? I thought you were as fit as a fiddle. Everyone knows what a health freak you are. I mean, you go to the gym every day.

Peggy Oh, please. I come here three evenings a week. That's hardly every day.

Jeremy How long do you work out for?

Peggy For about an hour and a half. It used to be two hours in the beginning. I was quite a bit overweight, you know. That's what brought me here in the first place.

Jeremy I know what you mean.

Peggy Oh, you're nothing like I was when I first came here. Has the doctor put you on any special diet?

Jeremy Not really. He's just given me a list of foods that are recommended and another with foods that should be avoided.

Peggy That's not bad. You know that saying 'you are what you eat'.

Jeremy If that's the case, you are looking at a load of quickly-prepared sandwiches.

Peggy That's no good. No wonder you suffer from stress if you do everything quickly.

Jeremy You're absolutely right. From now on, I plan to have at least one cooked meal a day.

Peggy Good for you. Have they recommended a programme for you here?

Jeremy Not yet. I just got here.

Peggy First day, eh?

Jeremy Yeah, if you don't count last Monday when I came in to register and find out about prices and times.

Peggy Well, it's a good idea if you talk to one of the trainers. They take everything into consideration and they make suggestions about which machines to use and for how long. I could introduce you to my cousin Phil. He's really good.

Jeremy I actually know Phil! He's my neighbour. It was him that recommended this place. I didn't know you were family.

Peggy His mother is my aunt.

Jeremy I'm actually waiting for him at the moment. I saw him on Monday and we arranged to meet here today.

Peggy That's great. Maybe we can all meet up afterwards for a drink. I know this great place. They make the meanest fresh fruit juices you've ever had.

Jeremy I'm in... (fade out)

B.

Announcer It's twenty-five minutes past the hour, here on Sunshine Radio, and time for a special item on first aid, prepared by our very own medical consultant, Dr Robert Moore, who last week gave us excellent advice on preventing accidents in the home.

Doctor Thank you, Stanley. Good evening to our listeners. First of all, you must all remember one thing when administering first aid – you are not doctors. The main purpose of first aid is to help relieve the victim's pain and anxiety and to prevent their condition from becoming worse, before more skilful treatment is available. So, send for professional help if the problem is serious. But most importantly, don't panic, just act quickly! Knowing what not to do in an emergency is as important as knowing what to do. Now, let's get more specific. What do you do if you have to deal with heavy bleeding? In most cases, you can stop bleeding by applying pressure to the wound itself and by arranging the body so that the wound is on a level higher than the heart. If possible, hold a sterile dressing or clean cloth firmly in place on the bare wound by means of bandages. Do not remove or change it, even if it becomes soaked in blood, as this will result in more blood being lost. And how about

burns? First and second-degree burns affect the surface of the skin. First-degree burns are the least serious and make the damaged area turn red. In the case of second-degree burns, blisters form. Third-degree burns are deeper and the most difficult to treat. In cases of first or second-degree burns, cold water or maybe even an ice-pack will do the job of relieving the pain. To stop further infection DO NOT and I mean DO NOT burst any blisters! It'll make matters worse. If you have to deal with third-degree burns, put sterile dressings without any medication on the burn, and get medical attention. Finally, sunburn doesn't normally have to be treated by a doctor unless the case is serious. You can relieve the pain by applying a cold cream or, in an emergency, yoghurt or salad oil on the skin affected. Remember to stay out of the sun while recovering, and always wear T-shirts and hats afterwards because the skin is very sensitive. Well, we're out of time, so burns caused by chemicals will just have to wait until next time. I'm Dr Moore.

Unit 12.

A.

1.

Woman So, have you decided? Would you like the 37-inch flat screen or the 41-inch flat-screen TV?

Man I think I'll go for the 41-inch.

Woman Alright, we'll add a remote control that you can program for use with all your devices.

Man Oh, that will come in handy.

Woman And I'll throw in a packet of twelve triple-A batteries.

Man No need, I've got plenty at home. Thank you.

2.

Man Hey, Mary. I tried calling your mobile all morning, but it was off. Is everything okay?

Woman Yes, everything's fine, but my phone wasn't working this morning.

Man Oh? What was the problem?

Woman Well, I dropped it in a puddle as I was running to catch the bus.

Man Did the screen break?

Woman No, but the phone wouldn't turn on, so I thought maybe the water damaged the battery. I had to find an electronics shop so they could replace it.

Man And did they?

Woman Actually, they checked the battery in another phone and it was still working. So the technician told me to put my phone in some rice to help dry it out, and a couple of hours later it was fine.

3.

Woman Is your suitcase ready?

Man Yes, yes, stop asking.

Woman Are you sure? Have you got your passport, money, tickets, phone, iPod?

Man Of course. I've packed everything.

Woman And your charger?

Man I'll use yours.

Woman No, you won't. I'm not going to spend my holiday fighting with you about who gets to use it first.

Man Fine, I'll go look for it.

Woman What about earphones?

Man Earphones? Oh, here they are. I put them in my bag instead of in the suitcase.

4.

Man Well, I was searching the market for a waterproof watch to wear while scuba diving, but they were so expensive, and had so many features! And I thought, wait a minute, I bet there's a whole lot of people out there who do water sports and don't want to

spend a fortune on a fancy watch when all they want is to know the time. I then sat down and designed something as simple as possible, and asked a friend of mine who is a scientist to help me test it in his laboratory. We tried a few different designs until I had exactly what I wanted. And now, here we are, selling them around the world.

5.

Woman Dorian, please pick up your phone. It's time we talked. I can't keep leaving messages on your voicemail. This is getting crazy. You have to talk to me at some point. Look, I'm outside your door and I can hear your ringtone. It means your phone is inside, which means you're at home, too. Please answer the door. I've been sitting in the hallway for an hour now. I'm really sorry about what I said. I didn't mean it. Can't we just...

6.

Man I'd like to make a complaint. I'm not happy with the phone I bought online. It arrived on time, but the camera doesn't work, and there's no case included, as was promised. I'd like a full refund so I can go to a shop and find exactly what I'm looking for.

B.

Some scientists devote their whole lives to scientific research to find a cure or think of the latest invention. All some others need is a little luck and almost, by magic, a new scientific discovery takes place.

The discovery of penicillin has been considered one of the most important discoveries of all time and it happened by accident! Penicillin is a group of antibiotics used to treat a variety of infections and was discovered by the scientist Alexander Fleming, in 1928. The scientist had gone away for his summer holidays and he had forgotten to tidy up his lab. When he returned, he found that a substance had been formed and had killed all the bacteria. It was penicillin!

Percy Spencer, an American engineer, came up with the microwave oven, something that many of us have in our homes today. As part of his job as an engineer he was exposed to microwaves, a type of energy that travels very fast. Immediately afterwards, he noticed that the chocolate bar in his pocket had melted because of this and suddenly, he got a great idea. He continued his experiments, even though they were not always successful; at one point he had to deal with an exploding egg! But by the 1960s, American homes began to have this new invention.

Another unexpected discovery led to the creation of one of the most popular soft drinks in the world, Coca Cola. It wasn't made by an owner of a sweet shop or someone who wanted to create a product to make lots of money. John Pemberton was a pharmacist and he was trying to find a cure for headaches. The simple mixture he created would be changed over the years to end up with a drink that has been enjoyed by most people. However, the recipe is kept very secret. Sadly, Pemberton never got to see any of this as he died two years after his discovery. So, you never know how or when the next invention will take place. As we have seen, inventions often happen in ways we would never expect.

Unit 13.

A.

1.

Man How was your camping trip, Anne?

Woman It was nice, but the weather wasn't on our side.

Man What happened?

Woman Well, on the first day it was sunny but windy, so we found it really hard to put up our tent.

Man I'm sorry to hear that. Did the weather get better the next day?

Woman I wish... When we woke up, it was mild. It wasn't windy at all, but then it started drizzling. We thought it would stop soon, so we went hiking, but then it turned into a downpour. We got soaking wet and that's why I have a cold now...

2.

Woman We still haven't decided where to go on holiday. Any ideas?

Man We've always wanted to visit New York City. Maybe it's time we did.

Woman The truth is I'm tired of the urban landscape. I'd rather go somewhere in the countryside and see a little bit of nature. Why not go to Colorado and visit the Rocky Mountains? There's a national park there, too.

Man Or fly to Brazil and go on a river cruise into the Amazon rainforest!

Woman But you know I can't stand humid weather.

Man OK, we're going to Colorado, then.

3.

Woman I just got back from a trip to my uncle's farm. I hadn't visited it in five years and it's got much bigger. My uncle gave me different tasks to do, such as feeding the hens. That was always my favourite thing to do when I was little. My uncle has recently bought some new animals, too, such as sheep and a horse. I had only seen pictures of sheep, but as soon as I met them, I thought they were lovely creatures. My uncle also let me ride his new horse, which was quite challenging, even though it wasn't the first time I'd ridden a horse.

4.

Man Mayor Robertson, pollution is one of the biggest problems in our area. We all remember how our lives were affected by the oil spill in Turtle Bay three years ago.

Woman That's true, but fortunately, our reaction was quick and we managed to clean it up. Now we should focus on reducing emissions from factories in the area. Those emissions are putting citizens' health in serious danger. We're also taking action to reduce the use of pesticides and chemical fertilisers. I know this may not seem to be as important at the moment as other sources of pollution, but if we do something about it now, we can prevent a possible ecological disaster in the future.

5.

Man Last weekend, my friends and I went camping in the forest. We had planned lots of fun activities, but everything went wrong. To begin with, as soon as we got to the campsite, a wasp stung my friend Ryan on the face. He was in so much pain that I had to take him to hospital. Luckily, it was nothing serious, but our problems didn't end there. When we returned, we were horrified to discover that our tent was full of grasshoppers. We were so tired that we took our sleeping bags outside the tent and slept there. Fortunately, we weren't bitten by mosquitoes!

6.

Man What other ways of reducing waste are there?

Woman Well, to reduce plastic waste, we can use products that are made from biodegradable materials which are not harmful to the environment.

Man That's an excellent idea—in fact, my daughter encouraged us to do that in our household. One more thing she taught us was to sort the rubbish into glass, paper and plastic before recycling them.

Woman Well done—it's great that the younger generations are becoming more and more environmentally aware. Do you know that many supermarkets collect returnable bottles?

Man Really? That's easy. I'll definitely try it.

B.

Man In the studio with us today we have Professor Mary Harper, who's going to talk to us about rainforests and why they are so important. Good morning, Professor. Thank you for coming in today.

Woman Good morning. It's a pleasure to be here.

Man Well, could you start by telling us what rainforests are and where we can find them?

Woman Right. Well, rainforests are dense forests found near the equator. Over half of the world's rainforests are in Central and South America. The rest are in Africa and South East Asia.

Man I see... And could you tell us why rainforests are so important?

Woman First of all, rainforests are the natural habitat for many species of animals, birds, insects and plants. What's more, we mustn't forget that plants produce oxygen, which is necessary for life on Earth. They also control the Earth's temperature by absorbing carbon dioxide.

Man So, you're saying that our planet needs its rainforests.

Woman Oh, definitely. But the problem is that more than fifty per cent of the world's rainforests have already disappeared.

Man That much? *What*, or should I say, *who* is responsible for their disappearance?

Woman Well, to begin with, the trees are being burnt or cut down because people in some countries need the land to grow food or to raise their cattle and sheep. It's a matter of life and death for them. But that's not all. Other people are destroying rainforests in order to make money by selling the wood. But, for whatever reason rainforests are being destroyed, the results are irreversible. That's why I decided to come on this programme, to make listeners more aware of what exactly is going on. It's really time we did something to put an end to this destruction.

Man Could you tell us some of the consequences of this destruction?

Woman Well, one thing is that millions of animal and plant species will become extinct. Did you know that some of our medicines come from rainforest plants?

Man Really? I thought they're all made from chemicals in laboratories... (fade out)

Unit 14.

A.

Man At 10.45 this morning, two men wearing masks and holding shotguns held up the National Bank on Park Road. Peter Bradford, aged 32, and Craig Simpson, aged 36, demanded money from the cashier and threatened to kill anyone who got in their way. The security guard made an attempt to stop them, but was taken hostage. Luckily, the manager set off the alarm, which resulted in the arrest of the two men as they were trying to leave the building. Fortunately, no one was hurt. Now, on to the international news, and we have a report from... (fade out)

B.

Sergeant Gregory Humboldt Good evening and thank you very much for the invitation to give a speech at this meeting. The police force welcomes any opportunity to educate the public on crime prevention. Before I begin, I'd like to congratulate the White Haven Neighbourhood Watch on actually reducing crime in the area by 60%. Well done! Now, with the holidays almost upon us, I urge you to take a few extra precautions to safeguard your home if you are planning to go away. Firstly, do not alert passers-by to the fact that you will be leaving. Don't pack your suitcases in the car on the drive

or anywhere that's in full view of would-be burglars. Secondly, arrange for someone to come by regularly and collect any post that may have accumulated in your letterbox. Remember to cancel all milk, bread and newspaper deliveries for the duration of your holiday. It would also be a good idea to leave your contact details with a neighbour in case of an emergency. If you plan to be away for a considerable period of time, ask a neighbour to mow your lawn.

Now, Mr Harper, the chairman of the committee, has asked me to give you some general tips on protecting your home. Exterior lighting at night is essential... Ahh... yes... you have something to share with us... yes... Right! That's an excellent point! It's important to lock all tools and ladders away—you don't want to give thieves an advantage. Security doors and an alarm system are also vital. Don't neglect outdoor buildings either; garden sheds and workshops are ideal hiding places for thieves so investing in some padlocks for added security would be a good idea. Remember, break-ins don't just happen at night or when people are away—in fact, the majority of burglaries occur in broad daylight so it's important to be on the alert at all times. Avoid being careless—don't, for example, leave keys in hiding places around the house and don't leave notes for family members pinned on the front door.

Right then, let me just have a look at my notes here... I'd also like to offer you some tips on motor vehicle safety... Never leave your keys in your vehicle, even if it's in the garage. And don't leave registration papers or your driving licence in the car either. It's recommended that you don't leave valuables in full view of passers-by. Keep all bags, even handbags, tucked under the seats or in the boot, not on the seats. Don't park your car in quiet areas, if you can help it. If you are on your way home and you notice that someone is following you, it's best to drive to a busy area or to the nearest... (fade out)

Unit 15.

A.

Woman Agatha Miller, better known as Agatha Christie, is the world's most famous mystery writer. She was born in Torquay, England, in 1890. She is said to have had a very happy childhood, which came to an end at age 11, when her father died. Before his death, Agatha was educated at home by her parents, who encouraged her to write from a very young age. After her father's death, she was sent to Paris to receive a formal education.

She met her first husband, Colonel Archibald Christie, two years before the outbreak of World War I. During the war she volunteered as a nurse at a Red Cross Hospital and started writing detective stories. Her first book, *The Mysterious Affair at Styles*, was published in 1920. Agatha and Archibald Christie were divorced in 1928, but Agatha continued to write under the name of Christie. When World War II broke out, she worked in the pharmacy of a hospital, where she learnt a lot about poisons. She used this knowledge in her crime novels. In 1930 she married archaeologist Max Mallowan, who she accompanied on expeditions to the Middle East. These travels provided the settings for some of her novels, like *Murder in Mesopotamia* (1936) and *Death on the Nile* (1937).

Agatha Christie's most famous characters are Hercule Poirot and Miss Jane Marple. Hercule Poirot is a Belgian detective who was introduced in Christie's first novel. Poirot observes people's behaviour and the objects around him, and uses logic to solve his cases. He appears in more than 20 books, including *Curtain* (1975), in which he dies. Miss Marple is an elderly English lady who appears in twelve books. Unlike Poirot, she solves crimes using female intuition.

Agatha Christie died in 1976. During her literary career she wrote over 70 crime novels, several short stories and 19 plays. For this, Agatha Christie received a special award in 1955. She also

wrote six romantic novels under the name of Mary Westmacott. Some of her stories, like *Murder on the Orient Express* (1934), have been made into films and television series. Her books have sold over one billion copies in English and another billion copies in forty-five other languages.

B.

Man Every week *Country Watch* explores a new area for nature lovers. This week we travel to Scotland, the most northern country in the United Kingdom.

Scotland is a mountainous country. The Highlands in the north and west are the wildest and the most beautiful part of it, with high mountains and deep valleys. The highest mountain in the UK is in Scotland. It is called Ben Nevis and is 1,343 metres high.

Travel downhill and you'll reach the sea, but the country doesn't end there. There are 780 islands in Scotland. The most famous are the Shetland Islands, home of the Shetland pony, the smallest horse in the world. The people on these islands knit beautiful pullovers and gloves from the wool of the Shetland sheep.

A Loch is the Scottish word for 'lake'. There are a lot of lochs in Scotland. The most famous one is undoubtedly Loch Ness. Every year lots of tourists visit Loch Ness because they believe that Nessie, a dinosaur-like monster, lives there.

The climate in Scotland is wet and mild in the west and a little colder and drier in the east. Winters are generally mild, except in the Highlands, where heavy snowfalls are regular. Summers are cool, as temperatures are rarely higher than 18° C.

Nature lovers can see lots of animals and birds in Scotland. You'll find seals on the coast, while red deer – as well as reindeer from Sweden – live in the Highlands. Finally, it isn't unusual to see a rare golden eagle flying high over the mountain peaks.

Practice Test

Task 1

1.

Man If you like, we have that coat in white as well as black.

Woman No, the colour is fine. It's just too small. Do you have it in medium?

Man I'm afraid not. How about this coat? I think it would suit you.

Woman It looks nice, but I'd like something a little shorter. Oh, I like this one... hm... but it has no pockets...

2.

Woman Could you get me some bread—brown, if there is any—a pint of milk and six eggs?

Man There's some milk in the fridge. Anything else? Don't we need carrots and tomatoes for dinner?

Woman We have carrots, but we could do with a few tomatoes and some potatoes, too.

Man I'll get some onions and some fish for tomorrow, too.

3.

Man Excuse me, do you know how I can get to the art gallery from here?

Woman Sure. Go down this road and turn right after the swimming pool. Then take the first road on your left and keep going until you see the park. At the park turn right, and you'll find it on your left, right after the Indian restaurant, opposite the art school.

Man How long will I need to get there?

Woman It's about ten minutes.

4.

Woman Brian! Where have you been? I haven't seen you in ages!

Man Hi there! I was visiting my cousin in Sweden. I came back on Friday, but I had a bad cold so I stayed at home for a couple of days. How are you?

Woman Great! I finally got my teaching qualification last Saturday and I've been offered a job at a school here, starting from next Monday!

Man That's great! I'm very happy for you—congratulations!

5.

Woman I'm so hungry. They gave us dinner on the plane, but the only thing they were serving was pasta with chicken.

Man Why didn't you get any, sis? It doesn't sound too bad.

Woman I suppose not—if you're not a vegetarian! The only thing I could have was the salad that came with it.

Man Oh dear, no wonder you're hungry. Don't worry; we can stop for pizza on the way home.

6.

Woman I think I left my mobile phone in the office again.

Man No, you called me from the train station on your way home.

Woman Right, but I wasn't going home. I went to the shops and then popped by Bridget's house. Maybe I left it there?

Man You'd better call her and ask her, then.

Task 2

Presenter With us today on the programme is Dr Aberson Stern of the Kingsley Institute. Welcome to Earth Matters, Dr Stern.

Dr Stern Thank you for inviting me, Melissa. I am always grateful for any opportunity to increase the public's awareness of the problems on our planet.

Presenter So, Dr Stern, can you tell us some of the reasons why we should be concerned about the planet heating up?

Dr Stern Of course, but firstly I have to tell you, because there are still some people who doubt it, that there is firm evidence that we humans are responsible for a high percentage of the increase in temperature during the last 140 years.

Presenter And how much exactly has the temperature risen?

Dr Stern Well, from the beginning of the twentieth century the Earth's surface temperature has increased by 1.8 degrees Fahrenheit. That is one degree Centigrade.

Presenter That does not seem like a great deal.

Dr Stern No, it doesn't, does it? But when you know that mountain glaciers are getting smaller every year and that we've lost about 75 per cent of the summer Arctic ice pack compared to fifty years ago, then it seems a lot more serious.

Presenter Wow! Those are shocking figures.

Dr Stern Aren't they just! And the pace is accelerating. 1998 was the warmest year recorded in the twentieth century, but that mark has been surpassed nearly every year since the start of the twenty-first.

Presenter Yes, I remember that. I was in Spain. We thought we were going to die from the heat.

Dr Stern Yes, there were lots of days even in the UK when it felt like one was living inside an oven. And we are not ready to deal with intense heat here.

Presenter No, we aren't, and we've been having so many more heat waves than we used to.

Dr Stern That's true, and something else our listeners might not know is that the increase in temperature in the twentieth century was greater than at any time during the previous four to six hundred years.

Presenter So, could you tell our listeners about some of the consequences?

Task 3

Man Ah, hmm. Well, my hair may have turned an autumn grey years ago but, oh, I still remember the day I saw my first film. And, yes, cinema became the greatest love of my life (apart from my wife, of course).

My earliest memory? Oh, I was a little boy in short trousers when my mother took me to my first film. I can remember it even now. A cold, wet English night. You know the ones! But oh oh oh... inside the old Bishopston Picture Palace—it was a different world. So incredibly exotic, a place of magic, I just couldn't wait to get back to tell my dad and my sister all about it.

Hmm. Let's go back to my first film. It was American, entitled, *The Jazz Singer*. It must have been about 1929 and it's a famous film because it was the first ever 'talkie', that is, a film with sound. Did you know, that up until then, films didn't have sound?

So in the 1930s, these talkies became a cheap and popular form of entertainment and even when the War came along, the cinema held its audience. I suppose that the films helped people forget their everyday difficulties.

But I have to say that this association with entertainment has always been a bit of a problem for the serious cinema goers. I mean, so-called critics say that in order to be educated you have to read a book or go to the theatre or visit a museum. But, er, I don't agree. The cinema helped me grow from a boy to a man.

I think that somehow by watching all those classic films, I learnt how to see the difference between right and wrong. Though, of course, like everyone else, I made my mistakes along the way. But who doesn't? It's normal. It's being human and...

Oh, sorry. But things changed in the cinema. By the 1950s every home had a TV set in it and this was a dangerous moment for the cinema. What would happen? Well, Hollywood responded by making films in colour and having wide screens to show them on. Then, they introduced very expensive special effects. The story of the film became less important... and do you know that today, the studios make more money from merchandising—that is, selling T-shirts and video games and things like that—than they do from box office ticket sales?

Hmm. The future of cinema? Well, you know, I think, actually, it will just about be the same as it has always been. It's a great mixture of entertainment and education. And is there anything wrong with that? For me I think it's perfect. You? Well, that is for you to decide. Have fun! I do!
